



3 1761 02001790 1

<http://stores.ebay.com/Ancestry-Found>

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



This book is purchased from  
The Schofield Fund  
given in memory of  
William Henry Schofield  
Victoria College, B.A. 1889  
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895  
Professor of Comparative Literature  
Harvard University, 1906-20.  
Harvard Exchange Professor at  
University of Berlin, 1907  
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and  
University of Copenhagen, 1910.  
Harvard Exchange Professor at  
Western Colleges, 1918.



<http://stores.ebay.com/Ancestry-Found>





12222

The English Conquest of Ireland.

(12)

Oxford

HORACE HART, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Original Series.



# The English Conquest of Ireland.

A. D. 1166–1185.

*MAINLY FROM THE 'EXPUGNATIO HIBERNICA'  
OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.*

## A Parallel Text

FROM

1. MS. Trinity College, Dublin, E. 2. 31, about 1425 A.D.
2. MS. Rawlinson, B. 490, Bodleian Library, about 1440 A.D.

## PART I. THE TEXT.

EDITED BY

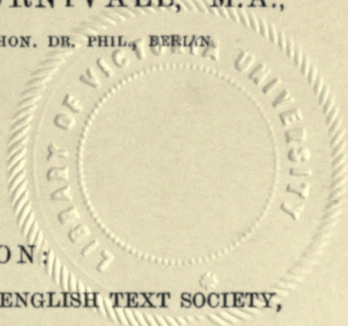
FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.,

TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE, HON. DR. PHIL. BERLIN.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD, W.C.

M DCCC XCVI.



PR  
1119  
A2  
no.107

61032  
22-1-37





DEDICATED TO THE

RT. HON. WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE, M.P.

AND ALL WHO HAVE WORKT FOR

**Justice to Ireland**

*See opposite.* Mr. Thomas Austin sends me some more forms worth notice in the Dublin MS.:—bethwen, between, 10/12; bolthenys, boldness, 75/15; ather, either, 100/3; ayse, ease, 148/1; behoud (?th), behoof, benefit, 112/30; culuertnesse, falseness, 126/31; cytteyns, citizens, 122/27; dur̃, door, 42/22; ense, ends, 80/29; fale (fele), many, 74/10; fobler, feebl̃er, 68/6; forume, form, 39/12; ?heuedes (as in note), 14/17; hym briddesum, Greek αὐτος τριτος, 14/1, 32/20; I-shwerne, sworn, 24/26; mich yuell, leprosy (comp. great pox), 32/7; neyght, nigh, 74/16; pynsynge (pinching), affliction, 88/6; rechest, reckest, 108/9; ruthlynge, ? rattling, 16/13; schavnge, change, 51/6; senne, synod, 120/15; senthe (?seŭthe), seventh, 58/30; senfte, 59/30; soine, soon, 60/11; soldrys, shoulders, 89/11; sortely, shortly, 149/22; shechyng̃e, seeking, 147/19.



## FOREWORDS.

THE first manuscript of this interesting story of "oure knyghten gestes yn Irlande" (92/15), and of Henry II's Conquest of our sister Isle, was sent over to me from the Library of Trinity College, Dublin, by Dr. John K. Ingram, to be copied, printed, and edited by him for the Early English Text Society. He hoped to do his work at it during his July-September holiday (1893) in Scotland, on Loch Lomond, I having read his proofs with the MS. for him. But illness prevented him; and so I (as the Society's man-of-all-work) had to take the book up. Both the story told—mainly, though freely, from the *Expugnacio Hibernica* of Giraldus Cambrensis,—and the forms of the words, interested me. For the copier of the englisht text has often slipt into his own Irish dialect, specially in the use of *d* and *t* for *th*, and has written *dynge*<sup>1</sup> and *tynge*<sup>2</sup> for *thing*; *drogh*<sup>3</sup> and *troggh*<sup>4</sup> for *through*; *day* for *they*<sup>5</sup>; *idrow* (18/1) for *thrown*; *tanked* for *thanked* (14/19); *tynke* for *think* (6/26); *toght* for *thought* (16/25, 18/7); *tough* (as once in *The Three King's Sons*) for *though* (22/14); &c. At the same time he has used *th* for *t* and *d*: *thedynge* (10/7) and *tythyng* (6/15) for *tidings*; *onther* (6/31) for *under*; *rent* (8/1) for *ruth*; *between* (10/12) for *between*; *thwey* (12/35) for *two*; *herth* (2/8, 13, 22/28) for *heart*; *ibansheth* (24/1) for *banisht*; *Iendeth* (22/16) for *ended*; *smyth* (24/12) for *smite*, &c. The copier has other peculiarities, both in the use of other consonants and vowels<sup>6</sup>, which the reader will note as he goes along, and which will be collected for him in the Introduction by Dr. Douglas Bruce, of the Ladies College at Bryn Mawr, Philadelphia, that will form

<sup>1</sup> 88/27; 134/13.<sup>2</sup> 24/14; 28/8; (no)tynge 8/12; 16/5; 20/9; &c.<sup>3</sup> 14/8.<sup>4</sup> 22/6, 7; 26/1, &c.<sup>5</sup> 10/19; 12/21; 24/10, 11.<sup>6</sup> *Both har*<sup>7</sup> 128/20 doesn't at first look like *But ere*: still, you soon get accustomed to the scribe's little weaknesses. *Harym*, harm, is in the Rawlinson MS. 143/12: cp. *sarrif* serve, in Misyn. E. E. T. Soc. The Southern infinitive in *-y* or *-ye* occurs in both MSS. 58/27, &c. For other odd spellings, see opposite.

Part II. of this book, when complete, and will no doubt be finisht in 1894, or '95.

As it was now and then hard to understand the Dublin text, and one nearer the standard tongue turnd up in the Rawlinson MS. B. 490—the MS. that contains one of Mr. Steele's text of the prose *Secreta*—I got Mrs. Parker to copy this Bodleian MS.<sup>1</sup>, and the Clarendon Press to set it opposite the Dublin one. The comparison of the two versions is full of interesting points, as the Rawlinson is generally less archaic than the Dublin<sup>2</sup>, while each helps to fill up the other's occasional leavings-out. There is at least one other MS. of the *Conquest*, the later one in Trinity College, Dublin, F. 4. 4, which is said to be a 16th century transcript of E. 2. 31. From it, an extract is given below, pp. xiv-xvi as a specimen. Doubtless, other MSS. of the text exist elsewhere. Luckily for us, the late Rev. Jas. F. Dimock re-edited the *Expugnatio Hibernica* in vol. v. (1867) *Giraldi Cambrensis Opera* in the Rolls Series of *Chronicles and Memorials*; and his notes, dates, and Preface have been of the greatest use to me. He says (p. xxix) that there are two editions, and perhaps a third, of the *Expugnacio*: (1) that in an early 13th century MS. at Lambeth, No. 371, "probably penned during Giraldus's lifetime" (p. xxxi), and in (R.) and (B.), MSS. Bibl. Reg. 13 B. viii in the British Museum, and Rawlinson B. 188 in the Bodleian. In treating the two latter MSS. as of the first cast of the work, Mr. Dimock neglects the marginal additions of the Royal MS. These additions make (2) the second version of the *Expugnacio* (pp. xxxii, xxxiv), shown in (R.), and MS. Ff. 1. 27, in the University Library, Cambridge, in which "there is one whole chapter, (also in our English, p. 38-40 below) the eighteenth of the first book—giving the account of the synod at Armagh in 1170, of which no other mention is known besides this,

<sup>1</sup> Mr. George Parker has collated the proofs with the MS. Mr. Thomas Austin has made the Glossary and Indexes to both Texts. Dr. Ingram wrote the English side-notes to the even pages 10-32, tho I've altered 2 or 3 of em.

<sup>2</sup> I suppose the first englishing now represented by the Dublin MS. was made in the 14th century.



in this chapter of Giraldus—which is not in Lambeth 371, but is in Bibl. Reg. 13 B. viii and Rawlinson B. 188.”

We now come to the MS. of most interest to us, Harleian 177, for in it only (as I gather from Mr. Dimock’s note 3, p. 236) is the original of one of our English bits on pp. 16, 18 below:—

Trin. Coll. Dublin, E. 2. 31.

A wonder was of that fantasye: A-morowe, whan it was day, the place ther this folk iseye smyten vpon ham, the wedes and the grase that stoden al euen vpright, thay lay alle idrow adoune, and icast to grond.

Harl. 117, ff. 14, bk. 15.

Mirum autem fantasmate tali, quod in crastino die clarescente, in loco ubi uidebatur exercitus ille in ipsos irruisse, herbe & vrtice, que prius alte fuerant, & erecte, solotenus prostrate iacebant, & complanate.

For this, the other MSS., R. and B., have “primus hic miles, qui in hac insula niso mansueto et domesticato Nisi filiam infestavit.”

On this Harleian 177, Mr. Dimock says, at p. xxxv of his Preface:

(it) “furnishes a copy of the *Expugnatio* which, so far as it goes,—it has many and large omissions—generally agrees closely with the text of this second edition. . . . The omissions are more especially of the extraneous matter, not relating to Ireland; but there is much curtailing also of Irish matter, when not directly historical. In the descriptions of the heroes, for instance, much often is left out; and in the orations which Giraldus puts into their mouths, still more. The compiler of it never condenses, but simply omits. In an oration . . . he will retain two or three sentences of the beginning, and two or three more of the end, with perhaps another or two out of the middle, if not very much less than all this, word for word as in the complete oration, without much care about connection or sense . . . it certainly is only an abbreviation, such as I describe it.”

This is just the case with our English text<sup>1</sup>, though here and there it has bits not in Harl. 177. As to that MS., Mr. Dimock continues, pp. xxxv–vi:

“It generally agrees closely, as I have said, with the second

<sup>1</sup> It stops at chapter 34 of Book II (75 of our pages go to 171 of the Rolls *Giraldus*).

edition, as in (R.) and (F.); but it exhibits a somewhat more advanced text. For instance, the word *Stadia* of (L)ambeth MS. occurs only twice instead of four times, out of eight as in (R)awlinson MS.: and instead of *Arcarii* always, as in the early manuscripts, it has the *Satellites equestres* of the later ones, in about half the instances where the words occur. And, moreover, in a few instances, it has a word or two that are not in the early manuscripts, but are in the later ones.

This manuscript has no note whatever as to its history; but it, or its original perhaps, would seem to have been written by one of the English settlers in Ireland, as it attempts occasionally, instead of Giraldus's Latin of all the other manuscripts, to give an English rendering of the Irish names. Thus, instead of *Murchardi filius*, or *Dermitius*, or *Murchardides*, it has 'Macmorhith' or 'Macmorhith'; instead of *Ororicus*, 'Oroch.' In one instance the writer appears to make a blunder in his Englishing: he renders *Otuethelis* 'Oneyl' instead of O'Toole. . . . It is not the work of a very correct scribe."

As a sample of the cutting-down, by Harl. 177, of Giraldus's descriptions of men, take the most trenchant instance, that of Henry II. In the Rolls edition, this description takes nearly six big octavo pages, *Op.* v. 301-6, the whole of Chapter 46, Book I. Leaving out the first page, Harl. 177 and the englisher start with the second, p. 302:

*Expugn. Hibern.* lib. i. cap. xlv.

Harl. MS. 177, lf. 44, bk. 45.

*Descriptio anglorum regis*

*Henrici secundi.*

**E**rat igitur anglorum rex,  
henricus secundus, uir  
sub-ruffus, cesius; amplo capite  
& rotundo; oculis glausis; ad  
iram toruis, & rubore suffusis;  
facie ignea; uoce quassa; collo  
ab humeris aliquantulum de-  
misso; pectore quadrato; bra-  
chiis ualidis; corpore carnoso;  
Et nature magis, quam gule

Dubl. MS. E. 2. 31.

Page 88 below.

**T**he kynge henry the otheȝ,  
was a mañ saunrede, rounne  
heed, & round grey egheñ;  
roghly lokynge, & rede yn  
wreth; vysage rede bernynge,  
grete speche, neke somdel logh  
of þe sholdres, brest thyk, armes



uicio, citra timorem [*read tumorem*] enormem & torporem omnem; moderata quadam immoderancia uentre peramplo. Erat enim cibo potuque modestus ac sobrius, & parsimonie quo-ad principi licuit, per omnia datus.

[*Here a page and a quarter of the full text, Op. v. 302-3, is left out by Harl. 177, though our englisher gives a little of it<sup>1</sup>.*]

Vrgentibus incomodis, nemo benignior: resumpta securitate, nemo rigidior. Acer in [in]-domitos; clemens in subactos; Durus in domesticos; diffusus in extraneos; largus in publico; parcus in priuato.

<sup>1</sup> Et ut hanc naturae injuriam industria reprimeret ac mitigaret . . . immoderata corpus vexatione torquebat . . . sibi nec pacem ullam nec requiem indulgebat. Venationi namque trans modestiam deditus, summo diluculo equo cursore transvectus, nunc saltus lustrans, nunc silvas penetrans, nunc montium juga transcendens, dies ducebat inquietos: vespere vero domi receptum, vel ante coenam vel post, rarissime sedentem conspexeris. Post tantas namque fatigationes, totam statione continua curiam lassare consueverat.

staluuarthe, of flesshy body; & more of kynde than of glotony, grete of wombe; for he was, as to prynce belongeth, [of] mete, & of drynke ful meen & forberynge; . . .

Whan any vnhappes hym befelle, noman meker; efte whan he was yn sekernesse, no man sterneŕ. Suert ayeyn the bold, meke wyth ham that wereñ vnder y-brought, hard amonge hys owne, & priuely large amonge vnkouth.

&, for to a-quenche that gretnesse, he put hymself to ful mych trauaylle, that wnneth he lete hys body haue eny reste, ether by day other by nyght; ffor, wynter & somer, he arose euer more yn the dawninge, & herd fyrst hys seruyce of holy chyrch; theŕ-aftyr, most what al þe day he wold ben out, other wyth houndes other wyth hawkes, for yn thay two thynges he delyted hym swyth mych wythal; & vnnethe he wold ryde any amblynge hors, bot myche trottynge hors, for to trauaylle hys body the more. Aftyr al hys trauaylle a-day, vnnethe he lete hys body haue a lytell reste for to syte to hys mete the whyle that he eete; & anon aftyr mete, & namely aftyr sopper, anon he wold aryse & stonde, & so dryue forth al þe meste parte of the nyght, so that al þe court was oft ennyede theŕ-of.

Quem semel exosum habuerat,  
nix in amorem; Quem semel  
amauerat, nix in odium reuocabat.

[Two-thirds of a page of the full text is here left out, on Henry's "extreme delight in falconry and hunting; his open violation of his marriage-vow; his untruthfulness; his dilatoriness in matters of justice; his simoniacal practises; his love of peace; his almsgiving, humility, &c."]

Humilitatis amator; nobilitatis oppressor, & superbie calculator.

[Nearly two pages of the full text are here left out, on Henry's "usurpations in things of God; his inattention to divine service; his seizures of the revenues of vacant churches; his treatment of his sons; his wonderful memory," &c., &c.—and Harl. 177 begins again with the final paragraph, of which it gives the first sentence, and the last six words.]

sed haec [h]actenus, nec preterrem tamen, cursim & breuiter hic delibasse sufficiat. [11 words of print left out.] ad nostram de cetero hiberniam reuertamur.

pe man that he ones hated,  
vnnethe he wold euer eft loue;  
& man that he ones loued,  
vnneth he wold euer eft hate.

& openly mekenesse & debonerte  
he louede; pryde & hautesnesse  
he hated, & wold brynge vnder  
fote.

[not englishd.]

It is not my business to follow up this question of our



englisher's original. Dr. Bruce will, I hope, do that. I note only what I have just seen, that Mr. Dimock printed part of our Dublin MS., E. 2. 31, in five pages (on six) of his vol. v., pp. xciii-xeviii<sup>1</sup>, our pp. 2-10, to line 14, 'prince of wales'; and that from this part, he said (p. lxxvii) our MS. "seems rather a paraphrase of such portions of the treatise [*Expugnacio*] as the writer, no doubt an Anglo-Hibernian<sup>2</sup>, deemed most worthy the notice of Anglo-Hibernian readers"; while Prof. Earle held it "a truly interesting specimen of fifteenth century English" well worthy of publication.

Why didn't one of these excellent folk write to me about it at the time?

F. J. FURNIVALL.

MS. ROOM, BRITISH MUSEUM,  
28 September, 1893.

On the authority of Giraldus, Mr. Dimock comments on pages lxxx-lxxxii of his Preface, and thus concludes:

"Recent Irish scholars have quietly received Giraldus for what he is worth, as an impetuous, strongly biassed writer, whose statements have generally more or less of truth in them, but with much unfair one-sidedness. They have seen that his abuse is not confined to Ireland and the Irish, but is almost equally as fully lavished upon his own Wales and the Welsh; that, in fact, he has praise for scarcely any thing or body except himself and his near friends and relations. Some late Irish writers, under the reaction perhaps of his having been found too much fault with, seem to me to put more faith in Giraldus's history than it really deserves."

<sup>1</sup> His 'blethecher,' xcvi/13, is the MS. 'blethelier,' 6/14 below; his 'foden,' xcvii/7 from foot, is the MS. 'fondene,' 8/28; his 'with,' xciv/19, is the MS. 'swith' very, 4/3 below; his 'onenth' (half), xcv/2, is the MS. 'euerich,' 4/16; his 'ichaushed,' xcv/23, is the MS. 'ibanshed,' 4/34 below; his 'inewed,' xcviii/17, is the MS. 'meued' moved, 10/12 below; and so on. The copier, Mr. J. P. Prendergast, didn't know his MS.

<sup>2</sup> And evidently a strong Churchman. See how he makes Henry II attend church-service daily 86/27, when Giraldus complains of his neglect of services. Other instances occur of like bits not in Giraldus.

## SAMPLE OF THE LATER MS.

F. 4. 4, Trinity College, Dublin, p. 7 (middle of page).

*For comparison with Chapter XIII of the other MSS.*

*pp. 30-35 below.*

When the kinge did knowe his entent, and whether he would goe, he gave him fully leve, and warned him not. but with such leave as he hadde, he dighte and made him ready the wynter, till the begininge of may, he sente before him into Irelande a knyghte that was called Reymonde le gras;—with him, tenn knyghts, and fortye Squiers, and fourescore bowemen;—a man full hardy, and well proved in weapon; Roberts nephewe, and Morices Eldeste brothers sone. They arryved at a place called Dondoneuile, foure myle besouthe the hawen of Waterforde; and there they arrearede a dicke, and a feble castell upon, of yards and turues [*? MS. iureus*]. The men of Waterforde, and with them Malaughlyne Ofolane, they did understande that they had such Neighbourehedde which them lothed: they concluded that they would upon them, or enny more weare to them come. they assembled them together, well thre thowsande men, and wente over the water of sure, that partethe the twoe counties of leynester and of Mounester, and sett them in thre hosts, bouldely for to assaile the Englyshmen within there Castell. Reymonde and his men, thoughe they weare but fewe, they weare not fainte to fighte with uneven hoste, they assemblede them together; But, as noe wonder was, soe fewe men mighte nat fighte againste soe many; theie turned them againe to there receipte. the other, thinkinge that they departed in discomfetur, they brake there sheldrun, and followed them: and they weare not fully within the gate, but some of them weare rather in [*than*] thenglyshe men. Reymonde sawe that he and his weare in greate perill, and upon pointe to losse there lyves. he cried to his fellowes, and turned worthely upon there foemen. and the firste that came in, he clave his hedde, and throwly killed him: all thoste



weare dyscomfitted, and toke them to flighte. The others them followed into all the plaine, and layde them one soe, that in litle while they slowe of them fyve hundreth and moe; and the moste parte of thother fell downe into the see from the hie roke, and drowne themselves. in this fighte, was a knyght that heighte William fferande, that did over well, and above all other. he was a man that hade semblante as thoughe he weare one the much yuell; and therefore he put him-selfe whear the moste perill was; for [he] raughte not whether death came betwen him and his yuell, or it weare overmuch smitte [? MS. suirtte] upon him. here the pride of Waterforde fell; all there mighte went to noughte: herof came the Englyshe hoppe and comforte; and to the Iryshe, dredd and wanhop; for it was never therbefore harde, that, of soe fewe men, soe greate a slaughter was done. but unwise counsaile they did thereafter, that turned them to much crueltie; ffor when the Maystrý was all thers, and all there foemen overcom, In the fighte weare taken well threscore men and tenn, that them had yelded, and weare the higheste and the richeste men of all the Cýttý, such that theye mighte have had the Cittý deliuered for them, or els asmuch Catell as they woulde desire. Henry of mountud, that to them was come, and Reýmounde, upon diuerse domes stroven whate they shoulde doe with there prisoners; ffor Reymounde travailede aboute for to deliuer them, as a man of Rewthefull mode, and thus saide to his fellowes: "Lordings, whate is us beste to doe with oure wretched prisoners? I saye nat that one anny manner one shoulde spare his foemen; but they be nat nowe oure foemene, but be men nat rebels, but in Battaile for to defende there county, overcome. me thinke they are nowe in such state, that we oughte better to have mercýe of them, and gýve them lýfe,—for to gýve others example to be boxom,—then cruelý to doe them to deathe, whearethroughe others, ffor feare of mystruste, the lesse will yeld them to us." When Reýmounde had theise wourds saide, in all the folke was amoste none to graunte them lyfe; Arose up Henry amonge

them all, and this them saide: "I-noughe Remounde openly to us hathe spoken of mercý and almosedede, <sup>1</sup>how vnked<sup>1</sup> landes are wonne; and not with slaughter and burneing. whether Alixandr and Julius Cesar, that weare lords of all the wourde, wonne lands bý such way, I woulde Reýmounde woulde me answe. when they came to us well arrayed for to fighte, yf theie had wone the overhande and overcome us, woulde they, for almose and for rewth, haue had mercý one us? noe, I trowe not. therfore, but those one of twoe wayes: eyther doe manly that thinge whea[re]fore we bene come, and the folke that rebell againste us, with [out] any noyse, with weapone heartely bringe owt of dawes; otherwise, yf we shall doe almose-dede one them, and spare them, as Reymounde hath saide, lett us wend to oure shippes, and turne agaýne; and lett we the wretched men houlde there lande, and Brouke it, without any challendge." Henries dome licked them better then Reymonds; and the Cittizens weare demed to death. They had noe wonte of waritrees; and therfore They ladd them to the clyffe of the see, and putt them downe, and drowned them.

of the firste goode adventure that him befell, they that beste weare worthýe should haue there parte, and the hoste. all the towne of wexforde, with the twoe nexte countýes, he gave to Roberte Stephensson and to Morýce fitz Geraude, as forwarde was to-for made. other twoe nexte counties, he gaue to Henry of Mountmorthie,—nexte thay twoe, one the syde towarde waterforde,—a knyghte that came in that same flote, hym pridsome of knyghts, and came throughe thearle Richarde, more for to spye the land, then for to fighte.

<sup>1-1</sup> Afterwards written above the line in MS.





## THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF IRELAND.

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY. No. 107.

*Original Series, 1896.*

**Boxom-fastines** 62/18: this should be two words, *buxom fastness*, an obsequious covenant, meant to render *L. fucato foedere*.

**Costes**: part of *far-costes* below.

**Ense** 80/29: read **Euse**, eaves, edge, border: 'the wode evese (*ms.* hevese) voc. 159.'—Bradley's *Stratmann*.

**Far-costes** 80/5: 'O.N. *farkostr*; means of conveyance, boat, ship, *Engl. Metr. Hom.* xix.'—*ib.*

**Fawes** 96/2: perhaps the Irish *fogha* (O'Reilly), a dart, O.Ir. *fogae* (Lat. *jacula*).

**Folk place** 50/15: the folk (for *febyll* in the Rawlinson MS.) was caught from the 'lond-folk' in the next line.

**Herrer** 116/30: the Latin is 'et citra majoris auctoritatem urbem obtenturum.'—*Gir. Cambr. Op.* v. 342.

**I-quenyted** 36/35: miswritten for *Iquemed*, pleased.

**I-suywed** 116/9: read **I-snywed**, 'snowed' their arrows; the Latin is 'sagittarum . . . grandine perfuso.'

**Lygne** 102/17: as *fayre & lygne* translates 'procerus et pulcher,' the word must mean 'tall'; perhaps it is a misreading for *hyghe*, high.

**Lyme** 62/18: the Latin has *amorem*; the scribe must have misread *lune* (love) as *lime*, and transcribed it *lyme*.

**Ost** 50/2: cannot mean 'burnt.' The word is superfluous; perhaps the translator at first wrote *lytell ost* (little host), and then altered *ost* into *stonwal*, but did not clearly enough expunge the rejected word.

**Priuisant** 80/28: cannot mean 'foreseeing'; it is probably a mistake for *pursuant*, *pursuivant* (the Latin is *satelles*).

**Ryuely** 128/12: *rifely*, abundantly.

**Sheldrun** 31/29 (R): company-formation, O.E. *scild-truma* (whence *shelter*); the Rawlinson MS. here preserves the right reading, that of the Dublin MS. being unmeaning.

**Spourges** 112/3: ? for *spronges*, shoots, sprouts.

**porwe** 28/12: ? through; *wel porwe* 'well through,' urgently (the Latin is 'omnibus modis').

**Trukked** 48/9: ran short, *trukien*, O.E. *trucian*, fail, be lacking.

**Wecchene** 36/31: *cwecchen*, to twitch, shake.

**Wenttene** 106/8: for *weten*, know (*pat* is to *weten* = that is to say); the scribe was misled by seeing *wentten* (went) in the line above.

**Yonre** 104/10: **Youre** 114/27: *yovre*, *ȝeofre*, O. E. *ȝifre*, greedy.



# THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF IRELAND

FOUNDED ON THE *EXPUGNACIO HIBERNICA* OF  
GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS

---

## A PARALLEL TEXT

FROM TWO MSS., I. AB. 1425 A.D. MS. TRIN. COLL., DUBLIN, E. 2. 31;

II. AB. 1440 A.D. MS. RAWLINSON B. 490, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD

# THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF IRELAND

FOUNDED ON

GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.

(*MS. Trin. Coll., Dublin, E. 2. 31.*)

## [CHAPTER I.]

[Fol. 1 a.] **Y**N the tym that the kynges henry, þat was the kynges  
When fadyr Richard & the kynges fadyr Iohn, regned in englaund  
Henry II well, & <sup>1</sup> heighe mañ in Irland, þat het dermod Macmorgħ, princes  
reigned in England, of leynyster, that is I-told þe fiste parte of Irland. That dermod, 4  
Dermot from the tym that he was lord of lond, & folt shold gouerne, he  
Macmurgh ruled over Leinster, went amonge his heighe meñ, and so hard ham biladde þat pay  
A. D. 1135- casten grete hat to hym, and myche thay wax hym ageyn in  
71. herth<sup>2</sup>, pegħ pey ne durst nat oppenly shewe. Whañ he hade 8  
His folk hated him; longe whil þus bilad hym amonge his meñ, bettidde an aduenture  
[<sup>1</sup> &, an, a]. [longe whil þus bilad hym amonge his meñ, bettidde an aduenture  
<sup>2</sup> heart]. that turnede hym per-afty to mych harme; ffor in mythe was a  
but the kynges that hegth Rowry, & a well fayr wommañ to wif; and as  
wife of King Rory meñ tellede oft, and soth it is I-found, that som of heme ben 12  
of Meath loved him, to vnstable of herth<sup>2</sup>, wher-throgh many harmes ben oper-whil,  
þat ne beñ nat now al to rekne. This Rouryes wif worthen  
to þe loue of Macmurgh moř þan hyr owñ lord, and he hir also,  
& this was longe; bot to-giddre ne myghtyn þei nat com as 16  
the wold; for hit betid a tym þat hir lord went owt of his contrey  
in-to fer londes, for grete nedes þat he hade to don. his wif  
a-waitede full well, & aspied þat hir lord most longe be owt of  
and sent a-waitede full well, & aspied þat hir lord most longe be owt of  
for him lond, send to Macmurgh, & bade hym, þat if he euer wold his 20  
when Rory was away. will hawe of hir, that he shold com to hyr, for sho was redy  
He took to do all þat hym likede. ¶ Macmorgħ name power with hym,  
her to and went thař this lady was; & as hit be-spoke was, he name  
Leinster, hir, & broght hir out of myth into leynestř, and hell hir that to 24  
A. D. 1152,



# OF THE CONQUEST OF IRLAND BY ENGLYSH MEÑ.

(MS. Raul. B. 490, Bodl. Libr.)

## [CHAPTER I.]

**I**N the tyme that Kynge Henry, that was the kynges Fadyr [Fol. 1 a.]  
Rychard and the kynges Fadyr Ihoñ, regned in England, <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
was an hey man in Irland, whos name was callyd Dermot Mac-  
murgħ, Prince of leynystre, that is y-tolde the fyfte Parte of <sup>Leinster</sup>  
Irlande. That Dermot, from the tyme that he was lorde of lond, <sup>is a fifth</sup> and  
folke sholde goverñ, he werret cruely amonge his hey men, <sup>part of</sup> and so  
harde hame lade, that thay castyn grete hate to hym, <sup>Ireland.</sup> and muche  
they were ayennes hym in herte, theght they ne dvrste nat opynly  
shewe. Whan he hadd thus longe tyme lade hym amonge hys  
men, be-felle an aduenture that turned hym ther-aftyr to mych  
harne; For in myth was a kynge, whos name was Roury, and <sup>Tiernan</sup>  
hadd a wel fayre woman to wyffe; and as men tellyth ofte, and sith <sup>O'Rourke,</sup>  
hit is y-found, that some of them ben vnstabill of hert, wherfore <sup>king of</sup>  
many harmys ben ofte-tymes, that ben nat now all to reherse // <sup>Breifny.</sup>

This Rouries wyfe lowyd more Macmurgħ than hyr owyn lorde; 'Varium  
and he hyr also, and this was longe; but to-giddy ne myght they <sup>et mutabile</sup>  
not come as they wolde; for hit be-felle in a tyme, that hyr lord <sup>semper</sup>  
went out of his contrey into fere londys, for grete neddes that he <sup>femina'</sup>  
hadde to done. His wyfe be-thoght hyr ful well, and, Supposynge <sup>(Virg. Aen.</sup>  
that hyr lord moste longe be out of londe, Sche sente to Mac- <sup>iv. 569).</sup>  
murgħ, and sayde to hym, that yf he euer wolde his wille haue of  
hyr, that he sholde cvme to hyr, for she was redy to do al that  
hym lykyd //

Macmurgħ toke wyth hym many men, and went there this lady <sup>A. D. 1152.</sup>  
was. and as hit was be-for spoke be-tweñ them both, he toke hyr <sup>O'Rourke's</sup>  
wyth hym out of myth into leynestere, and helde hyr there to hys off. <sup>wife</sup>  
<sup>carried</sup>

A.D. 1152. his will. Nat for-þaū sho grad and cried, as thogh he naūd hiſ  
and kept agaynes hiſ will, as hit nas nat so. Than hiſ lord hit herde, he  
her there. was ther-of tened swith stronge, and mych moſ of the shamme  
Rory and þat to hyū was doū, þan of the harme; all that he mygth do, 4  
his ally, he didde, for to awreke hyū; he sent after his owū power,  
the King he eke all þat he myght of other; and the kynge of Connagth,  
of Con- naught, þat was that tynū lorde of Irland, com to hyū with his power:  
march into he gadrede so moch folke(?) þat noū end nas, and com into 8  
Leinster. leynestr for to wreke hyū of his shame. Tho Macmorgth this  
herd, he sent to his meū þat pay sholde hyū helppe ayeyū his  
fomeū þat þus wereū commyng toward hyū. They bethoghten  
Mac- ham of the ten & the trayson þat they ham hade ydoū per- 12  
murch's to-fore | and forsoke, al out of dout, þat pay nogth woth hyū  
men refuse helpe; and many of ham openly turned to his fomeū ayeyns hyū,  
him; ffor to wreke ham of the iniurie þat he ham had doū. Macmorgth  
saw þat power hyū failed; & euerich half he was amyde his 16  
fomeū beset. he was maū of hegth hert; and with þe litill power  
þat he had, he werrede as long as he myght; bot he ne myght  
nat all-way all-on ayeyns all the lande folke | he was so narowe  
bilad þat nedes he most thoff deth, other þe lond leue; he saw 20  
þat noū oper remedy was: he went to the see, and fond shippe  
so he sails redy, and wynde at will, & passede oure into england, with well  
to Eng- few with hyū; and on this maner he sawit his lif, & lefte lond  
land, A.D. & lede & all his other good. Hereby þat meū may witte, þat 24  
1166, & be a maū of neuer so mych power, bettre hym is þat hys men hym  
loue þane hate. ¶ Whane Macmorgth was thus icome in-to  
england, al hys thoght was how he myght hym best worck of the  
schame þat hyme was done, & of þat þat he was so vilich out of 28  
hys kynd lond I-dryue, he nyst of whom he myght bettre besech  
[\*Fol.11b.] help þane of þe kynge. And þe kynge was þane fer in the  
and then realme of fraunce for grete nedes þat he hade to done. Macmorgth  
to France, passed ouer to hym. þe kynge fayr hym vndrefyng, \* & with mych 32  
to ask mane shipe. and whan had he tolde hyme the enchesoun of hys  
Henry II's comyng to hym, and whar-for he was out of hys londe ibanshed,  
aid. þe kynge was swyth wo therfor, & good hert hadde hym to helpe,  
naſ oper grete nedes þat he hade to done. Whane he ne myght 36



wylle. And ther-fore she Cryed, and mad moche sorow and lemen- A.D. 1152.  
tacion, as thogh he toke hyr ayeynnes hir wyll: As hit was not So /

Than hyr lorde hit herd, he was ther-of full stronge a-greued, and O'Rourke  
mych more of the shame that to hym was don, than for the harme. is wroth at  
Al that he myght do, he dyd, forto be wroke on hym. he Sente the shame  
after his owyn men, and eke al that he myght of othyr; and the done him,  
kyng of Connaght, that In that tyme was lorde of Irlande, come to and  
hym wyth his Power. And he gaderid' so myche Pepyll, that they invades  
were vnnvmerable, Comynge Into leynystre, forto be vengyd' of his Leinster.  
shame //

Tho Macmurgh her[de ther]of, he Sent to his men, that thay Mac-  
sholde hym helpe ayeynes his foe-men, that thus weryn comynge murgh's  
to-warde hym.

Thay bethoghten them of cruelte and the traysouñ that to ham  
he hadd' done therto-fore, And forsoke al out of dowte that thay  
wolde noght hym helpe. And many of them opynly turned to his  
Ennemys ayeynes hym, ffor to wroke tham of the Iniury that he  
to them hadd' done //

Macmurgh sawe that his men failled hym; and on Euche halwe men fail  
he was amydd' his ennemys besegydd'. He was a man of hey herte; him,  
and wyth the fewe Pepill that he hadd', he werrið as longe as he  
myght; but he ne \* myght not alway dure ayennes the Londe folke. [\*Fol.1b.]  
He was so narrow bylade, that nedys he mvste suffyr deth, or the  
londe leue. he saw that non othyr remedy was. He went to the  
see, and fovnde shippe redy, and wynde at wyll, and passyd' owyr so he  
into England; with wel fewe with hym; and on this maner he sauyd' crosses to  
his lyfe, and lefte lond and lede, and al othyr good' // Here-by men England,  
may witte that, be a mān neuer of so mych Powere, bettyr hit is to A.D. 1166,  
hym, that his men hym loue, than hate // Whan Macmurgh was  
thus y-come Into England, al his thoght was, how he myght hym  
best wreke of the shame that hym was y-doñ, and of that that he  
was so shamfully out of his kynde londe I-dryue. He wyst not of  
whom he myght bettyr beseke helpe and sokovre, than of the  
kyng. And the kyng was then fer in the reame of Fraunce, for and then  
gret nedys that he hadd' to doñ. Macmurgh passyd' ouer to hym. to France,  
the kyng fayre hym vndyrfonge, and with mych vyrchipp. And where  
when he hadde tolde hym the cause of hys comynge to hym, and Hen. II  
the cause where-for he was out of his Land y-baneshyd, the kyng welcomes  
was sory therfor, and good-will hym hadd' to helpe, nere othyr grete him.  
nedys that he hadde to don. Whan he ne myght nat ellis do, he

A. D.  
1165-7.

Henry  
appeals to  
his sub-  
jects to  
help Mac-  
murgh,

who  
returns to  
Bristol,

and agrees  
to give  
his  
daughter  
and Lein-  
ster to  
Earl  
Strugoill,  
in return  
for aid.  
Macmurgh  
goes to  
South  
Wales,  
A.D. 1167,

where Rys  
is prince.

nat elles do, he name of hym homage, & othes, & lete hyme mak  
hys lettres, that thus mych ben to vndrestond: 'Henry, throgh  
gode-is grace kyng of england, duc of normandy & of Acquitayne,  
& erl of angoy, to al hys liegemen, englyssh, normannes, Walshe, 4  
Scottes, and to al oper that to hym ben subiect, sendeth gretynge.  
Whan pese lettres to yow ben i-com, witte ye pat we, dermot,  
prince of leynester, in our grace and in our goode will have  
receyuet; wharfore pat all pay that hym as our lawfull man 8  
heh[pe] willeth, into his lond hym to restore, our grace and our goode  
leue haue pay per-to.' Whan Macmorgh had the kynges lettres  
thus y-purchasede—pe kyng hym yaf also richely pat hym nedet  
of his tresour—he nam leue of the kyng, & wentt in-to england 12  
& com to Bristow, & sojourned tha a whill; & so mych the  
blethelier, for per com oft shippes theder out of Irland, & men,  
pat he myght hir tythyng of the lond & of his folkis, for his hert  
was mych there-to. The whill pat he ther was, well oft he let rede 16  
pe kynges wrytte to-for the peple; & largely he beheght londes and  
rentes, & Rich yiftes, if any wer that hym helpe wold. Bot he ne  
fond noon with-all, that such tynge wolde ne durst vndirtake,  
till pat the erle of Strugoill, Richard pe Erles son Gilbert, com 20  
to hym. Ther was pe parlement so longe y-dryue betwē ham,  
& sekiritesse y-makyd, pat the Erle shold hym helpe with all  
his power pe next somer per-after, and he shold yeue pe Erle  
his doghtre, with all pe lond of leynestre. ¶ Whane this was on 24  
this maner ypu[rueied, for the grete] talent pat Macmorogh had  
to be neer his lond—as man tynke [no place so<sup>1</sup>] mery lyghtly, as  
in his kynd stidde,—he went hym thennes in-to south walsys, to  
seynt daues toun, vp-on pe see; & mych hit gladet his hert, 28  
thogh he strongly mourned, pat he myght in fayr weder haue  
somedell syght of his lond.

¶ In that tym was prince in wales, Rys, Gryffynes son, on per<sup>2</sup>  
the kyng of england; & a swith good man bisshoppe of seynt 32  
dauy, and was his nam, 'ahon dauy'; & both pe prince & eke pe

<sup>1</sup> Dermitius, desiderio visendae patriae plurimum accensus, eaque dulcedine, qua natale solum cunctos ducere solet, amplius allectus.—Gir. Camb., *Expugnatio Hibernica*, cap. ii, Op. v. 228, Rolls Series.

<sup>2</sup> under.



toke of hym homage *and* othis, *and* lette hym make his letteres, that thus myche bene to vnderstand // 'Henry, throw goddys grace, kynge of England, Duke of Normandy and of acquytanye, *and* Erle of angoy, to al his lege men, Englyssh, normannes, Walshe, Scotcs, and to al othyr that to hym ben subiecte / Sendyth gretynge. Whan this lettres ben to yow y-come, witte ye that we, Dermot Prince of Lelynystre, in oure grace *and* in oure goode-wyll, haue receuet; wherfor that al thay that hym / as oure lafull man he[l]pe will, Into his londe hym to restore, oure grace and oure good-wyll haue they therto' // 'When Macmurgh hadd the kynges Letteres thus y-Purchasyd, (the kyng hym yafe also rychely, that hym nedyd of his tresoure,) He toke Leue at the kyng, *and* went into England, *and* come to Brystow, *and* soyorned ther awhyle; *and* myche radyr, for ther come oft shippis thedyr out of Irland, *and* men, that he myght hyr thythyng of the Londe *and* of his Pepyll; for his hert was mych therto // The whyle that he there was, well oft he made to be redd the kynges lettres to-for the Pepyll; and largely he promysyd londys, and rentis, *and* othyr ryche yeftys, to them that hym wolde he[l]pe. But he ne found none, wyth al that, that Suche thyng wolde ne druste vndyrtake, tyll that the Erle of Strugoill, Richarde, the Erlis Sonne Gylbert <sup>1</sup>, come to hym. Ther was the Parlement <sup>2</sup> so longe y-dryue be-twen ham, and sekyrnesse y-makyd, that the Erle sholde hym helpe *with* al his Powere the nexte somere ther-aftyr, And he sholde yeue the Erle his doghtyr, *with* al the lond of leynystre // Whan this was on this maner purueyed<sup>3</sup>, For grete affeccion that Macmurgh had to ben neere his londe, (as man thynkyth no Place so Myrry lyghtly as in his Kynd \* Place,) [\*Fol. 2a.] he went fro thens Into Sutte Walis, to Seynt Dauyes toun vp-on the see; *and* mych hit gladdyd his herte, thegh he strongly moryd, that he myght in fayre weddyr haue somdel Syght of his lond / In that tyme was prynce in walis, Rys, Gryfynes Sonne, vnder the kyng of England, And a wyrshipphul man, Bishope of Seynte Daui, *and* also his name was daui <sup>4</sup>. And both the Prince *and* also

A. D.  
1166-7.

The  
Kygys  
letteres

in favour of  
Murrough,

who comes  
back to  
England,

and is  
promist  
help by  
Richard,  
Earl of  
Striguil.

<sup>1</sup> Camden adds 'dictus Strengbow, fortis arcus.'—D.

<sup>2</sup> Colloquium.

<sup>3</sup> His itaque seriatim hoc ordine completis.

<sup>4</sup> Davidque secundo

Meneviac praesidente.

A.D. 1167. bisshoþ well wýrshipfully vndrefynge Macmorgh, & mych reut had of his enemyte, & of his mych lostes, & of þe mych shamme þat hym was i-doñe.

## [CHAPTER II.]

Rys has in prison a Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, once Constable of South Wales.

In the tyme þat this was so, was in prison with þe prince of wales, a knyght þat heght Robert Stefenes-soñ, þat som tyme had y-be constable of all south walys, & many il turnes had idoñe vpon þe princes men whan þay any thyng mysdeden; & progh traisoñ of his owne men he was I-take & delyuered to the prince; & pre yer he was I-hold in prisonne ar Macmorgh theder cam. Oft þe prince hym profred to delyuer hym out of prison, so þat he wold be his helpe to werry vp-on þe kyng; bot Robert was a trew man, & for no tynge wold do thyng wher-of he myght be per-after I-wyted of wntrowth. Than—progh besechynge of þe bisshope & of Moryce fitz-Geraud, þat weren Robertes two bretheren on his moþer half,—he was delyuered owte of prison on this manere: þat he & Morice his brother shold, þe next somer, wend in-to Irland, with ar power to helpe Macmorgh; & he shold hym yeue þe toñ of weysford, with þe twey next cantredes; & of this was good sekernes Imaked on ether half. ¶ Whan this thyng<sup>1</sup> was all thus bespokene, Macmorgh ne myght no lengere suffre þat he ne most to his land wend; thegh he ne fond nat þe aduentures þat he soght, such as hyme lif wer, ne non other power he ne broght with hym than he out ladde. He had shippe redy, and good wynd; and passed ouer in-to Irland; & boldly aryued in lond þer he had many fomen and fewe frendes. from þe see he went to fernes; and well simply he lyued þer all þe wynttyr with the Clergie of þe chirch, wiche well sayr hym vndrefynge, and by hare power to hym & to his, fonden þat hame was nede.

[\*Fol.2a.]

He sets Robert free, on condition that he and his half-brother Maurice Fitz-gerald help Macmurgh.

[<sup>1</sup> MS. kyng.] Macmurgh sails to Ireland, and winters at Ferns.

A.D. 1169.

Fitz-stephen collects

30 knights, xxxi squires, and 300 foot-men

## [CHAPTER III.]

Vnder that tyme, Robert Steunes-soñ hym dyght to wend in-to Irland, as a man þat on all maner wold hold lawfully his trowthe and his behest. he hade purueied hym of 30 knights, xxxi knyghtes and lx skyers, & ccc of foot-men with bowes and arowes; and knyghtes and þe skyers well I-horsed and well y-wepened; all of his owñ kyne and of his owne nurtur. Thay



the Byshope wel wyrchippully vndyrfonge Macmurgh, and myche A.D. 1167.  
Pite hadd of his Enemyte and of his mych Lostys, And of the mych  
shame that hym was done.

## [CHAPTER II.]

**I**N the tyme that this was so, was in Prisonne wyth the Prince Capitulum 2<sup>m</sup>.  
of Walys, a knyght, whos Name was Robert Steues-Sonne, Ea tempestas Robertus filius Stephani, qui apud Aberteivi, Kereticæ regionis caput, &c.  
that sometyme hadd y-be constabill of al Suthe Walis, and many  
yll tvrnys hadd y-done vp-on the Princes men, when thay eny  
thyng mysdedyn; and throgh traysoun of his owyn men, he was  
y-take and delyuerid to the Prince. And thre yere he was holde  
in prison, are Macmurgh thedyr come. Oft the Prince hym  
proferyd to delyuer hym out of pryson, So that he wolde be his  
helpe to wer vp-on the kyng; but Robert was a trew man, and for  
nothyng wold do thyng wher-of he myght be thier-after reprov'd  
of vntrowth //

Than,—throgh be-sechyng of the Byshope and of Moryce fize- Interveni-  
Geraud, that weryn Robertys two bretheryn on his Modyr syde,—he entibus  
was delyueryd out of Pryson on this manere: That he and Morice igitur  
his brodyr sholde, the nexte Somyr, wende Into Irland, with har uterinis  
Powere, to helpe Macmurgh; and he sholde hym yeue the toun of ejusdem  
weysford, with the twey nexte cantredes: and of this was good fratribus,  
swrte y-fondyd on euery syde. / Whan this was al thus Spokyñ, &c.  
Macmurgh myght not lengyr Suffyr that he ne mvste to his Lond  
wende, thegh he ne found nat the aduentures that he Soght, suche  
as hym lykyd, ne none othyr Powere he ne broght wyth hym, than  
he out-ladd: / he had shipe redy, and good wynd, and Passyd ouer A clero  
into Irland, and boldely arryued in londe ther-as he hadd many loci illius  
Enemys and few frendys. / From the see he went to Fernys; and honorifice  
wel sympylly he lyued there al the wynty, with the Clergy of the juxta  
chyrche, whych wel fayre hym vndyrfonge, and by har Power to hym modulum  
and to his, foundyn that ham was nede. facultatis  
exhibitus,  
&c.

## [CHAPTER III.]

A.D. 1169.

**V**NDER that tyme, Robert Steues-Sonne hym dyght to wende Capitulum 3<sup>m</sup>.  
Into Irland, as a man that on al maner wolde holde lawfully Nec promissionis immemor, nec fidei contemp-  
his throuth, and his behest. He had Purveyed hym of xxxvi tor, &c.  
knyghtes and lx Squyeris, and ccc of fote-men with bowes and  
arowes; And the knyghtis and the Squyris wel y-horsyd and wel  
wepenyd, al of his owyn kyñ and his owyn nurture. Thay dyddyn

and lands  
at Banow,  
c. May 1,  
1169.

Approphecy  
of Merlin  
was thus  
fulfild.

Macmurgh  
and Fitz-  
stephen  
unite their  
forces,

diddeñ hame to sailh att send daunes, and aryuedeñ at Banow  
in Irlaund; well vnsikere on euery halfe. thay vncharged hare  
shippes, & made ham loges on lond. Thane was fulfilled a prophecie  
pat merlyñ seid of this commynge: "A knyght *with* party armes 4  
shañ formost breke þe clos of Irland." Such armes bare pat  
Robert. he send soñ to Dermod Macmorgh, and didde hyñ to  
witt of his commynge; and þe thedyng spronge fort soñ into all  
þe lond; what folke was to hyñ Icond. and of þo that to-for hyñ 8  
hade I-left, and litill told by hyñ, commyn soñ to hyñ, so pat he  
had I-gadered fywe hundred meñ. he wentt witt this folk to þe  
Englysse-meñ; and [when] pay com to-gedd̃r, euery of ham was the  
gladder for other. Ther was the forward meued bethweñ ham, 12  
and othes y-swõr, and sekernesse I-made to conferme all þe  
forward, as hit there-by-for was purueied by-for the prince of wales.

## [CHAPTER IV.]

and march  
to Wexford,  
about  
twelve  
miles from  
Banow.

The towns-  
men at first  
resolve  
to meet  
them in the  
field, but,  
on seeing  
their array,  
retire  
within the  
city.

**W**han this sekernesse was thus y-maked, pese twey maner  
folkes, with ooñ witt, and *with* ooñ hert, *with* Baners 16  
i-lacet, nam the wey toward weysford. The meñ of þe self toñ  
weren ywar of har commyng, and tok ham to rede—for þe tother  
weren so few, & day so many—that pay wold figth *with* ham in þe  
pleyne felde. They cam owt of the toñ arraied on har maner; bot 20  
whan pay sawe the Englismeñ, *with* hors I-helled *with* yreñ  
harnes, ham-self well I-wepned *with* haubergeons, and Bright  
helmes and sheldes, wich the sawe neuer per-to-for, they toke  
a-nother rede, and turned ayeyñ to toñ; & all pat was *with*-owt þe 24  
walles, thay sett a-fyr and brent, & redied ham to hold ham  
*with*-yne the wallys *with* streynthe. Robert *with* his meñ went  
strongly for to assayh to toñ, & sette the bowmeñ for to wer the  
fight of the kernels, and turned the wepned meñ to fill þe \*diches. 28  
thay *with*-yn defendet ham stalwarthly *with* stonnes and stakes,  
wher-of they wer I-warned, and wer many I-hurt whit-yn and eke  
*with*-out, so that thay *with*-out mosten nedes leue of the assault,  
& withdraw ham. Among ham was a yong knyght pat het 32  
Robert de Barry, pat drogh yong blodes hete, and for hys  
stalwardnes, reght nat of his lif: as he wold *with* þe formoste  
Barri has a passe ouer the wall, he hent a dynt *with* a greth stone vpon þe

The assault  
on Wexford  
is success-  
fully  
resisted.

Robert de  
Barri has a



ham to sayle at Seynt Dauyes, and londyd at the Banow in Irland, A.D. 1169.  
 wel vnsykyr on euery syde. thay vnchargid har shippis, *and* made  
 ham logis on londe \*. Than was fulfillid a prophesy that Merlyn [\*Fol.2b.]  
 seyde of this comynge: 'A knygh[t] with Party armys shall formyst  
 breke the clos of Irland.' Such armys bare that Robert. He sent  
 sone to Dermot Macmurgh, and didde hym to vnderstand of his  
 comynge; And thythyngis spronge forth sone Into al the londe, what  
 Pepill was to hym come. And many of them that to-forid hym  
 hadd forsake and lefte, *and* lytill seett by hym, comen sone to hym,  
 So that he hadd gaderid v. C. men. / He went with this pepyll to  
 the Englysh men; And when thay come to-gedde, euery of them  
 was the gladdyr for othyr / Ther were the for-sayde conontis  
 rehersyd *and* mevid between tham, and othis sworn, *and* sekyrnesse  
 made, to conferme all the forsayde, as hit was ther-to-fore Purveyed  
 be-fore the Prince of Walys.

[CHAPTER IV.]

**W**Han this sekyrnyssse was thus madd, this two maner Capitulum  
 Pepyll, wyth on wyll, and with oon herte, with baners 4<sup>m</sup>.  
 lacyd, toke ther wey towardes weysford. The men of the toun  
 weryn y-ware of thare comynge, *and* toke them to consayll,—for the  
 othyr weryn so few, and thay so many,—that thay wolde figh[t] with  
 ham in the Playn felde. Thay come out of the toun arrayed  
 on ther maner; but when they sawe the Englysh men, with hors  
 y-hellyd with Iryn harneys, ham-Selfe wel wepenyd with hauber-  
 geons, and bryght Salletis and sheldys, whych thay sawe neuer  
 there-to-forid, thay toke anothyr consayll, *and* turned ayayn to  
 toun; and al that was with-out the wallis, thay sette afyre *and*  
 brente; *and* arrayed tham to kepe ham with-In the wallis with  
 Streynth. Robert, wyth his men, went Strongly to assaylle the  
 toun, *and* sette the bowmen forto were the fyght of the  
 cornelis, *and* turned the wepenyd men to fill the dichis. thay  
 wythin defendyd ham boldely with Stones and Stakys, wher-of  
 they were y-warnyd, [....] and mosten nedis lewe the assaute, and  
 wythdrawe ham / Amonge ham was a yong knyght / whos name  
 was Robert de barry, that, throgh yonge blodis hette, *and* for his  
 boldnys, roght not to lesse the lyfe / As he wolde wyth the fryst  
 Passe ouer the walle, he hadd a stroke with a grette stone vp-on

Party per  
 pale gules  
 & ermyn  
 a saltyer  
 contre-  
 chaunged.  
 Miles  
 bipartitus  
 armis,  
 Hiberniae  
 claustra  
 primus  
 irrumpet.

equestrem  
 turmam  
 loriciis et  
 clipeis  
 galeisque  
 fulgenti-  
 bus in-  
 signem...

propugna-  
 cula vero  
 sagittariis  
 eminus  
 observanti-  
 bus...

juvenili  
 insultans  
 calore...

A.D. 1169.  
narrow  
escape.

The assail-  
ants of the  
town burn  
the ships  
they find  
on the  
strand.

Next day,  
the  
townsmen  
surrender.

Macmurgh  
gives  
grants  
of land to  
Maurice  
Fitzgerald  
and  
Hervey of  
Mount-  
maurice.

heued al *with* the helme, þat he fel doun yn the ground of þe  
dich; & vnnethes he was I-draw vp throgh his felowes, þat mych  
put har lyf in aduentur for to saw his lif. The cry was well  
gret on euery syde, for this knyght þat thus was I-hurt. Thay 4  
*with-drow* ham fro the wallys and wenten ham to þe strond; and  
all þe shippes þat pay þer fond, thay settene a-fyre. And .O. shippe  
þer was, that was I-com owt of Brittainne aftyr cheffar, and was  
y-charget *with* whet & *with* wynes, and lay I-ancred in the 8  
lauene: the best parte of the englisemen wenten *with* bottes  
and toke his shippe. þe shippmen werne many, and saw that þer  
weren bot a few englys in the shippe, & the wynd was of þe lond;  
thay cutte the cable of the ankre, and þe wynd bare the shippe 12  
in toward the see: her fellowes saw this, and wenten after *with*  
bottys; and vnnethe *with* rowyng, and *with* gret peril of all har  
lyues, þay come ayeyn to lond. Macmorgh saw this, & weren  
sore amaied, for thay wend neuer more þat on [of] ham shold haw 16  
com to lond a-lyue. The assaut was I-left all þat day. A-morowe,  
whan masse was I-herd, al þe host þay wentene to the assaut  
wislyere and warliere þan thay didden the day befor, and struten  
as well to sleght as to streynth. The men of the ton saw ham 20  
commynge, and wer right so aferd that day shold nat withstond  
the assaute, and vndrestonden al-so that *with* wrong day holden  
ayaȝn her lord; thay tok ham to red, and besoghten pees; &  
drogh be-sechyng of twe bissoppes, that þat tym weren *with-yn* 24  
the town, and other possible men al-so *with* ham, thay yolden  
ham al to Macmor[gh]; and four hostages, the best þat he wold  
chese, delyuered to hym for the pees, and trywly *with* hym for  
to hold frome þat tym forward, as har kyndly lord. Macmorgh, 28  
as wise & war, ffor-thy that he wold that þe out-commyn men  
shold haw the bettre hert, and will, hym for to serue, he bethoght  
þat, of the fyrst good aduentur þat hym was befall, þay that  
best weren worthy shold hawe har parte, and þe host. Al þe 32  
ton of weysford, *with* twey cantredes aller-next, he yaf to Robert,  
steuenes sone, and to Morice fitz-Geraud, as forward was to-for  
maked; othere thwey cantredes he yaf heruy of Mountmorthy,—  
neghest thay tweyn on the syd toward Waterford,—a knyght þat 36



the hedde al *with* the Sallet, that he fell doun to the grovnde of the dychē; *and* vnnethis he was vp-rerid' throgh his fellowys, that myche Put har lyfe in aduenture forto sawe his lyfe. The cry was well grette on euery syde, for this knyght that thus was y-hurte. Thay wythdrow ham all from the wallis, *and* wenten to the stronde; *and* al the Chippis that they ther found; thay setten a fyre. And oo shippe ther was, that was y-come out of Brytayne after cheffare, *and* was y-chargid' *with* whete *and* *with* wynes, *and* lay y-ancred' in the Havyn. The beste Parte of the Englysh men wenten wyth botis, *and* toke this shippe: the Chippmen weryn many, *and* saw that ther weryn but a fewe Englysh men in the shippe, *and* the wynd was on the londe syde; thay cvtte the Cabyls of the ancre, *and* the wynd bare the Chippe to-ward the see. Her Fellouys sawe this, *and* wentyn<sup>1</sup> after wyth botis; *and* vnnethe *with* rowyng, *and* wyth grette Perill of al there lyues, they come ayeyn to lond. Macmurgh saw this, *and* was sore aferde, for they wende neuer \* more that one of Ham sholde haue come to Londe a-Lyue. The assaute Was Lefte al that day. A-morrow, whan masse was herd; al the Oste the[n] wenten to the assaute wyslyer *and* waryr than thay diddyn the day to-fore, *and* trusten as well to sleight as to streynth. The men of the toune saw ham comynge, *and* were ryght sore aferde that thay ne sholde not wythstonde the assaut, *and* vndyrstodyñ also that *with* wronge thay heldyn ayeyñ her lorde. thay toke ham to consayll, *and* besoghten Pees; *and*, throgh besechyng of two Bisshopis that that tyme weryn wythin the toune, *and* othir Pesibbill men also *with* ham, thay yoldyn ham al to Macmurgh; *and* foure Hostagis, the beste that he wolde chese, delyuerid' to hym for the Pees, *and* trewely wyth hym forto holde from that tyme forward; for har trew Lorde / Macmurgh, as wysse *and* ware, For cause that he wolde that the strangeres sholde haue the bettyr hert *and* will, hym forto serwe, he bethoght hym that, of the fryste good' aduenture that to hym was fall, thay that best weryn worthy, they sholde haue there Parte, *and* the hegheste. All the toune of weysford; *with* twey cantredes alther-nexthe, he yafe to Robert Steuenes-son *and* to Moryce fiz-Geraud; as the Promes to-for was made / othyr twey cantredes he yafe Heruey of Montmvrthy,—nexthe to thay two on the

A.D. 1169.

A Breton ship with wheat and wine is taken by English sailors.

The French cut their cables and set sail; but the English are rescued.

[<sup>1</sup> wentyn, MS.]

[\*Fol. 3 a.]

The allies march to assault Wexford again;

but it is yielded to them.

It is given to Fitz-Stephen and Fitz-Gerald.

A. D. 1169. com̃ in that same \* flote, hym priddesum of knyghtes, and com̃  
[\*Fol. 3a.] progh̃ the Erle Richard, more for to spỹe the lond̃ than to fight.

## [CHAPTER V.]

The united <sup>1</sup> **W**han this was thus I-don al after hãr will, they tok *with hame*  
forces invade the folk of weysford, and wenten hãm toward Ossery, with <sup>4</sup>  
Ossory, to ferd̃ as myght by tre thousand mẽn; and was than prince of  
of which country Ossory, Macdonenild, a mā̃ pat was *Macmorogh* swith loth and  
Macmurgh all his mē̃, for mych̃ shame that thay had hym i-do. At þe  
was a bitter begynnyng, as thay com̃ in-to the contrey, in narrow weys drogh̃ <sup>8</sup>  
enemy. woddes and mores, thay fonden the mẽn of the contrey stalwarth  
for to defend̃ hãr lond̃; & mych̃ tene hãm didde, ar that day myght  
[take] the pleyne; and eke into the pleyn thay folwed̃ hãm full  
fresly. the horsmã saw this, and turned manly vp-on ham, & <sup>12</sup>  
anoon slown right many of hãm, & discomfited̃ hãm euerychone.  
And thay pat þe horsmẽn kest to ground̃ *with speres* and *with*  
They defeat him, swerdes, þe yrisshe fotemẽn smotene of the heddes. Whan þe  
slaght was all I-do, and har enym̃es all ouer-comen, thay <sup>16</sup>  
broughten wẽll ccc heudes<sup>2</sup>, and kesten at *Macmorgh* feet. he  
be-held̃ hãm, & tried euery of hãm by hãm-self, for to know hame,  
& hild̃ vp his handes and tanked̃ god almyghty ful Inwardly.  
Oon hede ther was, a-monge þe other, of a man that he ouer-dede <sup>20</sup>  
and Macmurgh and mych̃ hated; he name hit be the heer̃ and by the eers, and  
triumphs in a brutal way. *with girslich* bit, as no mãn ne oweth to done; *with* his teeth  
he karue of his nose and both lippes. There-after þey wenteñ  
forther̃ into the contrey, slown, robeden, and branden full manly <sup>24</sup>  
al pat hame withstonden, in-to the tyme the prince of Ossory, by  
consaill of his mẽn, send̃ to hãm, & be-soght pees: the pees was  
*graunted̃* whan he hit bysoght, vp-on good ostages, and othes  
I-swẽr, pat he, to his lord̃ *Macmorgh*, shold̃ be trew, and trowth <sup>28</sup>  
Peace is made with the prince of Ossory. hold̃, trywly *serue* fro that tyme forward. in these fightes as in  
many othere, thogh̃ that in the englishe host noon wẽr bot good  
and stalward, Robert þe Bar̃ and Meiler fiz-henry weren thay  
that best deden. Thay weren both yong knyghtes, and Robert <sup>32</sup>  
Robert de Steuenes-sonnes neues; the oon his brother̃ sone, the other̃ his  
Fitzhenry fight best. susteres sone; of diuerse maners, both<sup>3</sup> of hardnes & of stalworthnes

<sup>1</sup> a small w is inside the V.<sup>2</sup> heuedes, heads.<sup>3</sup> but.



syde toward watyrford<sup>1</sup>,—a knyght that come in that same flitte, A.D. 1169.  
 hym thyrdesum of knyghtes, and come throgh the Erle Rycharde, <sup>1 mari con-</sup>  
 more forto spy the londe than to fyght. terminos.

## [CHAPTER V.]

**W**han this was thus don al aftyr har will, thay toke with Capitulum  
 tham the Pepill of weysford; *and* wenten ham to-ward Ossory, v<sup>m</sup>.  
 with oste as myght be by thre Ml. men<sup>2</sup>. And was than Prince of [<sup>2</sup> cum  
 Ossory, Macdonenylde, a man that was myche be-hatyde of Mac- exercitu  
 murgh, for myche shame that thay hadd hym donne. At the virorum  
 begynnyng, as thay come into the contrey, in narrow weyes throgh quasi  
 woddis and mores, thay foundyn the men of the contrey bolde forto trium  
 defende har londe; *and* mych sorrow ham didd; ar thay mygh[t] miliū.]  
 take the Playne: *and* when thay come to the Playne, thay folwid  
 ham ful fresly. the hors-men saw this, *and* turned boldely vp-on  
 ham, and anoone slowyn rygh[t] many of ham, *and* dys-comfited  
 ham euerychoñ. And thay that the hors-men keste to ground  
 wyth Sperys *and* wyth Swerdis, the Iryssh footte-men Smoten of 300 heads  
 the hedis. Whan the slaght was al y-do, *and* har ennemys al of foes are  
 ouer-come, thay broghten wel ccc. hedis, and kesten at Macmurgh brought to  
 is fete. he behylde ham, and tverned euery of tham<sup>3</sup> by hym-Selfe Mac-  
 forto know tham, and hilde vp his handis, *and* thankyd almyghty Murgh.  
 god ful Inwardly. Oone hede ther was, amonge the othyr, of a man [<sup>3</sup> than,  
 that he gretly dreddid *and* myche hatid; he toke hit by the heeres MS.]  
*and* by the Ers, *and* grymly hit bitte, as no man sholde haue down; He bites  
 wyth his tethe he kutte of his nose *and* bothe lippis. Ther-aftyr off the  
 they wenten fourdyr Into the contrey, kildyn, robodyn *and* brandyn nose and  
 ful boldely al that ham wythstodyn, into the tyme the Prynce of lips of one.  
 ossory, by consaylle of his men, sent to ham, *and* besoght Pees. the His men  
 Pees was graunted whan he hit be-soght, vp-on good Ostagis, *and* kill, rob,  
 othis y-Sworñe, \* that he, to His Lord Macmurgh, shold be trewe, and slay,  
 and trowth Hold, and trewely Serwe fro that tyme forth. In this till Mac-  
 fyghtes as in many othyr, thoght that in the Englysh hoste noone donough  
 were but good *and* bolde, Robert de barry *and* Meyler fiz-henry sues for  
 weryn thay that best diddyn: they wer both yong knyghtes, *and* peace.  
 Robert Steuenes-sones emys<sup>4</sup> both, the one his brodyr sonne, the [\*Fol.3 b.]  
 othyr his Systyr Sonne; Of dyuers maners, but of hardynes *and* neveys,  
nepotes.

A. D. 1169. mostdele al I-lȝch; ffor Meyler was a mañ that ouer mych  
 desyred to be I-preisede, and þat meñ sholden mych speke of  
 his stalwardnes, and preisen hym. Robert was kȳndlye, hardy,  
 [\*Fol.3b.] & stalwarde, \*and euer with the forthmost in euery fight and 4  
 in euery peril, bot he hatede notyng so mych as that me  
 shold speke of his stalwardnes, ne hyme preiese. The whill the  
 host was thus in Ossory, befel þat þay weren a nyght I-loget  
 in an old castell, & aboute; and these tweyn, as haʁ wone was, 8  
 weren both I-hosted to-gedderes: ffeʁ with-yn nyght come an  
 host vp-on ham, of so mych folk as thegh hit were fele thousand,  
 on euery side smȳtynge vp the host as they wolden in wode  
 raas ferly ouersailh hame, al, with wepne ryngyng, speres and 12  
 sparthes ruthlyng to-geddre, with cryng so grysly that noon  
 ende was of helf faʁ, as ʁhoft-sithes was wonet to be-fall in ostynges  
 in Irland; of whiche frightnes the most parte of the oste was so  
 aferd, that þay flowe<sup>2</sup> and hidden hañ, some in wodnes, som in 16  
 mores. These twey stalward mēn henten haʁ wepene, & lep to  
 hors, and wenten a-noon to Robertes tentes, (Steuenes sone,) and  
 cryed vp-on haʁ felowes þat day sholden withstond, and tak hert  
 to hame, and defend ham-self; bot few theʁ weʁ that so diden, 20  
 til they saw that this crie and þe noise was all I-left, & nas  
 bot fantasy. Whan the host hem gaddred ayayn to-geddre, thay  
 weʁ full soʁ ashamet that thay so argly put ham to f[l]ight, and  
 mych speche was amonge ham, and manȳ, hadden gret enuy, and 24  
 mych wonder toght of Robert de barr, that whan the host was  
 in so gret frightnes, he was that mañ þat stydfastly most hym  
 held, and most hym entised for to withstond and fight; and  
 amonge all the goode thewes that in hym weren, þis inamliche is 28  
 i-told of hym, that for no violence ne ferly aduentur þat hym  
 myght betid, he was neuer whan-hopefully argh, ne aferd, ne  
 amayed of hert, ne shamefully ne didde hym to flight, bot euer  
 moʁ he was I-lich redy to weppen and to defend hym-self, and 32  
 to helpen all oþer; he the formost knyght that in this conqueste  
 of Irland first receyued dynt and hurtȳng in battaill. A wonder  
 was of that fantasye: A-morowe whan hit was day, I the place,  
 ther this folk I-seȳe smȳten vp-on hame, the wedes and the grase 36

A phantom  
 army at  
 night  
 creates  
 terror  
 among the  
 English;

[<sup>1</sup> MS.  
 host.]

[<sup>2</sup> MS.  
 slowe.]  
 but Meiler  
 and  
 de Barri  
 manfully  
 withstand  
 the panic.

Character  
 of Robert  
 de Barri.



boldnys mostdele al y-lyke. For Meyler was a man that gretly A.D. 1169.  
 desyrd to be Praysid, and that men shold myche Speke of his  
 boldnys, and Preysyn hym. / Robert was kyndly, hardy and bold,  
 and euer with the fryst in enery fyght / and in euery Perill; but *nec*  
 he hatyd nothyng so myche as that a man sholde speke of his *laudis*  
 boldnys, ne hym Preyse. / The whyll the hoste was thus in Ossory, *exactor,*  
 befell that thay weryn a-nyght y-logid in an olde castell, and aboute. *nec aurae*  
 And thus two, as they wer wonyd, weryn in one Plase to-gedderis. *popularis*  
 Fer with-in nyght, come an hoste vp-on ham of so mych Pepill, as *aucupator.*  
 they were many thowsandis, on euery syde Smytynge vp the hoste, *A phantom*  
 as they woldyn, in wode raas, fersly ouersayle hame al, wyth wepyd *host*  
 ryngyng, Speris and sparris rutlyng to-giddy, wyth cryng *[tquam*  
 grymly, that none ende was Of elf fare, as ofte-tymes was wonet to *in impetu*  
 befall in hostyngis in Irland<sup>1</sup>. Of whych ferde, the moste Parte of *furoris*  
 the Oste was so a-dred, that they flow and hiddyn ham; somme in *sui cuncta*  
 woddis, some in mores / This two bolde men token har wepyn, and *devoran-*  
 lepe to hors, and wentyn anone to Robert Steuenes-sonne, and cried *tium]*  
 on har fellowis that 'they sholdyn wytstond, and take herte to hame, *frightens*  
 and defende ham-Selfe;' but fewe were that so diddyd, tyll they saw *the*  
 that this cry and this noyse was al cessid, and nas but a fantasy. *English-*  
 whan the host them gaderid ayeyn to-giddy, they wer ful sore *men, who*  
 asshamyd that thay so fently Put ham to flyght; and mych Speche *run and*  
 was amonge hame; and many haddyn gret enuy, and mych wondyr *hide;*  
 thocht of Robert de Barry, that Whan the host was in so gret ferde,  
 he was that man that moste stidfastly hym helde, and moste them  
 styrrid to wythstond and fyght. / And amonge al the good dedis  
 that in hym weryn, this Pryncipaly is of hym tolde, that for no  
 vyolence ne ferly aduenture that to hym chanssyd, he was neuer in  
 wanhope sette, ne agaste, ne aferd, ne abassid of herte, ne shame-  
 fully did hym to flyght; but euer-more he was lyke redy to wepyn,  
 and to defend hym-Selfe, And to helpyn al othyr. he was the  
 formyst knyght that, in this conqueste of Irland, fryst receyued *but are*  
 stroke and hurte in bataill // A wondyr was of that fantasy *much*  
 a-morrow, whan hit was day: In the Playn ther this Pepill y-seye *ashamed*  
*when they*  
*find it was*  
*all fancy.*  
*in hac*  
*Hiberniae*  
*expugna-*  
*tione.*

<sup>1</sup> Cujusmodi phantasma in Hibernia circa expeditiones frequens esse solebat.

—Op. v. 235.

A.D. 1169. that stoden al euen vp-right, thay lay all I-drow a-doune and I-cast to grond. [*This grass, &c. only in Harl. MS. 177. Op. v. 236.*]

## [CHAPTER VI.]

[\*Fol. 4a.] **A**s this was on this maner I-doñ, the tythynge sprongen in-to al Irland hwow Macmorgħ conquered his lond \* vpon 4 his men, and that no man myght hym withstond for out-comen men that he lade with hym. Roryk O'Concowr of Connaght, that was that tȳm kynge of al Irland, vndrestod hȳm, and toght in his hert the gret peril that myght be-fall hȳm and al the 8 lond folk, drogh the owt-comen folk þat was thus in-to the land I-coñ; he sent his messagers to al the gret meñ of the lond, and in a lityll whiȝt gaddred ham to-geddre to a parlement, and tok ham to rede that euery on his half shold gaddre al the 12 power þat they myght, for to weř vpon Macmorgħ. And as hit was purueied, so hit was doñ; Thay assemblet so many hostes and so mych folk on euery half, that noon end was, and comeñ to Okensely for to weren vpon Macmorgħ. Whan this hostes 16 weren thus assemblet, the most parte of Macmorghis meñ, ayeayne hař trowth and ayeyn hař othes, some priuely whithdrow hem that day, nold nat to hym com, some al openly lesten hȳm, and wenten to his fomen ayeyn hȳm; so that, in his most nede, trew 20 frendes ne fonde he noñ, sawe Robert, steuenes soñ, and his. With the lityll folk that thay hadden, thay wenten in-to a place nat fer frome fernes, a pleyn place bisette about with montaignes and woddes, watres and mores, on euery side il to com [to]. the 24 entrees that ther weren, by Robert-is deuce thay setten meñ for to stopen, in some place with trees I-cast doñ, and in other places depe diches I-cast. thegh the place weř stronge of kynde, thay madeñ hit mych stronge[r] with engyn, so that hit was 28 I-now seker recet to ham, and [to] heř enemyes ful strong to com to, and with litill folke hit myght be I-kept; & derne weies thay hadden purueied to ham-self, owt to goo, ayeyn In to com, whan ham liked. Whane the kynge of Connaght, with so many 32 hostes, was to ham I-coñ, he send to Robert by Messangers, and present hȳm with ryche yiftes, and many mo he hym be-het, and fast hȳm be-soght that, owt of þe Contray, wyche no Right

Roderic O'Conor tries to raise the whole country against Macmurgħ and the English.

Many of Macmurgħ's followers desert him, but Fitzstephen and his men stand by him.

They occupy a strong position not far from Ferns.



smytyn vp-on ham, the wedis and the grasse that stodyn al euyn A D. 1169.  
vp-ryght, thay lay al y-throw dovn̄e and cast to ground.

## [CHAPTER VI.]

As this was thus don̄e, the thythyngis Spronge Into al *Capitulum*  
Irland, how Macmurgh conquerid̄ his londe vpon his men, *vjm.*  
and that no man myght hym wythstond̄, for strange men that he  
ladd̄ wyth \* Hym. Roryke Oconghoure, of Connaght, that was [\*Fol. 4 a.]  
that tyme Kynge of al Irland, vndyrstode hym, and thocht in his  
herte the grete Perel that myght be-fall hym and al the londe- *tam sibi*  
Pepill, throghe the strangeres that was thus in-to the lande com̄e. *quam*  
He sende his messengeris to al the Lordis of the Londe, and in a *patriae*  
*toti.*  
lytyll whylle gaddred̄ ham to-gedre to a parlement, and toke ham  
to consayll, that euery on his Syde sholde gaddyr al the Pepill  
that thay myght, forto werre vpon Macmurgh. And as hit was  
Purueyed, so hit was down. Thay assemblid̄ so many Hostis, and  
so mych Pepill on euery syde, that were vnnowmerabill, and  
comyn<sup>1</sup> to Okenseley forto werre vp-on Macmurgh / Whan this [<sup>1</sup> comyn,  
MS.]  
hostis weryn thus assembl̄t, the moste parte of Macmurgh-ismen,  
ayeyn hare trowthe and here othis, Some priuely with-drow ham,  
that they nolde not to hym come. Some al opynly leften hym,  
and wenten to his ennemys ayeyn hym ; so that, in his moste nede, *in necessi-*  
trewe frendis ne fownde he noñe, Sawe Robert Steuenes-Sone *tatis*  
and his. wyth the Lytill Pepill that they haddyn, thay wentyn into *articulo*  
a place not fare frome Fernys, a pleyne place be-sette aboute with  
monttanyis and woddis, watris and moris<sup>2</sup>, on euery Syde il to come *paludibus.*  
to. The entrees that ther weryn, by Robert-is deuyce thay setten  
men forto stopyn ; in some Place with trees y-caste douñe, and in  
othir Placis depe dichis y-caste. thegh the Place were stronge of *naturalem*  
kynd, thay maddyñ hit mych strongir with Engyn, So that hit was *difficul-*  
sure recette to tham, and to ther ennemys stronge to come to, and *tatem in-*  
with lytill pepill hit myght be kepte. And Erthe-weyes thay *dustria*  
haddyn madd̄ to tham-Selfe, out to goo, and ayeyn In to come, *plurimum*  
when them Plesyd. Whan the kynge of connaght, with so many *et arte*  
hostis, was to tham come, he sende to Robert by Messangers, and *municil.*  
presentid̄ hym with rych yeftys, and mych more hym Promysyd,  
and gretly hym besoght that, out of the contrey, whych no ryght

A.D. 1169. he ne hadde to, ne no chalange ne myght setten vp-on, he and his, with pees and lou[e] shold departe. Mich they spek of this, and litell thay sped. Ther-aftyr, the messagers turned to Mac-urges Fitz-Stephen to retire from the country, Roderic and, failing in this, tries in vain to induce Macmurgh against the English.

O'Conor addresses his followers, and denounces the poisonous Macmurgh.

*Patriam itaque tuentes, et libertatem*

[1 MS. best.]

he ne hadde to, ne no chalange ne myght setten vp-on, he and his, with pees and lou[e] shold departe. Mich they spek of this, and litell thay sped. Ther-aftyr, the messagers turned to Mac-urges Fitz-Stephen to retire from the country, Roderic and, failing in this, tries in vain to induce Macmurgh against the English.

O'Conor addresses his followers, and denounces the poisonous Macmurgh.

*Patriam itaque tuentes, et libertatem*

[1 MS. best.]

## [CHAPTER VII.]

Macmurgh harangues the men of Leinster.

**M**acmurgh, on his halue, be-held his meñ, and saw hañ 32 soñ amayed: with wordes that he myght, he confortd hañ on this maner: "Men of leynester, which, sothfast trowth & stidfaste kynd in al aduentures, vs hath felawes I-maked,



he hadd' therto, ne no calange ne myght setten vpon, he *and* A.D. 1162.  
 his, wyth Pees and loue, sholde deperte. Mych' they spoke of [<sup>1</sup> Myth, MS.]  
 this, and lytyll thay Spede / There-aftyr, the messangers turned  
 to Macmurgli, and be-soghten hym on the kyngis be-halfe, Ocon-  
 noghoure, that he forth, wyth tham, sholde turne vpon the strangeres, *ut in*  
 hame to kyll and vndo. And yf he so wolde, thay wolde delyuyr *exteras*  
 hym all leynystere, *and* stydfaste Pees *and* frendshippe make hym *nationes*  
 haue of the kyng and of al othyr. Many reysonys thay shewid, *delendas*  
 both for the londe and for the lond-pepill; but nothyng they ne *simul cum*  
 spede, ne noone answe hadde, that ham Plesyd. Oconnoghore *ipsis arma*  
 saw and herde of his messyngers, that he myght nat in suche *conver-*  
 maner spede, and that he moste *teret.*  
 with streynth do that, that he  
 myght not with fayre speche. He toke his wepyn grymly, and  
 stode vp amonge his pepill, and thus sayde to tham:—"Myghty  
 men, and bolde in fyght forto defende youre londe and youre *patriae*  
 fredome! Vndyrstondyth, ayeyn whych \*Pepill, and for whate [<sup>2</sup>Fol.4 b.]  
 cause, ye sholde this Bataill take on Honde. Al oure ennemy, *tutores, et*  
 that afor this was out of londe ydrywe for his wickidnes, In *libertatis.*  
 comynne confusion of vs all, all be-take wyth strangeres and  
 wepened Pepyll, is ayeyn comyn, for Enuy and harme of vs, and  
 hath broght strange Pepill vp-on vs, that the harme whych he *quod,*  
 hadde no Powere to don vs hym-selfe, throgh helpe of them and *cunctis*  
 mayntenavnce, the bettyr myght brynge to ende; and hath dyght *communi*  
 hym to shedyn his wenym so wyde, that he takyth no fors to dye, *labe in-*  
 but that we al mow haue oure [e]will throgh hym, and for none *fectis, ut*  
 sholde be Sparid, and he ne Sparyth hym-Selfe. There-for we will *nemini*  
 wy[th]stonde the begynnyng, and the Perel whyle hit is comyn, are *parcatur,*  
 hit be rotyd. For harme wexeth euer wyth longe abydyng. Oure *nec ipse*  
 londe and oure fredome, defende we manly; So that the slaght *sibi*  
 of this fewe be ferde to many; and by Ensampill of thes, al othyr *pepercit.*  
 strangers sholde be aferde, suche folies to begynne, And the mynde *exteras*  
 of vs, wyth-oute ende to abyde." *nationes*  
*ab ausu*  
*tam*  
*nefario*  
*imper-*  
*petuum*  
*abstru-*  
*antur.*

## [CHAPTER VII.]

**M**Acmurgh / on his syde, be-held his men, *and* Sawe hame *Capitulum*  
 sore a-bassyd. with wordis that he myght, he confortid *vij<sup>m</sup>.*  
 ham on this manere: "Men of leynyster, wych, trusty trouth and *comites*  
 stydfaste kynde in al aduentures, vs hath fellowis y-made, wyth- *indivisos*

A.D. 1169. without any partyng, a-reē we our hertes, styfly vs-self to defend.  
 The maistre of wreth and of Coueytise, that with streynth wold  
 vs brynge vnderfoot, and ows ayeyn dryue out of lond, otheṛ, that  
 Let us defend ourselves! wors is, in the same lond, vs tynken vndo: that god shild! loo, heṛ 4  
 is I-comē vpon our heḏ, of his mych gaderyng of folke prowte &  
 hauteyn. be ye well vndrestond, þat nat trogh gret tale of men  
 [\*Fol.5a.] ne trogh greth streynth, both drogh \*right and trowth that mañ  
 Right, not numbers, win battles. hath with hym, battailles doth ouercomē. We haue for vs, ayeyn 8  
 haṛ pryd, mekenes; ayayns har vnryght, right and trowth; ayeyn  
 haṛ boldenesse and ouer-truste, mekenesse and maner. Thay  
 fighten for coueytise, for to get good; and we, for to flee harme.  
 with al this we bene in strong place and wel I-warned. The moṛ 12  
 that heṛ commeth, the more encombrement we shall do hame, by  
 Be of one heart, and fight! lityll folk ham to ouercomē, so that we be of on hert, and stifly  
 withstond.'

## [CHAPTER VIII.]

Fitz-  
 stephen  
 makes a  
 speech to  
 the  
 English-  
 men.

Whan Macmorghe had his tale I-endeth in his speche, 16  
 Robert Steuenes-son, spake to his felaws and to his  
 meigne on this wise: "ffightyng fors, & yongelynges I-corne,  
 that so many perilles hawe to-gedde I-soffred, and euer in al  
 aduentures, and of heigh hert ibe! If we inly vndrestonde wiche 20  
 meñ we ben, with what lodes-mañ, and for what thyng we this per-  
 ille vndre-tok with stalwardnesse, as our [wone]ys, we shullen ouer-  
 come; & the grace that ye I-haue i-hadde ar this of god, ne shal vs  
 nat forlete. Of the folke of Troy we ben kyndlych y-come, on þat 24  
 oon half, fro þe first begynnyge; of ffrance, we haue kynde on  
 otheṛ half. Throgh kynd of Troy, we owe to be hardy; throgh  
 kynd of ffrance, we ben vsed in wepene; & so as we bene of double  
 mane kyndly, of good herth & well y-wepned, & well y-lernet yn 28  
 wepne, ne dout no man, þat such vnwepned rascayll any power  
 haw ows to wythstond: on that otheṛ halue, we come nat yn-to  
 thys land as hyryng men, ne for no couetyse of gold, ne of syluyr,  
 ne galyotz ne robbers; bott for to helpe thys heyth man that ys so 32  
 noble & so fre, &, progh hys owne men, lodderly was of lond  
 y-dryue. we hawe reuth of hys harm; & helpeth vp þat adoun was  
 y-brozthe; to hys kynd sted, bryngeth hym þat vnkyndly was

From  
 Troy we  
 get bold-  
 ness;  
 from  
 France,  
 skill in  
 fight.  
 We come  
 not for  
 hire, or as  
 pirates,  
 but to  
 help a  
 noble man  
 unjustly  
 treated.



out eny partynge, arrere we vp oure hertes, boldely vs to defende. A.D. 1169.  
 The maystyr of wreth *and* of couetyse, that wyth streynth wolde <sup>1 the</sup>  
 vs brynge vndyrfote, and vs ayeyn dryue out of londe, Othir, that <sup>oration</sup>  
 wors is, in the same londe Purposyth vs to vndo / that god <sup>[in a later</sup>  
 forbedde / be-holde, here is come vp-on oure hedd, of his mych <sup>hand].</sup>  
 gadrynge of pepill Proute and hauteyn. be ye wel vndyrstond, <sup>quod</sup>  
 that not wyth many men, ne wyth grete Streynth, bot by ryght <sup>absit</sup>  
*and* trouth that man hath wyth hym, batalis doth ouercome. We  
 haue for vs, ayeyn har pryde, mekenys; ayeynes hare vnryght, ryght  
*and* trouth; ayeyn har boldnys *and* ouer-truste, mekenesse *and* <sup>modus et</sup>  
 maner. thay fyghtyn for couetyse, forto gete good; And we, to <sup>modestia.</sup>  
 shonne myschefe. wyth all this, we byth in stronge Place, and well <sup>tam arte</sup>  
 warnyd. The more that here comyth, the more encombrement <sup>quam</sup>  
 we shal do ham, by lytill folke ham to ouercome, So that we be of <sup>natura</sup>  
 oñe herte, *and* styfly wystone. <sup>munitissimum.</sup>

## [CHAPTER VIII.]

**W**Hen Macmurgh hadd his tale y-edyd in his speche, <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
 Roberte Steuenes-Sofe spake to his fellowys, *and* to them <sup>viiij<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
 in this maner Sayde: "Fyghten feris, *and* yonglynges y-know, that <sup>Bellorum</sup>  
 so many Perelis haue to-geddyr Sofferid, and euer in al aduentures, <sup>socii,</sup>  
 and of hey hert ben! If we Inwardly wndyrstonde what men we <sup>adole-</sup>  
 ben; wyth what lodes-man, *and* for what thyng, we this Perel <sup>scentes</sup>  
 vndirtoke; with boldnys, as we were wonyd, we shall ouercome; and <sup>electi.</sup>  
 the grace that we haue hadd ar this of god, ne shall vs not forsake.  
 // Of\* the folke of Troy we Ben Kynly come, on that one syde, fro <sup>[\*Fol. 5 a.]</sup>  
 the fryste begyn[i]nge; of Fraunce, we haue kynde on the othyr  
 halfe. Throgh the kynde of troy, we sholde be bolde; throgh  
 kynde of Fraunce, we ben wysd in wepyd; and so as we ben of  
 doubil maner kyndly, of good herte *and* wel wepenyd, and wel  
 lernyd in wepyd,—ne dout no man, that Suche vnwepenyd rascail <sup>populum</sup>  
 any Powere haue to vs to wyth-stonde. One that ouer syde, we <sup>inermem.</sup>  
 come not into this londe as wagicd men, ne for no couetyse of  
 golde, ne of Syluyr, ne of galioztz, ne robbers; but forto helpe  
 this goode man that is so nobill and so fre, and, wyth his owyn  
 men, wickydyly was out of his londe drywe. We haue Pite of his  
 harme; and helpyth vp that adouid was caste / to his kynde state, <sup>Non ergo</sup>  
<sup>piratae,</sup>  
<sup>non prae-</sup>  
<sup>dones huc</sup>  
<sup>aduenimus.</sup>

A.D. 1169.

He has  
given us  
land.[1 MS.  
ouer.]We'll win  
the battle  
and glory.

ther-of I-bansbeth. And he, as largh mañ & good prynce, hat vs yeueñ wyde londes & ryche townes, & owr lond folke wyll setten & planten stydfastly yn þys lond, nowe & euer<sup>1</sup>. Therfor, men, full [of] streynth & stalwarthnes, such thyng y-magyneth 4 to-day hartly to do, that owr kynred ne go nat out of kynd, & yn thys, lyuynge oper dey, we manly wyñ the pryce, that euer more torne to whyrshyppe vs & al our that aftyr ws shullen come."

8

## [CHAPTER IX.]

**W**ythe these wordes, & other suche, these heghe meñ comforted har folk, for day schuldeñ hawe the bettyr wyll

O'Conor,  
doubtful of  
the issue,  
makes  
terms with  
Mac-  
murgh,

well for to fyght. And whañ day were oñ euery half redy for to smyth to-geddre, OConozwyr, be-thozghthýng that the aduentur 12 of battaylle ben ofte doutouse & myche vncerteyne, And as the whysmañ seythe 'all tynge me shall assay, rather thañ fygth,' & all-so he & hys doutendeñ well score to assemble with folke

[\*Fol.5b.]

I-wepneð, On al maner that he myzght, \* He was abowte thame 16 sholde make peas. thane, thogh besechyng of goode menð that went betwene, & thogh grace of the holy goste, was the peas y-made, oñ þis maner; that thay sholde leve leynester to Maccmorghowe, & he sholde hitt holde of Oconoghaur, & 20 hym knowlech, & suget be to hym as to a kynge & prynce of Irland. And þat thys shold be stydfastly I-hold, Macmorgh bytok hym hys sone to astage, by so, þat yf he good pees hold, & trewly hym helde, Oconghur shold hym yeue hys doghter to 24 wyff. Whañ thys was comynly I-shewed & I-knowe, & othes I-shwerne oñ euery half, all thys trewly to hold, Another thyng was bespoke bytween ham, bott þat preuely, that Macmorgh ne shold nomore brynge vnked mon yn-to the lond, & thay that 28 he hade y-brought, as rathe as he had leynestre yñ good pees, he shold anoon send ayenne home, & delyueryd þe lond of ham.

who, it is  
agreed,  
shall hold  
from  
Roderic,  
and give  
him his  
son as a  
hostage.

## [CHAPTER X.]

Maurice  
Fitzgerald  
now  
arrives,  
with a fol-  
lowing, at  
Wexford.

**A**ftyr that þe pees was thys Imaket, þe host departed, 32 euery oñ hys half. Sone þer-after come Moryce, Geraudes son, Robertes brothe, of whom we spoken ar thys, wyth .x. knýghtes & .xxx. Squyres & ij houndred footmen, & ar[y]ued at weysford;



bryngyth hym that vnkyndely was therof y-banshet. And he, A.D. 1169.  
 as large man and good Prince, hath vs yevyð wyde landis and gentem hie  
nostram in  
 ryche townes; and oure londe-pepill will setten and Planteð insula  
plantare.  
seu vin-  
cendo seu  
moriendo  
perpetuam  
nobis  
gloriam  
strenuitate  
compa-  
remus.  
 stydfastly in this londe, nowe and euer. Therfor, men full of  
 streynth and of boldnes, Suche thyng ymagyneth to-day hertely  
 to do, that oure kynred ne go not oute of kynde; and in this,  
 lywe or dye, we manly wynn the Pryce, that euer-more shall  
 tour[n]e to oure wyrchippe, and to al oure that aftyr vs schalle  
 come."

## [CHAPTER IX.]

**W**yth this wordis, and othyr Suche, thes good men confortyd Capitulum  
ix<sup>m</sup>.  
 here Pepill, for thay sholdyn haue the bettyr wyll, well  
 forto fyght. And when thay were on euery halfe redy forto smyte  
 to-geddre, Oconghoure bethoght hym that the aduenture of bataill  
 ben ofte doutfull and mych vncertayn. An[d], as the Wysman Ter. Eun.  
IV. vii. 19.  
 Seyth, "Althyng we oghte to assay, radyr than fyght" / And also  
 he and his douteden well sore to fyght wyth Pepill wepenyd. On al  
 maner that he myght, he was besy to haue Pees. Then, by the  
 besechyng of good men that wente betwene, and throgh grace of  
 the holy goste, was the Pees mad on this maner; that thay sholde  
 leue leynystere to Macmurgh, and he sholde hite holde of Ocon-  
 ghoure, and hym knowlech, and Subiecte be to hym as to a kyng  
 and Prynce of Irland. And that this sholde be stydfastly holde,  
 Macmurgh toke hym his sone to hostage, by So, yf he good Pees filium  
suum  
Cnu-  
churum.  
 helde, and trewely hym helde, Oconghoure sholde hym yeue his  
 doghter to wyfe. whan this was comynly shewyd and know, and  
 othis sworð on euery Syde, al this trewely to kepe, Anothyr thyng  
 was spokyn be-twen them, bothe that Pryuely, that Macmurgh ne  
 sholde no more strangeres brynge into the londe; And thay that  
 he hadd broght, as Sone as he hadd leynystere in good Pees, he statim  
remitteret.  
 shold Sende them home, and delyuere the londe of hame.

## [CHAPTER X.]

**A**ftyr that the Pees was thus made, the hoste departyd, on Capitulum  
x<sup>m</sup>.  
 his halue. Sone there-aftyr come Morice, Geraudis Sonne \*, [\*Fol. 5b.]  
 Robert-is Brodyr, of whom we Spokyn ar this, Wyth x Knyghtis  
 and xxx<sup>ti</sup> Squyeris, and two hundred fotemen, and londid at

A. D. 1169. A man full queynt, trow trogh al thyng, & stalwarth, & stydfast of word, & of hert symple, & shamffast as a mayd. Wañ Macmorgh & Robert hyt wysten, thay weren ful glād, & boldeñ pan thay before were : thay come to ham sone wyth þe oste þat thay had. 4

Macmurgh determines to attack Dublin; and goes, accompanied by Fitzstephen. Macmorgh be-thoght hym of the mych vnryght that þe men of deuelyng hym hadden done, & hys fader all-so, many siþe : he assembled hys hostes, & redied hym to wend thedere. Boot Robert byleft with somdell of þe meyne, fore to rere hym a castell 8 at a place that me clepeth þe karryke, & ys twey myle out of weysford ; & Moryce went wyth hym. Macmorgh, as mayster & leder of the host, & cheuetayn of al. In lytell whyle, all þe contreys about dyuelyn, wyth robynge & bernying & sleynge, 12 weren<sup>1</sup> neght I-broght to noght. The sitezeyns of dyuelyn, whan thay thys wysten, thay sentten to ham, & besoghten pees, & yaue ham so mych gold & syluer that non end was at har wylle, & good ostages, & othes I-[s]wore that pay sholden to Macmorgh 16 trew be, & hym knowleche pan-forward as lord & prynce. Fro that tyme that thys was y-do, ther was noon Iryshman yn leynnesteñ, of hey kyne ne of low, that for seruesse<sup>2</sup> of englyssemen ne yeldet hym to Macmorgh, so þat þer was noght of þe 20 lond-folke þat all nas subyett to hym, & redy to hys wylle.

## [CHAPTER XI.]

O'Conor makes war on O'Brien of Limerick **I**N thys whyle, wax a grett wreth & a grete stryfe betwix þe kyng of Connaght, & donoll Obreyñ, þe kyng [of] lymeryke, & of thomond. the kyng of connaght, Oconoghuñ, gaddered hys 24 hostes for to werñ vpon Obreen. Obreen sent \* to mamorrowz, for allyaunce that was betwen ham, that he shold hym helpe. he spake per-of to Robert & to Moryce, & bad ham that pay shold go theder for to helpe Obreen. Thay name har meñ wyth ham, & wenten 28 ynto thomond, and ffounden Oconoghuñ, that stryffly stode ayeyñ ham, & many fyghtes ham yaue. Bot the dysconfituñ turned vpon Oconoghuñ, & many of hys meñ wer I-sleyñ, so that wythe shame he most turne ayeyñ ynto Connaght. And fro that tym, Obreen 32 wythdrow hym from Oconoghuñ, & neuer after was subyect to hym as he was thañ-by-fore ; & the englysh hoste, wyth grett gettynges & with rych yiftes, turned ayeyne yñ-to leynestre.

[\*Fol. 6a.] and sends Fitzstephen and Maurice to oppose him. O'Conor is defeated, and O'Brien becomes independent of him.



weysford: A man full quent, trew throw al thynges, bolde, and A.D. 1169.  
 stydfaste of word, *and* of hert sympil, and shamefaste as a mayd //  
 Whan Macmurgh *and* Robert hadd' wyttynge of Morice-is comynge,  
 they weryn full glad, and boldyr than thay before were. thay  
 came to thain Sone wyth the hoste that thay hadde / Macmurgh  
 bethoght hym of the mych wronge that the men of Deuelyn to hym <sup>graves</sup>  
 hawydyn done, and his fadyr also, many tymys : he assemblid' his <sup>Dubli-</sup>  
 hostes, *and* made hym redy thedyr forto goo. But Robert lefte <sup>nensium</sup>  
 wyth some of the meynge forto rere hym a castel at a Place that  
 is callid' the Karryke, and is two myle out of weysford; And  
 Morice went wyth hym. Macmurgh as gouernoure and ledere  
 of the hoste and capytan of all. In lytell Processe of tyme, al  
 the contreis about deuelyn, wyth Robynge and brennynges *and*  
 kyllynge of pepill, weryn al-meste broght to noght // The Citseynys <sup>ad exter-</sup>  
 of deuelyn, whan thay of this had wyttynge, thay Sendyn *and* <sup>minium</sup>  
 besoght Pees, and yaue hame so myche golde and Siluyr that none <sup>fere</sup>  
 ende was at har will, and good hostagis, *and* othis Sworne that thay  
 Sholdyn to Macmurgh be trewe, *and* hym knowlege as lord and  
 Prynce. Fro that tyme that this was done / ther was none  
 Irysh-man in leynystre, of hey kyn ne of low, but that, for fere  
 of Englysh-men, thay yaue hame to Macmurgh, So that tlier was  
 none of the londe-pepill, that al nas subiecte to hym, and redy  
 to his wille /

## [CHAPTER XI.]

IN this tyme, rose grete debate and wrete be-twyxe the <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
 kynges of Connaght, and Donalde Obreyn, the kynges of <sup>xjm.</sup>  
 lymerike, and of thomonde. the kynges of Connaght, Oconghoure, <sup>[Fol. 6 a.]</sup>  
 gaderid' his hostes forto werre vp-on obreyn. Obreyn Sende to  
 Macmurgh, for allyaunce that was betwen ham, that he sholde hym  
 helpe. He Spake therof to Robert *and* to Morice, *and* bade them  
 that th[a]y sholde go thedyr forto helpe obreyn. Thay, and har men  
 wyth hame, *and* wentyn Into thomonde, and foundyn oconghoure,  
 that styfly stode a-yennes hame, *and* many fightes hame yaue. <sup>post</sup>  
 But the dis-comfyture turned' vp-on oconghoure; *and* many of his <sup>varios</sup>  
 men were sleyn, So that wyth shame he myste turne into <sup>conflictus</sup>  
 connaght. / And fro that tyme, Obreyn wythdrowe hym from <sup>ubique</sup>  
 oconghoure, and neuer after was subiecte to hym as he was <sup>victoria</sup>  
 ther-to-forne. And the Englysh hoste, wyth grete gettynges *and*  
 wyth ryche yftis, turned' ayen Into Leynystre. <sup>potitus.</sup>

## [CHAPTER XII.]

A. D. 1169.  
Macmurgh  
aspires to  
be king of  
all Ireland.

**M**acmoro3w3ch sawe the englysshe-men so stalwarth that no power myght ham wythstond. he bethoght hym of thyng that was passed, & that sune of hys eldre to-fore hym hadden somtyme the kynge-dome of all Irland, & that al the lond was subyet to hym: he wold, by hys myght, by ryght of hys eldreñ, brynge hyt yn-to the self state, that al þe lond shold be vnder hys lordshyppe, as hyt was wndre hys eldreñ to-fore hys tȳm. Of þys tȳngē he spak preuely wyth Robert, & wyth 8 Moryce, & besoght har consayll therof; And pay hym answerd, & seiden, that 'lyghtly that myght be done, yf he wold make come more plente of englyssh men ynto þe lond.' he bad ham well porwe, that thay sholden yn al manere senden after more of har 12 kyn & frendshype. & for thay shold the bettyre wyll haue ther-to, he profred ham to yeue hys eldest doghtre to on of ham, whych hyre so wold, wyth all hys lond aftyr hys day. bot, fore euery of ham had wyf & I-spoused that tyme, after mych spech, & 16 many dalyaunce ther-of at thys consaylle, thay thoght þat he, to the erle Rychard, (of whom we haue ar thys I-spoke, & to whom he behete the same doghter ther-to-fore at Brystowe,) hys lettres

Fitz-  
stephen  
and  
Maurice,  
whom he  
consults,  
advise him  
to bring  
over more  
English-  
men.

He sends a  
letter to  
Earl  
Richard  
urging him  
to come  
over.

shold send on thys maner: "¶ Dermot Macmorgh, priynce of 20 leynestre, to Rychard, Gylbertes son, erle of strugoȳl, sendeth grettynge. If þou rekenest the tyme that ys Igoo, as well as we that nede haue, ouȳ mone nys ycome to þe no rather than hys tyme. Storkes & swalewes, & oper somer foules, we haue 24 aftȳre I-loked: thay comen, & wyth þe cold north-westre wynd pay ben away ywent. Bot thy comynge, that we so mych haue desyred & so longe I-loked after, nether estren wyn[d]e, ne noon other, vs ne hath I-send, as thou vs be-hete. perfor, that thou ne 28 hast y-dene troght some grete lette, hastyly be about to do; for that weȳ al ouȳ gladnes, that thou hast swyth. If þou stalwardly comest, & wyth good myght, the four partyes of Irland shal sone be turned to þe fyft." Whan the erle had thys I-hard, he was 32 yn many thoghtes; & aftyr many selcouth \* & dyuers redes, at the last he bethoght hym, that so fewe men as weren yn-to the lond I-come ther-to-fore, hadden ynd so lytyll whyll so well I-sped of har aduentures: he name to hym the better herte, & thyng 36

[\*Fol. 6b.]



## [CHAPTER XII.]

A.D. 1169.

**M**Acmurgh sawe the Englysh-men so bolde, that no man myght ham wythstopd. he be-thoght hym of thyng that was passyd, and that some of his eldryn to-fore hym haddyn some tyme the kyngedome of al Irland, and that al the land was subiecte to hym. he wolde, by his myght / by ryght of eldryn, bryng hit Into the same state, that al the londe sholde be vndyr his lordshipe, as hit was \*Vndyr His eldryn to-fore His tyme. Of this thyng He Spake wyth Robert and wyth Moryce, and be-soghte har consayle vp-on this. And thay hym answerid, and sayd, that 'lyghtly that myght be done, yf he wolde make come more Plente of Englysh-men into the londe.' He Prayed ham, that in al haste thay sholde sende after more of hare kyn and hare frendis. and for thay sholde haue the bettyr will therto, he profered hame to yeue his eldyst doghtyr to one of ham, whych hyr so wolde, with al the londe after his day. but, for euery of hame hadd wyfe, and spoused that tyme, After mych spech, and many delyaunce therof at this consayle, thay thoght that he, to the erle richard (of whom we haue ar this spoke, and to whom he promysyd the same doghtyr there-to-for at Brystowe,) his letteres sholde sende on this manere // "Dermot Macmurgh, Prince of leynystere, to Richard, Gylbertes sone, Erle of strugoil, sendyth gretynge. If ye haue rekenyd the tyme that is I-goo, as wel as we that nede haue, oure compleynthe is not come to yow no radyr than this tyme. Storkys and swalewes, and othyr Somyr fowlis, we haue after a-waytid: thay comyn; and with the colde north weste wynde thay ben away I-went. But youre comynge, that we so mych haue desyrid and so longe lokid after, nethyr estryn wynd, ne none othyr, vs ne hath sende, as ye vs promysid. Ther-for [as] ye ne haue this doñe but throghe some grete lette, hastely be a-but to do; for that were al oure gladnys, that ye haste blywe. Yf ye boldely come, and wyth good streynth, the foure Parties of Irland shal sone be turned to the fyfte" // Whan the Erle hadd this hard, he was in many thoghtis; and after many and dyuers thoghtes, at the laste he be-thoght hym, that so few men as weryn into the londe y-come ther-to-fore, haddyn in so lytill tyme so wel y-spede of har aduentures: he hade the bettyr herte, and thyng that he dowtted

Capitulum  
xij<sup>m</sup>.ad avila et  
antiqua  
jura.

[\*Fol. 6b.]

hoc facile  
feri posse.legitime  
copula  
gaudebat  
uterque.Ovid, Ep.  
Her. ii. 7.circio jam  
stante nec  
favonius  
nec eurus.de facili  
conver-  
tentur

A. D.  
1169-70.  
The Earl  
resolves  
on the  
enterprise.

that he doutyd myche ther-by-fore to begyne, he wax tho the bolder to tak an hond. Fro that tyme, al hys thoght & all hys wyll was, nyghte & day, wyth all hys myght to wend in-to Irland. He went hym to þe kyng henry, & hym swith be-soght þat he shold delyuer hym hys londes þat sholden be hys by ryght of herytage, other yeue hym leue to do hym yn adventur, lond to purchace yndvoked land.

A. D. 1170.

[CHAPTER XIII.]

He sends  
Reymond  
le Gros to  
Ireland,  
who lands  
near  
Waterford,  
ab. May 1,  
1170.

When the Kynge wist hys entent, whoder he wold go, he ne yaue hym fully leue, ne fully hym ne warned; bot wyth such leue as he had, he dight hym þe wynter tyll the begynny[n]ge of Maye. He sent to-for hym ynto Irland A knyght that was I-called Reymond le gras;—wyth hym, x knyghtes, & fourty Squyers, & four score bowmen;—A man ful hardy & stalwarde, & well proued yndwepne, Robertis neuue, & Moryces, har eldest brother, sone. Thay arrayed at a place i-called dun-doneuile, four myle a south halfe Waterford; & ther thay arered a dyche, & a feble castel vpon, of yardes and turues<sup>1</sup>. The men of Watterford, & wyth ham Malaghelynd of olan, thys waren I-ware that thay y-hadden such neghborhede ful loth, & toke ham to rede, þat þay wolden vpon ham, ar mo com to ham. Thay assembled ham togeddre, well thre thousand men, & wenten ouer the wattyre of sur, that parteth the twey contres of leynestre & of mounestre, & setten ham ynd thre hostes, ful boldely for to assaylle the englysshe-men with-In har castell. Reymond & hys men—thogh they fewe wer, they wer nat feynt—with vneuenly host wenten out & assembled wyth ham. Bot, as no wonder was, so few men ne myght nat all priuely fyghten aye ynd so many, thay turned ham aye to har recet. the other weneden that thay departed ynd dyscomfite; thay braken har sheld. In, & wenten after: & thay war nat fully wythynd þe yate, that some of ham ner rather In than þe englyssh. Reymond saw that he & hys weren ynd gret perylle, & vpon poynt to lese the lyfe. he be-cryed hys felewes, & turned stalwarthly vpon her formen<sup>2</sup>; & þe fyrste that come ynd, he claue hym the heed, & throgh slaght of that

He is  
attackt  
by the  
Waterford  
men and  
O'Phelan,

and is  
forced to  
retreat to  
his camp.

<sup>1</sup> MS. iurues, or inrues.

<sup>2</sup> men in front.



mych ther-be-for to begyn, he wax than the boldyr to take an honde. Fro that tyme, al his thoght and al his will was, nyght and day, wyth al his myght to wende into Irland. He went then to the kyng, and besoght hym that he shold delyuere hym his londis that sholdyn be his by ryght of heritage, othyr yeue hym leue to do hym in aduenture, londe for to Purchase in vnkyl land.

A. D.  
1169-70.  
*vel in  
exteris  
regionibus  
se satis et  
fortunae  
commit-  
tendi  
licentiam  
daret.*

## [CHAPTER XIII.]

A. D. 1170.

When the kyng vnderstode his entente, whedyr he wolde goo, he yaued hym not full leue, ne fully be-name hym not; but with suche leue as he hadd, he dight hym the wyntyr till the begynnyng of may / he Sende to-for hym into Irland a knyght that was callid<sup>1</sup> Reymond Legras;—wyth hym, x knyghtis and fourty Squyeris, and foure score bowmen;—A man ful hardy and bolde and wel proued in wepyn, Robert-is eme<sup>2</sup>, and Morices, hare eldyts brodyr, sone. Thay lonyd at a place that is y-callid Dundonenylde, foure Mile on the Sowth syde of watyrford; and there they rerid a dyche, and a febill castel vpon, of Iardis and turnes\*. The men of Watyrford, and wyth ham Malaghelyn Of olan, this waryn y-ware that thay haddyn such neighboris, that ham were loth<sup>2</sup>; and toke ham to consayle, that thay wolde vp-on ham, ar mo come to hame. Thay gaderid ham to-gaddyr, wel iij<sup>e</sup>. M. men, and wentyn ouer the watyr of Sure, that partyth the two contreis, that is to Say leynystre and mounestre, And settyn ham in thre hostis, ful boldely forto assayle the Englysh-men with-In har castel. Reymond and his men (thegh thay fewe were, they were not feynte) with few pepill wentyn out, and mete with hame. But, as no woundyr hit was, so few men myght not al plenary fyghten ayeyn so many, that turned ham to thare recette. the othyr wende that thay depertid in descomfite; thay brakyn har sheldrun, and wentyn aftyr. and thay were not fully wythin the gate, that some of hame nere radyr In than the Englysh. Reymond saw that he and his were in grete Pereil, and on Poynte to lese here lyfe. he cried on his fellowis, and turned boldely vp-on here enemys. and the fryst that come In, he clewe his hede. and throgh deth of that o man, al the

Capitulum  
xij<sup>m</sup>.  
*quasi  
licentia,  
ironica  
namque  
magis  
quam  
vera.*  
[<sup>2</sup> eme,  
uncle, is  
'nephew'  
in this  
MS.]  
[\*Fol. 6b.]  
*ex virgine  
et cespile.*

*de plano  
resistere  
non potuit.*  
*intra  
valvas  
viz plene  
suspensas  
certatim  
intrando  
susce-  
perunt.*

<sup>1</sup> R. Legras.

<sup>2</sup> Exterorum viciniam suspectam habentes, v. 248.

A. D. 1170. mañ, all the ost was dyscomfyte, & tok hañ to flyght. The oper ham folwed yñ-to all þe pleyñ, & leyð hañ oñ so, þat yñ lytell whyll thay slowe of hañ fyfe<sup>1</sup> hundred & mo; & þe most parte of þe other felleñ adoñ yñ-to þe see, of þe heye rokes, & 4 dreñt hañ-selfe. In thys fyght, was a knyght that hete Wylyyañ ferand, that dydde ouer-well & aboue all other: he was a mañ that hade semblant as thoght he wer oñ the mich yuell, & þer-for

[\* Leaf 7.] he put hym-selue<sup>2</sup> alwey theñ \* the most perille was; ffor he ne 8 raght thegh deth come betwene hym & hys yuell, ar hyt wañ to mych I-smýt vpon hym. Heñ þe pryð of waterford felle; heñ all hys myght went to noght; heñ-of come the Englysshe hope & comfort; & to the Iresshe, dred & wanhope; ffor hyt was neuer 12 theñ-to-for I-herd, that of so fewe men, so grett a slaght was done. Bot lyder consaylle thay dydden þer-after, that turned ham to mych cruelte; ffor whañ the majstry was al har, & al har fomen ouercome, In þe fyght weren ytake well thre score meñ & teñ, 16

that ham yolden, & weren the heghest & the rychyst of al the sitè, such þat pay myght haue had for ham the sitè delyuered, or els as myche catel as thay wolden desyr. Heruy of Mountmorthy, that to hañ was ycome, hym thrydsome of knyghtes, & Reymond, 20 vp dyuers domes strouen what meñ shold do wyth har prysons<sup>3</sup>; ffor Reymond trauayllet about for to dyluere hañ, as a mañ of reuthful mode, & þus seyð to hys feres: "lordynges, what ys vs to done of ouñ wreched prisoners? I sey nat that man<sup>4</sup> shal on 24

any maner spar hys fomañ; bot thay beth nat now fomen, both<sup>5</sup> beth meñ nat rebelle, bot yñ bataylle for to defend<sup>6</sup> har contrey ouercome. Me thynketh thay beth now yñ such state, that me oght bettyr haw mercy of hañ & yeve hañ lyfe, for to yeue other 28 ensample to be boxom, thañ cruely to do hañ to deth, wha-throgh þat other, throgh ferdnesse of trust, þe lasse to yeld hañ to vs." Whañ Reymond had such wordes I-seyde, yn al þe folke

but Hervey was moste wi[lle]<sup>7</sup> to graunt ham lyf, Arose vp Heruy amonge 32  
opposes him.

<sup>1</sup> MS. lyfe.<sup>2</sup> MS. sleue.<sup>3</sup> pryson = prisoner.<sup>4</sup> MS. maner.<sup>5</sup> but: Sed hi non hostes jam, sed homines.—*Op.* v. 250.<sup>6</sup> MS. defend.<sup>7</sup> The ink has perisht: 'et murmure populi cum quodam quasi favore subsecuto.' *Gir. Camb., Exp. Hib. c. xv.*—*Op.* v. 252, Rolls Series.



hoste was dys-comfite *and* toke ham to flyght / The othyr ham A.D. 1170.  
 folwid<sup>r</sup> into al the Playñ, and leyde on ham. So that in lytyl  
 space of tyme thay kyllid<sup>r</sup> of ham v. C. *and* mo; and the most *ab altis in*  
 Parte of the othyr fellyn adovñ into the see, of the hey Rokys, *mare rupi-*  
 and dreynt ham-selfe // In this fyght was a knyght that was *bus prae-*  
 callid<sup>r</sup> William ferrand, that did ful wel *and* abowe al othyr; *cipitati*  
*sunt*

<sup>1</sup> he was a man that hade semblant as thegh he were on the  
 mych yuel; and therfor he Putte hym-Selfe at tymys ther the  
 moste Peryl was. For he roght not thegh dethe come between  
 hym and his Sekenys, or hit were mych grow on hym<sup>1</sup> /  
 Here the Pryde of Watyrforde felle; here al his myght went to *superbia*  
 noght; her-of come the Englysh hope and conford; and to the *cecidit.*  
 Irysh, dred and wanhope. For hit was neuer ther-to-fore herde *horror . .*  
 that, of So few men, so grete a slaghte was done. But a lewid *desperatio.*  
 consayle thay diddyn, that ther-afyr turned ham to myche  
 cruelte. For whan the Mastry was al hare, *and* al hare enemys

ouercome, In the fyght weryn take wel iije score men *and* teñ that *septua-*  
 ham yeldyn, *and* weryn the beste and the rycheste of the Cite, *ginta cives.*  
 Such that thay myght haue hade for them the Cite delyuerid; or  
 els as mych ryches as thay wolde desyre. Heruey of montmurthy, *pecuniam*  
 that to ham was come, hym thyrdsome of knyghtis, *infinitam.* *and* Reymond;

vp-on dyuers consaylis thoghten what thay sholde do wyth har  
 Prysoneris. For Reymond laborid<sup>r</sup> for thar delyverance, as man  
 of pitefull herte / And thus sayd to his fellowis: "Lordynges, what  
 is vs to done wyth oure wrechid<sup>r</sup> presoners? I Sey not that man *de captivis*  
 shal on any maner spare his enemys; but thay byth nat now *nostris.*  
 enemys; but byth men not rebell, but in bataill forto defende  
 har contrey ouercome. Me-thynkyth thay byth now in such state,

that we owyth bettyr haue mercy of ham *and* yeue ham lyfe, forto *potius . .*  
 yeue othyr ensampill to be boxume, than cruely to do ham to *pietas ad*  
 deth; wher-for otheris wil truste the lasse to yelde ham to vs." *exemplum,*  
 \*Whan Reymond<sup>r</sup> Hade Suche Wordys y-Seyde, and al the fello- *quam cru-*  
 shippe Was most about to graunt ham lyfe, Aros vp heruey ney *delitas ad*  
*tormentum.* [\*Fol.7a.]

<sup>1-1</sup> vir carne quidem infirmus, sed corde firmissimus: imminentem, ut videbatur, leprae malitiam morte nimirum praevenire desiderans tam praematura quam praeclara.—Op. v. 249.

A.D. 1170. hame al, & thys ham̄ seyð: "Inogh̄ Reymond openly to vs hath  
 'Enough of Mercy!' spoke of mercy & almes-dedes, vnked landes I-wonne, & nat wyth  
 Did slaḡh & wyth brenny[n]ge. Wheder Alexander & Iulius Cesar,  
 Alexander and Caesar that weren̄ lordes of al þe world, wonnen londes by such wey, 4  
 win by it? I wold Reymond wold me answer. Whan thay comen̄ to vs vel  
 arrayede to fyghten̄, If þay hadde I-won ouer-hand & vs ouercome,  
 wolden thay, for almesse & for reuth, haw had mercye of vs? nay,  
 I trow nat. þerfor out-chese on̄ of two: Otheṛ do manly thynges, 8  
 Eithir kill the rebels quietly, wherfore we bene ycome; & the folke þat ys rebbell̄ ayeyn vs,  
 wyth-outten any noyse, wyth wepne hertely brynge out of dawes;  
 Other, yf we shollen̄ do almes dede on hem̄, & ham̄ sparen̄, as  
 or go home! Reymond hath seyð, out we wend to ouṛ shyppes, & turne ayeyn, 12  
 & let we the wreched men hold har lond, & brouken wythouten  
 any chalange." Heruyes dome lyket better than Reymondes; &  
 As no gallows are handy, the rebels are drown̄. weren the Cytezeyns to deth Idemed. Thay ne hadden no wone  
 of warytres; & þerfor þey ladden ham̄ to þe clyf of þe see, & put 16  
 ham̄ adoun, & drent ham̄.

## [CHAPTER XIV.]

Earl  
 Richard  
 Struguil

[\*Fol.7b.]

lands at  
 Waterford,  
 Aug. 23,  
 fulfilling  
 prophecies  
 of Merlin  
 and the  
 Irish Saint  
 Moling.

Reimund  
 joins him.  
 They  
 assault  
 Waterford,  
 Tuesday,  
 Aug. 25.

The men-tyme, the Erl Rycharð, wyth the power̄ that he  
 had arrayed, was y-come to south wales; & whan̄ he hadde  
 wyth \* gret reuerence y-done hys pylirimage at sent dauyes, he put 20  
 hym to saylle, & hade good wynd, came ynto Irland with two  
 hundret knyhtes & otheṛ, moṛ than a thousand. He arryued at  
 weyseford on seynt Bertylmewes euen̄: Than was fulfyll̄d a  
 prophecye that Merlyn̄ seyð of hys comynge; 'þe brond shal 24  
 come to-fore þe borned fyr; And rygh as the spark maked the  
 brond come, Also þe brond shal make the fyr come after.' Anoper  
 prophecye, seynt Molynḡ seyð of that same: 'A mych man shall  
 erne to-fore; & þe most heeddes of desmond & ek of leynestre 28  
 he shal defouly; & wyth streynth he shall noblych the wey  
 opne to the wepned.' Amorow, whan the tȳthynḡe of ham̄ was  
 I-spronge, Reymond went hym to the Erle with furtȳ knyghtes  
 with mych gladnes; & amorow, after þe holy-daye, Thay went 32  
 comynly al to þe syte of Waterford, & assaylled the toun ful fersly;  
 & twyes thay weren̄ rebuked, & ful stalwarhly, of þe Cytezeyns.  
 Reymond, that by purueaunce & graunt of ham al was ymade



amonge ham al, *and* thus ham Sayde: "I-nowe Reymond opynly to vs hath Spoke of mercy and almes-deddes, vn-kyd landis to wynne *and* nat wyth Slaughter *and* wyth brennyng. whedyr Alexandyr *and* Iulyus Cesar, that weryn lordys of al the worlde, wonnen landis by such wey, I wold Reymond wolde me answere. whan thay commyn to vs wel arrayed to fyghten, If thay had the bettyr, *and* vs had ouercome, woldyn thay, for almesse and for Pite, haue had mercy of vs? Nay, y trow not. ther-for chese oñe of two: Othyr to do manly thyng, wher-for we ben come; and the Pepill that is rebel ayeynnes vs, wythouten eny noyse, wyth wepyn hertely berewys ham of lyfe / Othyr, yf we shall do almysdede on them, and ham spare, as Reymond hath Sayd, go we to oure shippis, *and* turnne ayeyne, *and* lete we the wrechyd pepill holde har lond; *and* kepyn without any chalange." Herueyes Iugement Plesid bettyr than Reymondes; *and* weryn the Citteseynnes to deth demyd. Thay had no galosis; and therfor thay laddyn ham to the clyfe of the See, and put ham adouñ, *and* drovnde ham al.

*Cum ad nos expugnandos instructis aciebus adueniunt.*

*membris confractis, in maris praecipitium dati sunt.*

## [CHAPTER XIV.]

**T**he men-tyme, the Erle Rychard, wyth the Power that he had arraied, was come to Suth Walis; *and* When he had with grete reuerence done his Pylgrymage at Seynt Dauyes, he Put hym to sayle, *and* had good wynd, come into Irland wy[th] two hundryd knyghtis *and* othyr, more than a thousand: he londid at Weyford on Seynt Bartolomewes evyn. Then was fulfillid a pprophesy that Merlynge Sayde of his comynge: "The brond shal come to-for the brennyng fyre, And ryght as the Sparke makid the brond come, Also the brond shall make the fyre come aftyr." Anothyr prophesy, Molyng Sayd of that same: "A mych man shal erne to-for; *and* the moste hedis of desmond and also of leynystre he shal defeuly; and wyth streynth he shal nobelych the wey opyn to the wepenyd." A-morrow, whan the thythyngis spronge, Reymond went to the Erle with fourty knyghtis with mych gladnys; and amorrow, aftyr the holy day thay went holy to the Cite of Watyrford, and assaylid the town ful fresly; *and* twyes they weryn rebukyd; *and* ful boldely, of the Citteseynes. Reymond, that by Purueyaunce and graunt of ham

*Capitulum xiiijm.*

*prophetia Merlini.*

*prophetia Molyng.*

*capita conculeans.*

*his viriliter repulsi fuissent.*

A.D. 1170. prince, & formañ of al the host, sawe & awayted a place good for to assaylle: he cryed & cleped the wepned men to the assaut, & þay egrely assaylleden, & braken yn-to þe sytè, & folke-mele slowe the meñ yñ weyes & yñ houses, & wañ þe Cytè. In 4  
 They take Waterford. rathnyldes touř wereñ twey rýche meñ ytake, bot progh prayer of Macmorgħ, that theder was than I-come, he was y-hold alyue. Macmorgħ broght hys doghtyř with hym, Eue by name, & spoused hyř to the Erle, & madeñ fast sekernesse betweñ ham. Wañ thys 8  
 Mac- murgh's daughter Eve is married to Earl Struguil. was ydo al, þe Erle left meñ for to kepe the cytè, & turned hym with the hoste to deulyñ.

## [CHAPTER XV.]

Macmorgħ wyst that myche of the power of hař lond was I-come to helpen hañ of dyuelyñ, & hadden beset 12  
 They march, thro' Glendalough hills, to Dublin. all þe wodde weyes & þe narow weys thetherward: he left tho weyes, & lad the hoste throught the montaynes of Glyndelagh, al harmeles, rýght to the sytè. These cytezeyns, ouer al otheř, hated wereñ of hym, & that was no wonder; ffor yn some tyme thay 16  
 slowen hys fadyř yñ the cytè; & after the harme, thay dydde hym mych sham, for thay burryd an hounde with hym yn the pute that he was yn I-leyde. Thay sent messagers to þe Erle, & namely the Erchebysshop laurence, & besoghten pees; & as thay 20  
 Reimund and Miles of Cogan assail and take Dublin. wereñ spekyng of pees, on oon half was Reymond, & on the other halue a ful hardy knyght, Myles of Cogan, with jonglynges well coueytouse of battaylle & of gettyng. Thay assaylled the Cytè, & breken In, & wan þe Cytè, wyth gret slaght of þe sytzeyns. 24  
 [\*Fol.8a.] \* Natheles, the best parte of ham, wyth þe rychest & the derwarthest thyngys þat thay hadden, yn botes escapeden, & wenten yn-to þe north ylondes, wyth hastoyl, that was maýstre yn the cyte, & har lodesmañ. That day byfel two Muracles yn the cyte: that 28  
 Hasculf and the richest folk escape. on of the Croice, yn the moder chýrche of þe trýnyte, whyche the Cytzeyns wolden haue I-ladde with ham yn-to the ylandes yn the see; & for nothyng, thay ne myghth yt wecchen out of þe place. That otheř, of a sergeant that hadde I-robbet the erche- 32  
 bysshoppes paleys, & per-after come to-for þe rode, & offred a peny: fyrst, & este-sone, & at euery tym, the peny stert ayeýne to hym. he bethoght hym that god was nat wel I-quenyted of the robbery



al was made Prynce and forman of al the hoste, Saw and a-waytyd<sup>A.D. 1170.</sup> a place goode forto assayle. he cried *and* callid the wepenyd men to the assaute and<sup>d</sup> thay egyrly assaylid<sup>d</sup>, and brakyn Into the Cite, and kyllid the men in weyes and in houses, and wan the Cite. in rathnyldys toure weryn two ryche men take, *and* thay both were be-hedyd<sup>d</sup>. Macsaghlyn of olan was also take, but throgh Prayer Melaghlin O'Phelan of Macmurgh, that ther was than y-come, he was holde alyue. is taken, but kept alive. Macmurgh broght his doghtyr wyth hym, Eue by name, and Spousid<sup>d</sup> hyr to the Erle and madyn fast syckyrnys betwene \*Ham// [\*Fol.7 b.] Whan this was done al / the Erle Lefte men forto Kepe the Cite *and* turnyde hym with the hoste to deuelyn //

## [CHAPTER XV.]

**M**acmurgh vndyrstode that myche of the pepill of the <sup>Capitulum xv<sup>m</sup>.</sup> contrey was come to helpe ham of the Cite of deuelyn, *and* hadde be-sette al the wodd-weyes and the Narrow-weyes <sup>vias nemo-rosas et arctas</sup> thedyrward<sup>d</sup>. He lefte thay weyes, and lad the hoste throw the montanys of Glyndelagh, al holde and sound, tyl thay come to the Cite. The Citteseynes ouer al othyr hatid Macmurgh; *and* they wer hatyd of hym: and that was no wondyr. For in some tyme thay slowyn his fadyr in the Cite; and aftyr the harme, thay dyd hym moche shame, for thay buryed an hounde with hym in the <sup>cum cane cives tumulauerunt.</sup> buryles that he was In-leyde. Thay send messangeris to the Erle, *and* namely the archebyschope Laurance, and besoghten Pees; and as thay weryn Spekyn of pees, on oone halue was Reymond and on the othyr syde a ful hardy knyght, Miles de Cogan, with yonglynges wel couetos of batail and of getyng: They assaylid the Cite, and brokyn In, *and* toke the Cite with grete slaghte of the Citesenes. Natheles, the beste parte of ham, with the rychest and the woundyest thynges that thay haddyn, in botis escapedyn, and wentyn into the <sup>naves et scaphas .. intrantes</sup> north ylondes wyth hastoyl, that was Captayn in the Cite, and har gouernoure / That day befel two Miraclis in the Cite: that one, of the cros in the Cee church of the trynyste, wych the Citteseynes wold haue take wyth ham into the Ilandys in the see / And for no thyng thay myght not take hit out of the place. That othyr, of a Sergeant that had yrobyd<sup>d</sup> the archebysshope-is Place; and <sup>sicut in Topographia declaratur.</sup> ther-aftyr come to-for the rode, *and* offerid a peny: fryst, and aftyr, and in euery tyme, the peny styrt ayeyñ to hyñ. he bethoght hym that god was not aplesid of the robbery that he had <sup>Op. v. 129.</sup>

A.D. 1170. that he had y-do: he turned hym than, & let take al that he had y-nom<sup>1</sup>, & ba<sup>r</sup> hyt ayeyn, & went to þe rode & offred; & hy[s] offrynge the[r] abode. Whan þe Erl hade a few dayes Earl Struguil leaves a force in Dublin, I-ordyned for the stat of þe Cytè, he left the<sup>r</sup> Myles de Cogan, 4 keper of þe Cytè & of þe contre, & a partye of þe meyne wyth hym. And by entycement of Macmorgh, that bethoght hym of þe old enmyte that he hade to the kynge of Mithe, he went hym to þe contrey, branten, slowen, & robeden, & broghten the contre 8 and ravages Meath. to noght, for none ne durst hym wythe-stond. Oconghu<sup>r</sup> of O'Connor of Conaught saw that he was the next—as man that seethe hys neighbors hous berne, he may drede of þe sparkes—he sent Messagers to Macmorgh yn thys wordes: “Ayeine þe fourme 12 reproaches Macmurg, of ou<sup>r</sup> pees, thou hast imad come yn-to thys lond mych out-comeñ folke. þe whylle that thou held the yn thy leynystre, we hyt tholleth euynty; Now thou, as man that naght ne the thynekst on thyn oth, ne no reuth ne hast of thyn ostage, the 16 merres I-sete of thyn eldren lond, vnryghtfullyo uergoste. Make thyn out-comen men wyth-draw, & turne ayejne, or els sothly we shul the send thy sones heede.” Macmorgh thys herd, & yaf hym a prout answe<sup>r</sup>, & sent hym to sey, that he ha<sup>m</sup> wold hold, 20 & send after more & eke more; that he nold neuer reste tyl he hadde I-wonne Connaght, wyth the kyngde-dome of al þe lond, as hys eldreñ sumtym hyt haddeñ to-fo<sup>r</sup> hym. Oconnogh<sup>u</sup> had and cuts off his son's head. he<sup>r</sup> of grete dyspyte, & sore was atened, & let smyth of sonnes 24 heed, þat he had hym Itake fore ostage.

## [CHAPTER XVI.]

A Council of the Irish clerics is held at Armagh. The country's ill has come from enslaving English children. [Fol.8b.] Aftyr this, worth gret spech yn-to all þe lond, & mych ferdnesse of the out-comeñ meñ. Than gaddered ham al to-gedderes, al the clerkes & the wysmeñ of þe lond at 28 ardmagh; & of thys folkes comynge, was mych I-spoke, & longe dalyaunce. At þe laste, comynly thay accordeden al he<sup>r</sup>-to, that, for the syñ of þe folk, thys mesaduentu<sup>r</sup> ham ys byfal; namely, that whan thay fondeñ englysshe-meñ chyldren to sylleñ, that 32 chepmen & robbers woldene brynge to the lond, thay \* were wonet to by ham, & do ham yn thraldome; & that throgth goddys owne

<sup>1</sup> MS. ymon.



done. he turned hym than, *and* toke al that he toke wyth hym, A.D. 1170. and bare hit ayeys, *and* went to the rode, and offerid; *and* his offerynge ther abode. / When the Erle had a few dayes y-ordaynyd for the state of the Cite, he lefte there myles de Cogan, kepere of the Cite and of the contrey, and a partey of the meynne wyth hym. And by entycement<sup>1</sup> of *Macmurgh*, that be-thoght hym of <sup>1</sup> *instinctu*. the olde enemyte that he had to the kynge of Myth, he went hym <sup>As Mac-</sup> to the contrey, brantyn, Slouedyñ and robedyñ, *and* broghten the <sup>murgh</sup> contrey to noght, for non ne durst hym wythstond. Oconghoure <sup>hated</sup> of connaght Saw that he was the nexte, (as a man that seth his <sup>O'Rourke</sup> evyncrystyñ his house brenne, he may dred the sparkys;) he send <sup>of Meath</sup> messangeres to *Macmurgh* in these wordis: "Ayezne the forume of <sup>(p. 2-4),</sup> oure pees, thow haste made come into this londe mych strange <sup>Meath is</sup> pepill. the whyle that thow helde the in thy leynystre we hit <sup>wasted.</sup> tollid<sup>2</sup> euyñly. Now thow,—as man that noght rekyth of his <sup>in ineulam</sup> trouth, ne no pite hauest of thyn hostage,—the meris y-sette<sup>2</sup> of <sup>advocasti..</sup> thyn eldryñ lond, vnryghtfully ouer-goste<sup>3</sup>. Make thy strangeres\* <sup>aequa-</sup> Wyth-draw, and turne ayezne; othyr ellys Sothly we shall the <sup>nimiter</sup> sende thy Sonnys hede." *Macmurgh* this herde, and to hym yaued <sup>eustini-</sup> a prowte answer, *and* Sende hym to Say, that 'he ham wold holde, <sup>mus.</sup> and send aftyr more, and eke more, / ande that he wold neuer <sup>2 metas</sup> reste, til he had take *and* conquerid al connaght, <sup>positas..</sup> with al the kyngdome of al the lond, as his predessessouris had to-for hym.' <sup>3 insolenter</sup> Oconghoure here-of had grete indignacioñ, and gretly ther-of was <sup>excessisti</sup> grewid; And he comandid to Smyte of his Sones hede, that he yafe hym for an hostage.

## [CHAPTER XVI.]

Aftyr this, Spronge grete Spech in-to al the lond, <sup>Capitulum</sup> *and* mych dreded the strange comen men. Than gadderid <sup>xvjm.</sup> ham to-gederes al the clerkys and the wysmen of the land<sup>4</sup> at Ardmagh; and of this pepil-is comynge, was mych Speche and longe delyaunce. At the last, comynly thay acordid<sup>4</sup> al herto, that, for the synne of the Pepill, this mys-aventure ham ys <sup>tam a</sup> by-fall, specially that whan thay foundyn Englysh-men childryn <sup>mercatori-</sup> to sill, that Marchandis and roberes wold bryng to the lond, <sup>bus, quam</sup> thay were woned to by ham, and pute ham in thraldome; And <sup>praedoni-</sup> <sup>bus atque</sup> <sup>piratis</sup>

A.D. 1170. wreth hyt was, that as syllers wereñ to-fore y-brought yn thraldome, also the byggers sholden after: ffor hyt was somtyñ that the folke of englond—The maner of har kyngdome was al I-hole—whan thay had noñ other thyng that pay myghten take to, rathar 4

rather than suffer, would sell their children. than thay wold any myssayse tholy, Thay wer I-wont to sylleñ har chyl dren & har other kynnesmeñ, both ynto Irlond & ynto other londes. Ther-fõr hyt may well be soth, that as the byggers, also pe syllers, oft *serued* wel, through so loly gyltes to be y-brought yn 8 thraldome. Ther hyt was yn pat consaylle be-heght, & by assent of al comynly I-set, that al the englysshe-meñ yn pe lond that yn thraldome wereñ, shold beñ delyuered, & frely let goo whodyrso they wold.

The Irish resolve to free all English slaves.

## [CHAPTER XVII.]

Reports are spread in England of Fitz-Gerald's keeping Irish land. Henry II forbids ships to go to and from Ireland; and orders all English-men home.

Fitz-Gerald sends to Henry II in Gascony, and yields his Irish conquests to him.

Her-after spronge tythyngges of the Erle & of pe 12 englysshe-meñ ynto englond; &, as maner ys, myche me made more; & that the Erl hade apropred to hym, nat only leynestre, bot other londes also, that, by no ryght ne by law, to hym ne to hys wyf longen. The kyng sent anoon, & forebeed that, 'out 16 no lond that were yn hys power, ne shold no shyppen passe yn-to Irland, ne no maner thyng for to bryng; & al meñ that yn-to Irland war comen, shold ayeyn come yn-to englande, wyth-yn pe next estre, or they sholden be dysherytet & ex[y]led out of lond 20 for euer.' The Erl saw that he & hys wereñ narow belad, both of hys men that hym wold leue, & eke that nothyng ne most hym come out of other landes, of þyng that hym nede was: by comune rede of hys men, he sent Reymond ouer to the kyng 24 that was fer yn gascoyne, & thus hym sent to say: "By thy leue, lord, yf y am welle vndyrstond, y went ynto Irland for to help thy trew man, Dermot Macmogh; perfor, that al that of hys herytage, other of opers yn pe lond, almyghty god me hath I-sent, 28 as hyt come of thy graunt & of thy good wyll, also, I wyll that hyt to the turne, to do ther-wyth what the lyketh."

## [CHAPTER XVIII.]

Thomas a Beket is martyrd.

Reymond went to the kyng with such mandement; & the whyle that he folwed the kynges court, abydyng hys 32 answer, Thomas, the archebysshopp̃e of Cantrebery<sup>1</sup>, was martyred

<sup>1</sup> (*In margin, in a later hand*: The archebushop of canterbury called Tho. Beckett. 1171.)



that, throw godis his owyn wreth hit was, that as the sylleris A.D. 1170.  
 weryn to-for broght in thraldome, also the byeris sholdyn be  
 brogh[t] in thraldome after / For hit was somtyme that the  
 pepil of England the maner of har kyngdome was al y-holde:  
 Whan thay had none othyr thyng that thay myght take to,  
 Radyr than thay wolde suffyr any dysseise, thay wold syll har  
 childyr and har othyr kynnes-men, both into Irland *and* into priusquam  
inopiam  
ullam aut  
inediam  
sustinerent.  
 othyr landis. Therfor hit may wel be trouth that, as the byeris,  
 also the Silleris, ofte Seruyd well, throug So wicked doyng, to be  
 broght in thraldome. There hit was in that consayll promysyd,  
*and* by assent of al comynly y-Set, that al the Englysh-men  
 in the lond that in thraldome weryn, shold ben delyuerid, and  
 frely lette goo whedyr So thay wolde.

## [CHAPTER XVII.]

**H**ere-after spronge tythyngis of the Erle and of the Capitulum  
xviij<sup>m</sup>.  
 Englysh-men into Englonde; *and* as the maner is, of mych  
 thay mad more; and that the Erle had appropriid to hym, not only  
 leynystere, but othyr londis also, that, by no ryght ne lawe, to hym  
 ne to his wyfe partenyd // The kyng sende anone, and comandid  
 that 'no shippe, out of no lond that Partenyth to hym, sholde Passe  
 into Irland; Ne no maner thyng forto bryng; and al men that  
 Into Irland war comyn, sholde ayeyn goo into England wythin the  
 nexte Estyr, Othyr they sholde be disherytid *and* exilid out of  
 lond for euer.' The Erle saw that he and his weryn narrow bylad,  
 both of his men that hym wold leue, and also that nothyng shold  
 come out of othyr landis of thyng that he had ned to / he toke  
 consayle of his men, and Sente Reymond ouer to the kyng, that was  
 fere in gascoyn, and thus hym Sende to say: "By youre lycence  
 lord, yf y be wel vnderstond, y wente into Irland forto helpe yowr  
 trew man, Dermot Macmurgh. Therfor, that al that of his  
 heritage, othyr of otheres, that y haue in the Land, that almyghty  
 god to me \* Hath sende, as hit come of youre graunt *and* of youre  
 good wyle, <sup>1</sup> also y wille that Hit be turne to yow, to do ther-wyth  
 whate Plesse yow." in arcto  
jam  
positos.  
  
si bene  
recordor,  
[\*Fol. 8b.]  
sic ad  
eandem  
pro libito  
vestro  
nutuque  
redibit.

## [CHAPTER XVIII.]

**R**eymond went to the kyng with such mandement; *and* Capitulum  
xviij<sup>m</sup>.  
 the while that he folwid the kynges courte, abydyng his  
 answer, Thomas, the archebisshope of Cantreberry, was martirid

A.D. 1170. yn englond, nat wyth-out mych blame to al þe lond-folk, both  
 Arch-lered & lewed. That erchebysshopp, after many-fold martyrdome  
 bishop that he polled, negh seven yeȝ that he was banshed out of englond  
 Beket for the ryghtes of holy chyurche, In sore & many wepynges, yn 4  
 suffred seven years double heer about hys body—pat oñ, yn styd of shyrth; that oper,  
 in exile, yn stydde of breche—nyght & day yn holy prayer & redynge  
 personally, yn holy wrytte; & o thyng that meste sorow broght to hys  
 and also hert, that al hys kyñ, men & wommen, yonge & old, wommen 8  
 thro' his persecuted lyggyne yn chyld-bed, & old men that fore eld yroked weren yn  
 kinsfolk, her cradelys, & all otheȝ, clerkes & lewed, that me myght wytt  
 that sybrede or otheȝ frendshypp hadden to hym, al thay weren  
 I-dryue out of englond; & al they that weren of eld that pay 12  
 myghty othes swerȝ, swaren vpon the masse-boke that, as sone  
 as thay come ouer the see, thay shold go to þe erchebyssshoppe,  
 [\*Fol.9 a.] & shew hym the \* wrechednesse that pay suffred for hys sake;  
 who ffor he shold, for reuth of ham, turnen hys hert, & graunt þe 16  
 suffered kynges wyll of þynge that he desyred. After such martyrdomes,  
 for him. and many otheȝ þat he tholled yn hys lyue, whyche no manly  
 Then came hert may bethynke to ful end, the hey martyrdome, that broght  
 his chief hys soule to þe blysse of heuyn, & hys body to wyrshyppe yn hert, 20  
 Martyr- dom. otheȝ many þynges be-tydden that men Aght well vnderstond;  
 þat ayeys hys fomen yede, opyn heed, & opened þe chyrch durȝ  
 whyche the monkes hadden I-loke, & seyð þat 'meñ ne shold  
 no castell make of holy chyrche'; & hys holy croune bade ayeyn 24  
 the naked swerdes for to smyte, & that yn the modyr chyrche,  
 heghest of al þe lond, & to-foȝ the weued, that he of fouȝ knyghtes,  
 wodeȝ than wood houndes, tholled fouȝ woundes yn the holy croun,  
 & [n]on without,—so as þe croun oght betokne of proteccion to 28  
 clergy,—that he deth tholled yn the north syde of þe chyrche,  
 whyche betokneth Ihesu crystes passyō. & thus goddys owne  
 knyghte, wythouten any ferdnesse, tholled deth; yn hys lyf of thys  
 world, chaunged wel selyly for þe lyf that euer shal lest without 32  
 end. And as seynt Tomas-ys day, Apostle, ys þe fyft day afor  
 yold, so ys thys Thomas day þe fyft day after. That Thomas  
 was candel I-set yn þe este of þe world; Thys Thomas yn þe west.  
 [That] was lyght to aly chyrche yn hyȝ yough, as [Thys] yn hyȝ eld; 36

He was slain in Canterbury Cathedral by four knights, before the Altar.

The Apostle Thomas died on Dec. 21; Beket on Dec. 29.



in England, not wyth-out grete reprefe to al the land-pepill, both A.D. 1170.  
 lerid and lewid. That archebisshope, after manyfolde martyrdom  
 that he Sufferid, / ney vije. yere that he was banneschid out of *septennalis*  
 Englund for the ryght of holy church, In sore and many wepyngis, *fere exilii.*  
 In doubill here about his body,—that on in styd of shyrt, that *tam femo-*  
 othyr in styd of breche,—Nyght and day, in holy prayeris and *rali quam*  
 redyng in holy writte. And o thyng that meste Sorrow wrought *corporali.*  
 to his hert, that al his kynnes-men, yonge and old, women lyggyng *nec actati*  
 in chyldbed, and olde men that for elde yrokyd weryn in her *parcente,*  
 cradelis, and al othyr, clerkys othyr lewid, that thay mygh[t] know, *nec sexui*  
 that weryn of his kynd, Othyr frendshipe haddyn to hym, al thay *tam misera-*  
 weryn dryw out of Englund. And al thay that weryn of elde, *bili san-*  
 that thay myght othys swere, Swaryn on the masboke, that ‘as Sone *guinis*  
 as thay come ouer the See, thay shold go to the archebyschope, and *universi*  
 Shew hym the mesury that thay Sufferid for his Sake;’ For he *proscrip-*  
 shold, for Pite of ham, turnen his hert, and graunt the Kynge his *tionem.*  
 wyll of that, that he desyrid. After Such martirdomes, and many  
 othyr that he sufferid in his lyfe,—the whych in no mannes hert  
 may be thoght to ful end,—The hey martirdome, that broght his  
 Soule to the blysse of hewyn, and his body to vyrchip in Erth,  
 Othyr many thyngis be-fel that men aght wel vndyrstond; that *quod ipse*  
 ayenes His enemys yede, opyn hede, and oppenyd the church-durre, *furibundis*  
 whych the Monkes haddyn y-loke, and sayd that ‘men shold not no *hostibus*  
 castel make of holy church.’ And his holy crowne bare ayeyn the *templi*  
 nakyd Swerdes forto smyte, and that in the modyr chyrch, heghist *fores*  
 of al the lond, and to-for the auter / that he of foure knyghtes, *aperuit, et*  
 wodyr than wode houndis, tholled Foure woundes in the holy croun, *aperto*  
 and [n]on wyth-out,—So as the crownd ought to be know tokyn of *vertice*  
 protexcion to clergy,—that he deth Sufferid in the north syde of the *gladiis*  
 church, whych be-tokenyth Ihesu crystes Passion. and thus god- *occurrens.*  
 is owyn knyght, wyth-out eny ferd, sufferyd deth; and his lyfe of  
 this world, chaunged for the lyfe that euer shal leste wythout end.  
 And as seynte thomas-is day the apostyl, is the V. day afor yolde, <sup>1</sup> *ille*  
 So is this Thomas-is day, the V. day after. That thomas was candil *nascenti*  
 y-sette in the Este of the World; This thomas in the weste. <sup>1</sup> [That] *ecclesiae*  
 was lyght to holy church in hyr youth, as [This] in hyr elde; and *lumen*  
*dedit, hic*  
*senescenti.*

A.D.  
1170-1.  
As the  
Apostle  
gave his  
blood for  
the early  
Church, so  
Beket gave  
his for the  
aged one.

Among all  
saints, for

[<sup>1</sup> that  
tofore]

Beket  
alone were  
all kinds of  
miracles  
performd.  
He got a  
man fresh  
eyes and  
genitals.  
Merlin's  
prophecy  
of Beket.

[\*Fo1.9b.]

Beket died  
at 48 [that  
is, 53-4],  
on Dec. 29,  
1170.  
[T. MSS.  
L. T. Ha.  
Cl. n. Op.  
v. 262 n.  
4.]  
Macmurgh  
dies in  
May, 1171.

& as he [the Apostle] commenced holy chyrche with hys blode whan  
che was arerynge, Also thys, [Beket,] whan she had longe I-stond  
& wox yn eld, & redy was to falle, wyth hys blode he ryght hyr vp,  
& sette hyr yn ryght stydde. And as he t[oke hym] selue to 4  
quellers ffor to areñ þe seknes of holy chyrche, also thys ne douten  
nat to taken hym-self to kene swerdes, & lydder men hondes, ffor  
þe fredome of holy chyrche to sawe vnwemmed. The fourme of  
hys martyrdome, twey verses a latyn shortly comprehendeth, that 8  
thus mych ben to vnderstond: "ffor crystes spouse, vnder crystes  
tyme, yn crystes chyrche, crystes owne leman deyed." Amonge  
al the halweñ that almyghty god wrought yn erth, of selcouth  
myracleys for to showeñ hañ holynesse,—as the blynd to see, the 12  
lame to goñ, þe dombe to speke, the deue to hyr, lasers to clense,  
paralys to festnen, y-dropesie & al other manere yueles to helenñ,  
the dede to areren, yuel gostes to quetheñ, & al þe four elementes  
to hañ commaundement haddeñ,—he aloñ was y-wyrshypped with 16  
al these, & more þer-to, thañ-to-for<sup>1</sup> was nat herd ne sey; ffor  
a mañ that hade hys eghen I-draw out of hys heed, & hys manly  
membres y-kytte of & y-cast away, come to hys tombe; & progh  
besechyng of hym, god hym sent newe. Of thys holy martyñ, 20  
Merlyn seyð thus yn hys prophecy: "A newe martyñ shal aryse  
with newe myacles, that yn the worldes endyng, yn the west  
of þe world, by specyal vertue, mannys lymmes out I-draw & out  
I-corue, ayeyn shald make come. Sorow shal turne ynto yoye, 24  
whañ þe sonnes shal sle þe fadyñ yn hys modyñ wombe; prynces  
& hey men \* shal come out of þe este yn-to the weste, & lout ham  
to þe newe martyres fot-stappes." Al þys was openly I-seyð of  
þe holy martyñ seynt Thomas; he was þe whet corne þat fel yn 28  
erth, & mych fruyt forth broght. In þe yeñ of burth-tyme .xlviij.;  
of hys sacryfyng .viij.; of hys exil .vij.; yn the end of Decembre,  
yn þe yere of ouñ lordes yncarnacion .m.c.lxxj.; & was poppe  
of Rome, Alexandre the thyrd; Emperouñ of Almayne, ffrytheryke; 32  
kyng of ffrance, lowys. Whan the wentyr was I-passed, Dermot  
Macmorgh deyed, þe begynenyng of may, & was bured at ffernes.  
A man grett of body; hardy yn fyght amonge hys folke; of lange  
& lome cryyng yn fyght, hys voys was somdel hors; leuer hym 36



as he *commenci*d holy church wyth his blod whan she was arerynge, A.D. 1170-1.  
 Also this, whan she had long stond, and wox in elde, and redy was  
 to fall, wyth his blode he put hyr in good state, and therin  
 confermyd hyr. And as he toke hym-selfe to them that hym  
 berewid the lyfe, forto arere the sekenys of holy church, Also this  
 doutyd not to take hym-Selfe to s[h]arpe Swerdes, & wickyd men  
 hondes, \* For the fredome of Holy church to Saue Vn-Wemmede. [\*Fol. 9 a.]  
ut eiusdem  
formam  
conservaret  
illaesam.  
 The fourme of His Holy martirdome, two Versis of Lateyñ Sortely  
 comprehendyth, that thus mych ben to vndyrstond: "For crystis  
 Spouse, vndyr crystis tyme, in crystis church, crystes owyn leman  
 died." / Amonge al the holy Seyntes that almyghty god wrought for  
 in erth of voundyrfull miracles, for to Show har holynes,—as the  
 blynd to se, the lame to goffe, the dombe to Speke, the deue to quod separatis  
membris et  
proiectis,  
inaudito  
more re-  
posuit.  
 hyre, leperes to clense, Paralyse to festnen, ydropesye and al othyr  
 maner sekenes to hele, the dede to arrere, the vickid Spyrytys to  
 ouercome, And al the iiij<sup>e</sup>. *elementes* to har comaundement haddyn  
 —he alon was y-wyrchippid with al thes. For a man, that his  
 eghen was hym berewid, *and* his manly *membris* y-kute of and  
 cast away, come to his tombe; and throw besechyng of hym, god  
 hym sende newe // Of this holy martyr, Merlynge sayd thus in his  
 prophesy: "A new martyr shall ryse, with new Miracles, that in  
 the worldis endyng, in the weste of the world, by Special vertu,  
 manes lymes out y-draw and out y-corie, a-yeyn shal make come.  
 Sorrow shal make come Into Ioy, whan the Sonnes shal sle the  
 Fadyr in his modyr wombe. Princes and hey men shal come out Nota de  
Sancto  
Thoma.  
 of the Este into the weste, *and* lout hame to the new martyr-is fote-  
 stappis." Al this was opynly Sayd of the holy martyr Seynte  
 thomas. He was the whet-corne that fel in Erth, *and* mych frute  
 forth broght. In the yere of his berth-tyme, xlviij.; of his Sacry-  
 fyng, viij.; of his exil, vij<sup>e</sup>.; in the Ende of Decembre, in the yere  
 of oure lord-is Incarnacion, Mt. Clxxj; and was Pope of Rome,  
 Alexandre the iij<sup>e</sup>.; Emperoure of almane, Fryderik; Kyng of  
 Fraunce, Lowys // Whan the wyntyr was ypassyd, Dermot Mac-  
 murgh dyed in the begynnyng of May, *and* was buried at Fernys. Descriptio  
Murcardi.  
(Op. v.  
237-8.)  
 A man grete of body; hardy in fyght amonge his Pepill; of lange  
 ofte cryng in fyght, his voyce was Somdel hors; Leuer hym was

A.D. 1171. was that man hym dredet than loued; þe noble & þe ryche he  
 Mac- wold brynge to noght; the mek<sup>1</sup> & the pouer he wold rere; al men  
 murgh's character. ayeyns hym, & he ayeyns al.

## [CHAPTER XIX.]

Hasculf,

with  
 Norsemen  
 in forty  
 ships, led  
 by John  
 the Mad,  
 lands

& marches  
 to attack  
 Dublin.  
 Miles of  
 Cogan and  
 the English  
 meet him,

rout the  
 Norse, and  
 drive them  
 to their  
 ships.  
 John the  
 Mad is  
 slain.

Hasculf  
 threatens  
 his con-  
 querors,

Aftyr that, about whyt-sontyde, hastoyl, that was some 4  
 tyme maystre of deuylyn,—as man that fayn was about for  
 to awreke hys old tene,—come wyt men of northwey & of þe north  
 ylondes, with ful grett folk, yn furty grett shyppes, & arryued  
 yn þe hauen of amlyffy, with haṛ lodes-man, that hete Iohn the 8  
 Wood. Thay wenten out of haṛ shyppes, men well I-wepned,  
 sum with longe swerdes, some with Iren pletes & round sheldes  
 well I-bound about with Iren, swerdes & speres & axys ynowe,  
 & comen well ordeynly for to assaylle the toun on the eest half. 12  
 Miles de Cogan, keper of þe Cyte, kyndly stalwardly, & hardy,  
 wyth wel chosen folke, went out ayeyns ham, and yaf ham fyght;  
 bot strong hyt was, to hold fyght ayayn so many with so fewe:  
 thaṇ had he I-lost some of hys men; & O knyghtes theygh was 16  
 I-cut with þe kappe of hys haubergeon wytht a dynt of a dennys  
 ax. nede he most turne yṇ ayeine at þe yate, tyll that Rychard  
 de Cogan, Myles brother, wythe few men, that whylle styly went  
 out at the south yate, & sharply becryed ham behynd, & smote 20  
 vpon ham. throgħ that, þat he come so fersly vpon ham, thay wer  
 so afrygh, that thay wist nat on whych syde thay shold kepe the  
 fyght: yn a lytell whyl thay waṛ dysconfyte, & toke ham to flyght  
 toward haṛ shyppes. these other come ham betwene, & slowe ful 24  
 many: ther was Iohn the Wood I-slayn, & ful mych folk wyth  
 hym, throught Walter de Redlesford, that ful stalwarth was yn the  
 fyght. Hascoyl was I-take fro the shyppe ther he was to I-flow,  
 & I-brought alyues yn-to the Cyte, & hys lyf I-graunted for 28  
 raunceon; bot as he stode yn court to-for Myles, he put forth  
 lyddyrly a prout word & seyde, “wyt lytell power we comen now,  
 & thys nas bot assaye of our myght; bo[t] yf I lyue, aṛ hyt be lange  
 to, shal come other so mych as pese.” Whan thys was I-hard—for 32  
 yṇ the mannys tonge hys oft lyf & deth, & me seyth eke, ‘Tong  
 breketh boṇ, thegh hym-self ne hawe none’—Myles bad that

<sup>1</sup> MS. mok. Lat. ‘humilium erector.’



tha[t] a man hym dreddyð than lowyd ; the nobil and the ryche A.D. 1171.  
 he wold brynge to noght ; the meke and the Pouer he wold awaunce ;  
 al men ayeynes hym, and he ayeynes al men //

## [CHAPTER XIX.]

Aftr that, about whitsontyd, Hastoyl, that was Somtyme Capitulum  
 Maystyr of Deuelyn,—as man that fayne was about forto be xix<sup>m</sup>.  
 awengid of his old wreth,—come wyth men of North-Wey and of  
 the North ylondys, wyth many pepil, in fourty grete shippys, and sexaginta  
 londyd in the hauyn of Amlyffy, with har captayne that was callid navibus.  
 Ihoñ the Woode<sup>1</sup>. Thay wentyn out of har shippis, men wel <sup>1</sup> Insano  
 wepenyd, Some with longe Swerdys, Some with Iryñ Platys and vel Vhe-  
 rounne sheldys, wel bound aboute with Iryñ, Swerdys and Speres menti.  
 and axes ynow, and comyn wel ordeynly forto assayle the toun on alii  
 the Eeste halue. \* Myles de cogan, Kepere of the Citey, Kynly <sup>laminis</sup>  
 Bolde and Hardy, Wyth Welle schosyn pepill, went out ayeynnes ferreis arte  
 ham and yafe ham fyght ; but stronge hit was to holde fyght ayeyn consutis.  
 so many with so few ; than had he lost Some of his men ; and o  
 knyghtes thegh was kut with the lappe of his haubergeoñ, with <sup>innatae</sup>  
 a stroke of a dennysñ axe. nedes he moste turne aye at the yate, animosita-  
 tyl that Richard de cogan, Miles-Is brodyr, with few men, that tis au-  
 whyle went out at the south yate, and sharpely becryed ham dacia.  
 behynde, and Smote vpon ham. throgh that, that he come so Fresly cum panno  
 vpon ham, thay were so aferde, that thay wyst not on what Syde loricae  
 thay sholde kepe the fyght / In a lytyll whyle thay wer dyscom- praecisa.  
 fyte, and toke ham to flyght toward har shippis. thes oþer come  
 ham be-twen, and kyllid ful many. ther was Ihoñ de woode ipsos a  
 y-slayn, And ful mych pepil with hym, throw Water de Redeles- tergo  
 ford, that ful bolde was in that fyght. Hastoil was take fro the acriter  
 shipe ther he was to fiede, and brogh[t] alyues into the Cite, and exclamando,  
 his lyfe gravntid for Raunceoun ; but as he stode in courte to-for percussit.  
 Miles, he sayd lewidly a prowte worde : “Wyth lytil pepil we come  
 now, And this was not but assay of oure myght ; but yf y lyue,  
 ar hit be lange to, shal come othir so mych as thes.” Whan this  
 was herde,—For in the manes tonge is ofte lyfe and deth ; And as  
 hit is Sayd, Tonge brekyth bone, thegh hym-Selfe ne haue non,— In manibus  
 Miles commandid that he shold anone out be-ladde, and to Smyte <sup>linguae,</sup>  
 xviii. 21. <sup>mors et</sup>  
<sup>vita. Prov.</sup>

A. D. 1171. men shold hym anoon out lede, & smyte of þe heed. & thus, for  
and is hys hauteyn & prout spech, he lost þe lyf that thaȝ-by-for mekely  
beheaded. hym was graunted.

## [CHAPTER XX.]

[Fol. 10a.] Sone aftyr thys, many of thay that weren y-come 4  
yn-to Irland wyth the Erl, & eke to-fore,—for the kynges  
As Henry II's edict leaves Struguil bare of men and food, the Irish muster a big army, and besiege Dublin.  
Gothred, King of Man, and others,  
with thirty ships, beset Dublin Harbour.  
After two months' siege, and when food is scarce, news comes that Robert Stevenson is besieged in Carrick Fort.  
Maurice and Reimund Fitz-Gerald are in Dublin.  
byddynge that come to ham, as hyt ys to [1]d a-foor,—leften the Erl, & wenten yn-to england. The peple of yrland saw the erl narrow beladde, both of hys men That hym left, & of vytalle that 8 trukked, wher-of he hade grete plente ther-by-fore out of england. Thay gaddered ham to-gedders myche folk, al þe prynce of the lond, with al haȝ poer, & besegeden deuelyn on euery halue; & that was thogh procurynge of laurence, Erchebysshoppe 12 of dyuelyn, as men seyde, for loue of hys folk. he sent also hys lettres, with Oconghours lettres, kyng of Connaght, to Gothred, kyng of Manne, & to other prynces of þe north ylondes, for to be-sete the hauiyn of dyuelyn; & large yiftes & presentes ham 16 yaue, & myche more hem behete, for to helpe ham. &, for thay drede ham of al such manere of adventures, Thogh that, that the englysshe-men hadden so wel I-conquered vpon þe yrysshe, Thay comen the rather ham to help; & yn lytell whyle came .xxxvi. 20 shypys ful of stalwarth men wel arayed to fyght, & besetten the haueyn of amlyffy. Whan the Erl & hys men weren well twey monthes beleyn yn the syte of dyuelyn, & to ham come non helpe, nether of þe lond ne on watyr, & vytaylle fast ham slaked; & (as hyt 24 ys oft I-found, selde be-falleth on harme that more [ne come]) come Donald, Macmorghes sone, of okenseley, to The Erl, & told hym for that Robert steuenes-son was beseget yn hys castell that he had rered at þe carryke, of þe Cytezeins of weysford & the men of ken- 28 sely, well pre thousand men; & few men had wyth hym; [&, but hym] come socours by the pryd day, that of hym, ne thay that with hym weren, neuer no more to thynke. In the syte of dyuelyn, wer that tyme be-left with the erl, Moryche fytz-Geraud & Reymond, 32 that from the kyng was comen newly; sory for ham-self & for hars: & thegh þey weren yn grett angwysshe for ham-seleue, thay waren yn wel more for haȝ good brother & for hys, that amonge



of his hede. And this had he for his proude Spech loste the lyfe A.D. 1171. that thar-by-for mekely hym was graundid.

## [CHAPTER XX.]

Sone aftyr this, many of them that weryn come into Irland *Capitulum xx<sup>m</sup>.*  
 with the Erle, and also tofor,—by the kynges comandement that come to ham as hit is to-for told,—lesten the Erle, and wentyn into england. The pepil of Irland Saue the Erle narrow by-lad, *videntes Hibernici comitem et suos, tam suorum jac-tura, quam victualium defectu . . . jam deficientes.*  
 both of his men that hym leste, and of vytayle that trukked; wher-of he had grette plente ther-before out of Englonde. Thay gaderid ham to-gederis mych pepill, al the princes of the londe with al har Power, and be-segedyn Deuelyn on euery syd. and that was by proevrynge of laurance, Archebishope of Deuelyn, as men sayd, for loue of his Pepil / Also he sende his lettres, with o-conghoure-is lettres, kyngē of connaght, to Gothrede, kyng of Man, and to othyr Princes of the northe ylondes, for to be-Sette the hauyn of Deuelyn; and large yeftys and presentis ham yaue, and mych mor ham promysid, forto helpe ham. and, for thay dred ham of al Suche adventures, Throgh that, that the Englysh-men haddyn So wel conqueryd vpon the Irysh, Thay comyn the radyr ham to helpe. and in lytyll whyle came xxx<sup>ti</sup>. shippis, ful of bold men wel arrayid to fyght, and be-setten the hauyn of amlyffy. whan the Erle and his men weryn wel two monthys besegid in the Cite of Deuelyn, and to ham come no Soccovr on lond ne on watyr, [\* Fol. 10 a.]  
 \* And Vytayle ham falid, (and as Hit ys oft founde, Selde befallyth one Harne that more ne comyth aftyr, and euer gaderyth to helpe more and more,) Come Donald, Macmurghes sone of Okensely, to the Erle, and tolde hym, for that Robert Steuenes-Sone was besegid in his castel that he had rerid at the Karrike, of the Citteseynes of weysford, and the men of Okenseley, wel iije. M<sup>t</sup>. men; And few men had with hym; and, but hym come Socoure by the thyrd day, that of hym, ne thay that with hym weryn, neuer no more to thynke. In the Cite of Deuelyn, wer that tyme leste with the Erle, Morice fiz Geraud, and Reymond, that from the kyng was come newly, Sory for ham-Selfe and for haris. and thegh they wer in grete angwysche for ham-Selfe, they weryn in wel more for har good brodyr, and for his, that amonge his enemys was besegyde, in *sed cum-lante semper in-commoda fortuna sinistra. quasi tribus virorum milibus tam suorum quam sui non mediocriter anxietate turbati.*

A.D. 1171. hys fomen was beseyget, yn place feibly I-garnset, but a dych & a Maurice hegge of thornes vpon, & lytell ost ston-wal. Moryce arose vp Fitz- to-fore the erl & the knyghtes, & seyde: "Nat to delytes, ne Gerald ydelnes set to drawen, come we nat yn-to thys lande; both<sup>1</sup> for to 4 harangs sechen aduentures, & prouen our streynth vpon peryl of our his men: heedes. We haue I-stond awhyle & heghest, & now we bene

"We were the highest: we are now the lowest. y-turned to the lowest, for so goth þe sykenesse of thys world; euery gladnesse ys endet wyth sorowe, & euery selth hath wnselth 8 at þe end. After þe bryght day, cometh the durke<sup>2</sup> nyght; & after, the durknesse of \* þe nyght ys away I-dryuen *with* þe lyght [\*Fol. 10 b.] of þe sone. Ar thys, the ouer-hand was yn all styddes our, & plente of alle good; nowe beth so beloken, that non help vs ne 12 may come, noþer by lond ne by watyr. On oper halue, Robert steuenes-sone, whos herdy herth opened vs þe wey yn-to þys land, ys beseged fer wyt hys fomen yn folk place. What ybyde we? haue we any hope that our lond-folk vs come to helpe? thaŕ-to ne 16 tryst we nat; for we beth now yn such law I-sette, þat as þe Iresshe wer, ar thys, to the englyshe, also þe englysshe beth now to þe Iresshe. thaŕ-for gow owt stalwarty, assayllen our fomen!

"Let us fight! Tho' few, we've heart, and can beat our naked foes." thegh we few be, we beñ men of herth, & wel I-wepned! ne shal 20 neuer naked rascayll, thegh þey many be, haue myght ne power vs to wyt-stond." Whan moryce hadde thys I-seyd, Reymond, þat was I-smyte wyth the same sorow of herth, seyde to ham þe same wordes, & mych moŕ, 'that thay wollden allerformest smyth vpon 24 þe kyng of konnaght, & hym that was heed, & formest & heghest of ham alle.' Al that ther weren, helden herto, & ren astryf to wepne ham, & leppen to hors, & deled ham a thre, thegh thay fewe weren. In þe formest, was Reymond *with* twonty knyghtes; 28 In þe otheŕ, myles wyth .xxx<sup>ti</sup>.; In þe pryd, the Erl & morice, *with* fourty knyghtes & Squerys; & men an-hors & a-foot, to euery of these I-sete, as hyt wold by-falle: thay went ham out of þe syte styllly, about noon-dayes, & *with* so few men assayllyden and 32 hostes of .xxx<sup>ti</sup>. thousand. Reymond, amonge the fyrst, smote vpon ham; & feyr to-for al otheŕ: he smote tweyne throgh-out wyth a speer. Reymond & Moryce twey sonnes, Geraud & Alexander,

The English sally out, in three small divisions against 30,000 Irish.

Reimund Fitz-Gerald fights best.

<sup>1</sup> but.<sup>2</sup> MS. druke.



place febilly garnesyde, but a dyche and a hegge of thornys vpon, A.D. 1171. and a lytil stone wal. Moryce aros vp to-for the Erle and the knyghtes, and sayd: "Not to delytes, ne ydylnes, come we nat into this land; but forto sechyn adventures, and proven oure Streynth vpon peril of oure hedys. we haue stond awchyle, and hygh; and now we ben turnyd to the louyst; for So is the schavnge of this world. the end of euery gladnes is Sorrow. And euery Surnesse hath vnurnes at the ende. Aftyr the bryght day, comyth the nyght; and aftyr, the durkenes of the nyght is a-way dryven with the lyght of the Sone. Afor this, the ouerhand was in al places our, and plente of al goode. Now ben we So belokken, that none helpe vs ne may come, nothyr by lond ne by watyr. On the othyr Syde, Robert Steuenes-Sone, whos bolde hert openyd vs the way into this lond, is besegid fer with his fomen in febyll place. Whate abyde we? haue we any hoppe that oure lond-pepil wil vs come to helpe? tharto ne trust we not / for we byth now in Such lawe y-Sette, that <sup>1</sup> as the Iryssh wer, or this, to the Englysh, Also the Englysh byth now to the Iryssh. Wherfor go we out boldely assaylyn oure enemys! thegh we fewe be, we ben men of herte and wel wepenyd! ne shaft neuer nakyd raskayl, thegh they many be, haue myght ne powere vs to wythstond." Whan Morice had this sayd, Reymonde, that was Smyte wyth the Same Sorrow of herte, sayde to ham the same wordis, and mych mor, 'that thay woldyn alther-formyst Smyte vpon the kynge of connaght / and he that was hede and formyst of ham al.' Al that ther weryn, heldyn herto, and went to wepyn ham, and leppyn to hors, and delyd ham on thre, thegh thay few were. In the formyst, was Reymond, with twenty knyghtes; In the othyr, Milis, with xxx<sup>ti</sup>. In the thyrd, the Erle and Morice wy[th] fowrty knyghtes, and Morice with fourty knyghtis and Squyeris; and men an-hors an[d] a-fote, to euery of thys y-sette, as hit wolde befall. thay went ham out of the Cite Softely, about noon dayes, and wyth So few men assayledyn an hoste \* of xxx<sup>ti</sup> M<sup>t</sup>. Reymonde, amonge the fyght, fryst Smote vpon ham, and ferre to-for al othyr. he Smote two throgh-out with a Spere. Reymond and Morices two Sonnes, Geraud and alex-

*Non ad  
delicias,  
viri, non  
ad otia  
vocati.*

*Auxilium  
nobis, nec  
mare  
mittit, nec  
classis  
inimica  
permittit.*

*ut sicut  
Hibernicis  
Angli, sic  
et Angli  
Hibernici  
simus.*

*hora quasi  
post  
nonam.*

[\* Fol. 10  
b.]

<sup>1</sup> In the margin, 'as we byth ynglys on to the gryssh, so we byth gryssh on to the ynglys.'

A.D. 1171. thegh thay weſ fyrſt y-ſete yn þe lateſt of þe hoſt, throgh kynd  
 The little ſtalwardneſſe hertly ſmytten out to the formeſt, & many dydden  
 Engliſh hoſt rout to deth. Alle þe otheſ freſſhelly foloweden after; & yn lytell  
 the 30,000 whylle dyſconfited al þe hoſte, & ſlowed ſo many, that no tonge  
 Irish, ne myght tell. Oconnoghough, þat that tym ſatte yn bathe,  
 and return vnnethe eſcaped: thay folwed the dyſcomfytur on euery halue  
 to Dublin tyll þe nyght ham leth. Than thay turned ayeine, & name haſ  
 with great pelfre, gold & ſyluyſ, clothes & wepne & hors, & wenten wyth  
 ſpoil. They mychel gladneſſe yn-to þe ſyte. Amorow þay lefte good kypynge  
 (too yn the ſyte, & turneden toward weyſford by Odroon, wyth baners  
 late) to y-lacet, for to ſocour Robert ſteuenes-ſone.  
 aid Fitz-  
 Stephen.

## [CHAPTER XXI.]

[Fol. 11 a.] **T**he mene time, the folke of Weyſford, wythe þe power<sup>12</sup>  
 of Okenſely, wel thre þouſand men, ayein haſ othes I-ſweſ  
 Fitz- & haſ trowth, Robert ſteuenesso on al vnwardly, with fyue knyghtes  
 Stephen's ſcanty & a few bow-men I-found withyn hys feble caſtel, thay ſtynt nat to  
 scanty garrison defend theſſelves bravely. assaylle. thay defendet ham full ſtalwarthly, thegh they fewe weſ; <sup>16</sup>  
 & namely a knyght that hete Wyllyam Not, aſtyſ Robert, ouer al  
 otheſ beſt dydde. Whan thay myght nat wyth ſtreynth ſpede,  
 thay bethoght ham that wyth falſhed & wyth treyſon they wold  
 come wyth-yn ham. Thay ſent to þe dyche twey byſſhoppes, <sup>20</sup>  
 The Irish deceive them; that on of Weyſford, that otheſ of kyldaſ, & otheſ mo wyth ham  
 yn habyt of relygyon; thay broght with ham maſſebokes, &  
 Corpus domini, & relykes many, & ſworne vp-on ham al, & vpon  
 haſ owne ſoules, that 'dyuelyn was Itak; & þe Erl & morice & <sup>24</sup>  
 swear Remond, & the engliſſhe-men, euerychon I-ſlawe; the hoſt of  
 Dublin is taken, and its Chiefs ſlain. leynestre & of Connaght comyng to ham-ward; & for good of  
 hym, thay weſ to hym y-come; that he ſhold yeld vp his caſtel,  
 & me ſhold ſaue hym lyf & lym, & al his & al har good; for he <sup>28</sup>  
 They offer the garrison a ſafe transport to Wales. Their false words are believd, and the garrison are ſlain or im-  
 priſond. was ham ſo fre & ſo meke lord, me ſhold trewly brynge hym  
 & his ouer in-to Wales ar the grete hoſte of his fomen to hym  
 comen, that nothyng nold ſpaſ hym.' Robert leued haſ ſpeche &  
 haſ falſ othes; he came out & yeldet hym & his, to ham & to haſ <sup>32</sup>  
 trowth. Thay weſ no raper out I-comen, that me ne name ham  
 euerychone; & ſome thay ſlowen yn þe place; ſome þay vndide  
 & betten liddery & bonden; & wyth ham ſelfe I-bounden, keſten



andyr, thegh they were fryst Sette in the laste of the hoste, throgh A.D. 1171.  
 kynly bolul<sup>1</sup> hertely Smyten out to the formyst, *and* many dyddyn innatae  
tamen  
 to deth. Al the othyr freschely folwedyn aftyr; And in lytyll strenuitatis  
indicio . .  
 Space of tyme dyscomfyted al the hoste, and slowyn so many, that  
 no tonge myght tell. Oconghoure, that that tyme Satte in bathe, [<sup>1</sup> for  
bolnys,  
 vnneth Escapid. thay folwid the dyscomfiture on euery halue tyll 59/14.]  
 the nyght ham lette. Than thay turned ayeȝne, and toke har victualibus  
et rectoris,  
 pilfre, gold and Syluyr, clothis, and wepyn and hors, *and* wentyn spoliis  
 with myche gladnes into the Cite. A-morrow thay lefte good quoque  
et armis  
 kepyng in the cite, and turned toward Weysford by Odroofi, wyth onerati.  
 baneres ylacyd, forto Socoure Robert Steuenes-Sonne.

## [CHAPTER XXI.]

**T**he men-tyme, the pepil of weysford, *with* the Power of Capitulum  
xxj<sup>m</sup>.  
 okenseley, wel iije. M<sup>r</sup>. men, ayeȝn har othis Sworne and har  
 trouth, Robert Steuenes-Sonne al vn-wittyng, *with* v. knyghtes Stephani-  
dem im-  
provisum.  
 and a few bowmen, fownde within his febil castel, thay stynte not  
 to assaile. thay defendyd ham ful boldely, thegh they fewe were;  
 and Specialy a knyght that was callid William Not, aftyr Robert,  
 ouer al othyr best dyd. Whan thay myght not *with* streynth  
 Spede, thay bethoght ham that *with* falshede and *with* treysone ad con-  
suetu  
fallaciae  
tela fig-  
mentaue  
dolosa con-  
currunt.  
 thay wolde come within ham. Thay Sende to the dyche two  
 bysshopis, that one of weysford, that othyr of kyldare, and othyr  
 mo *with* ham in habit of religioȝ. thay broght *with* ham masbokes  
*and* Corpus domini, *and* relykis many, and Sworȝ vp-on ham al,  
 and vpon har owyn Soulys, that ‘Deuelyn was take; and the Erle,  
 and Morice *and* Reymond, and the Englysh-men, euerychoȝe were  
 Slayȝ; and the hoste of leynystre and of connaght comynge to ham-  
 ward; and for good of hym, thay were to hym come; that he sholde Stephani-  
dae ipsius  
commodi  
causa.  
 yelde vp his castel, and thay wold Sawe his lyfe, and al his, and al  
 har good; for he was to ham so fre and So meke lorde, they wold  
 trewely brynge hym and his ouer into walis, or the grete oste of  
 his enemys to hym were come, that nothyng wolde hym Spare.’  
 Robert belewid har Spech and har fals othys. He came out, and <sup>2</sup> alii ver-  
beribus,  
alii vero  
vulneribus  
gravior  
afflicti.  
 yeldyd hym *and* his, to ham and to har trouth. Thay were no  
 radyr out-come, than thay toke ham euerychone; and Some thay  
 Slowyn in the Place; Some thay vndide and bettyn vickydy<sup>2</sup>; *and*

A.D. 1171. The Irish traitors burn Wexford, and go to the Island of Begeri, with Fitz-Stephen. In the pass of Odroon, Striguil defeats a Leinster force.

The Wexford men threaten to kill Fitz-Stephen &c. The English hear of the loss of the Carrick garrison, and weep for it.

[\* Fol. 11 b.]

Robert Fitz-Stephen described.

Richard, Earl of Striguil described.

willych In preson. Nat long theſe-after, come soth tythlyngges of the dysconfytur of dyuelyn, & the Erles comynge toward ham. the thraytours, whan thay hyt wysteñ, thay setten haſ own toun of weysford aſyſ, & barnen hyte; & wenteñ ham-self, with wyf & 4 chyld, & al haſ oþer good & haſ preſons, ynto þe lland of begger-ynge, þat hys I-sete yn the entre of the hauen of Weysford. Þe host of leynester come ayeys hym yn Odrone, & yaf hym fyght yn a paas of o thykke wood, strange yn hym selue, & comerous. 8 Theſe weſ many of the Irysshe y-slaw yn that fyght; & þe Erl & al hys cameñ hole & sound yn-to þe pleyne, sawe o man that he þer forlese; & meyleſ, ouſ al otheſ, as hys wone was, stalwardly hym thaſ byladde. ¶ After that, as thay comyñ toward Weys- 12 ford, comeñ meñ ayeys ham, & tolden ham the aduentur of Robert, & of the touñes bernynge, & seydeñ ham sykerly, that 'yf pay to ham wold vend anoon, pay wold sle haſ preſons, & send ham the heeddes.' Whañ thus was y-hard among the oste, who-so 16 had I-hard þe wepynge, & the wenyng, & the sorow that thay mad, he myght wel sygge that 'neuer-more sych reuth was amonge meñ I-sey.' he was mañ that noon otheſ was hys eunynge In all goodnesse<sup>1</sup>, & ensampell to all knyghtes that any stalwarthnesse 20 wold begynnyge; \* ffor yn-Wales & eke yn Irland many aduentures both god & yuel had I-fond, that otheſ weren hys aduentures hard, thegh thay som tyme welcomeñ wyth hym. He was man mych of body, <sup>2</sup> fayr vysage, soft & rody, nat ful becumliche; grete 24 meet-yeuer, large & fre throgħ al thyng, & of grett solace yn Iappynge & pleyng; bot to mych, & vnmesurable, he yaf hymself lecherye<sup>2</sup>. The Erl was man of suche manere; <sup>3</sup> he was samroed, with grey eghen, wommanes vysage, & sproty, smal spech, 28 short nek<sup>3</sup>; on al otheſ manere he was of fayſ body, & alonge fre & meke; ham that he hade nat to yeue to, he quemed ham with fayſ spech: out of wepne, he was as redy to otheres byddyng

<sup>1</sup> O virum, virtutis unicum, verique laboris exemplum.—*Op.* v. 271.

<sup>2-2</sup> vultuque decenti; et statura paulo mediocritatem excedente: vir dapsilis et largus, liberalis et jocundus, sed vino Venerique trans modestiam datus.—*Op.* v. 271-2.

<sup>3-3</sup> Vir subrufus, lentiginosus, oculis glaucis, facie feminea, voce exili, collis contracto.—*Gir. Camb. Op.* v. 272. Rolls Series.



boundy[n]; and with hym-Selfe y-bound, kesten vnmercyably in A.D. 1171. pryson<sup>1</sup>. Not lange ther-aftyr, come trew thythynges of the dyscomfytur of Deuelyn, and the Erlis comynge toward ham. the traytours, whan thay hit Vndyrstode, thay Setten har owyn toune of weysford afyre, and brentyn hit / And wenten hame-Selfe, with wyfe and chylde, and al hare othyr good and har prisoneres, into the ad *insulam* Begeri . . . *quae et sancta vocatur.* Island of begeryn, that is at the Entrest of the hawyn of weysford. the Hoste of Leynystre come ayeynys hame in odroon, and yafe ham fyght in a paace of thyke wodde, strange in hym-\* Selfe, and comeros<sup>2</sup>. Ther wer many of the Iryssh Slayn in that fyght; ande the Erle and al his came hole and Sounde into the Playn, Saue o man that he there forlese. And Meylere, ouer al othyr, as he was woned, boldely hym there bore / Aftyr that, as thay comen † *ex parte quoque proditorum firmiter asserentes, quod si ad illos accedere forte praesumant, praecisa sibi suorum capita statim cuncta remittent.* toward weysford, came men toward hame, and toldyn ham the aduenture of Robert and of the tounes brennyng, and † Sayd ham Surly, that 'yf thay wolde to ham wende anoone, thay wolde sle har prisoneres, and Send ham the hedys.' Whan this was herde amonge pe hoste, who-so hadd herd the wepyng, and the lementacion and the Sorrow that thay made, he myght wel say that 'Such Sorrow was neuer amonge men Sey' // He was man, that none othyr was his cunyng in al goodnesse, and Ensampil of al knyghtys that any boldnys wolde begynne. for in Walis, and also in Irland, many aduentures both good and euyl had fownde, that ofter weryn his aduentures hard, thegh thay Sometime wel comyn with hym. he was man myche of body, fayr vysage, Softe and rody, not ful becomlych; good mette-yeuer, large and fre throug al thyng, and of grete Solace in laypyng; but to mych, and vnmesurably, he yafe hym-Selfe to Lechery //

The Erle was man of Such manere: he was wyth-out doute of grey eighen, womanes visage, and Sproty, smale Speche, Short neke: on al othyr maner, he was a fayre body, and alonge fre and meke. thay that he hadd not to yew, he plesyd with fayre Spech<sup>3</sup>. Out of wepyn, he was as redy to otheres byddyng, as thay to hym.

<sup>1</sup> in carceres, et vincula contruduntur.—*Op.* v. 271.

<sup>2</sup> quamquam in sui natura arcto nimis et inuio, concidibus tamen plurimum arte munito.—*Op.* v. 272.

<sup>3</sup> Quod re non poterat, verborum suauitate componebat.—*Ibid.*

Descriptio  
Roberti  
fiz Steuen.

A big man,  
liberal, but  
lecherous.

A.D. 1171.

Description of  
Richard,  
Earl of  
Striguil.

as other to hys: alle thyng he dydde by rede of hys men, & nothyng wyth-out. Out of bataylle, he had more of knyght than of host-lede; yn bataylle, more leder than knyght; & yn al aduenturs of bataylle, he was stydfast, ful connyng, & tokne of 4  
recet to al hys host; & for noon vnhap he ne amayed hymself, ne yn wanhope ne fel; ne for ne good chaunce, he ne made hym the prutter ne þe more hautayn; bot euer-more, yn al aduen[tu]rs, of stydfast herth & trewe.

8

## [CHAPTER XXII.]

The Earl  
of Striguil

Whan the erl hadde I-hard the trayson þat was I-done to Robert, wytht myche sorow of hert he went hym with the host to Watyrford; & þer he fond heruy of mountmorthy, that than wase newen I-comen out of englond from þe kyng, 12 & broght wryttes, & eke by mych amonested the erl that he shold wend to the kyng. he hade shyppe redy, & good wynd; he name heruy with hym, & went ouer; come to the contre of clandecestre, to Newenham, ther he fond the kyng with mychel 16 host, redy to pass yn-to Irland. & after myche speche betwene ham ymade, & myche dalyaunce, thogh heruyes modelyng & comyng about þe erle, & eke hys besechyng, the kyng name of hym manred for to hold leynestre of hym; & the Erl graunted þe kyng, 20 dyuelyn, & all the hauen tounes vpon þe see, with ha Candredes & castelles þer-vpon y-set; & that other parte of hys conquestre, he & hys heyres sholden holden of þe kyng & hys heys. Whan thys was al on thys manere I-done, the kyng toke the wey yn-to 24 south Wales, & cam to pembroke; & ther yn þe contre abode with hys host longe whyle, ar he had wynd for to passe. The whyle that he was tha, he hadde houndes & haukes, as man that mych delyted yn suche game. .O. day he went by the strond of þe see, 28 & ba a mych goshawke of northwey vpon hys hand. Than sat vp-on an hegh clyff ouer the strond, a fauon gentel, negh hys nest, ther he was woned to brede. The \*goshake sawe the fauon, & a-bated to hym. the kyng that saw; & kest hym of hys hand; & 32 he nam hys flyght toward the fauon, hym fore to henten: the fauon sawe hym comyng, & nam hys flyght an heghe, & escaped of hym; þe goshawke turned ayeine to þe kynges hand; & ar

sails to  
England,  
and finds  
Henry II  
at Newn-  
ham,  
Gloster-  
shire,  
ready to  
cross to  
Ireland.  
The Earl  
yields  
Dublin and  
all haven-  
towns to  
Henry,

who goes  
to Pem-  
broke, and  
waits  
there for a  
favourable  
wind.

[\* Fol. 12  
a.]

Henry's  
Norse  
goshawk



Al thyng he did by consayle of his men, and nothyng without / A.D. 1171.  
 Out of battayl, he had more of knyght than of hoste-leder; in  
 battayle / more ledder than knyght / and in al aduentures of *In praelio*  
 battayle, he was stydfaste, ful conyng, and tokyn of recette to al his *positus,*  
 hoste; and for no vnhape he was not aferde hym-Selfe, ne in van- *fixum suis*  
 hope ne felle; ne for no good chaunce, he was not the Pruttyr, ne *recupera-*  
 the heyer; but euer-more, in al aduentures, of stydfaste herte and *tionis et*  
*refugii*  
*signum*  
*manebat.*  
 trewe.

## [CHAPTER XXII.]

**W**Han the Erle had herde the trayson that was done to *Capitulum*  
 Robert, with myche Sorrow of herte he went with al the *xxij<sup>m</sup>.*  
 hoste to watyrford; and ther he founde heruey of montmurthy,  
 that that tyme was come out of England frome the kyng, and  
 broght writtes, and Eke mych amonneschyd the Erle that he sholde  
 wend to the kyng. he had ship redy, and good wynd; he toke  
 heruey with hym, and went ouer; come to the contrey of clandecestre,  
 to New-Enham, ther he found the Kyng with grette hoste, redy to  
 Passe Into Irland. and aftyr mych Speche betwen ham made, and  
 myche delyaunce, throug herueyes medlyng and comyng about the *circum-*  
 Erle, and also his besechyng, the kyng toke of hym concayle forto *ventu*  
 holde leynystre of hym; and the Erle graunted the kyng, deuelyn, *pariter et*  
*interventu*  
 and al the hawyn tounes vpon the see, with hare candredes and  
 castelis there-vpon sette; and that othyr Parte of his conqueste, \* He *[\* Fol. 11*  
 and Hys heyres sholde Holde of the Kyng and [his] Heyrys. Whan *b.]*  
 this Was on this manere done, the kyng toke the way into South  
 walis, and came to Pembroke<sup>1</sup>; and ther in the contrey abode with  
 his hoste longe tyme, ar thay had wynd to Passe. The whyle that  
 he was there, he hadd houndes and haukys, as man that mych  
 delytyth in Such game. O day, he went by þe see stronde, and bar  
 a mych goshauke of Norway on his hande. Than Sate vpon an hey  
 clyfe ouer the stronde, a faucon gentyll, ney his neste, ther he was  
 wonyd to brede. the goshauke Saw the faucon, and abated to hym *laeva*  
 hym forto smyte. the faucon saw hym comyng, and toke his flyght *proiecit*  
 an hey, and Escapid of hym. the goshauke turnyd ayeyn to the

<sup>1</sup> Et Penbrochiam veniens, pulcherrimam in brevi Milverdico portu [Milford Haven] classem conjunxit.—Gir. Camb. *Op.* v. 273.

A.D. 1171. he myght fully take to hym, the facon smote to hym from an  
 is kild by heyght, & forcleue hym the rygge, & kest hym adoune dede at the  
 a Welsh kynges foote. Al thay that hyt saw, hadden ther-of myche wondyr.  
 falcon. Than bade the kynge, that fro that tyme, the bryddes of that facons 4  
 neste shold euer-moꝛ be I-kepte to hys owne be-houe; & so thay  
 weꝛ, euery yeyr; & yn al hys kynge-dome wer noꝛ so good facons  
 I-found, ne so bold.

## [CHAPTER XXIII.]

O'Rourke,  
 king of  
 Meath,

assaults  
 Dublin,  
 early in  
 September,  
 but is  
 beaten off  
 by Miles  
 of Cogan;  
 and his  
 son is slain.

The while that thys was, Roueryke, the kynge of Myth,— 8  
 awayted that the erl was out of lond; & Reymond &  
 lytel folk was beleft ar dyuelyn, the syte & þe contrey for to kepe,—  
 with mych folke come to dyuelyn about myd-heruest, & assaylled  
 the walles of þe syte with gret streynth & loly crye, & wend 12  
 wel to haue I-take þe syte, & al þat þer-In was. bote ther  
 streynthys & stalwarthnesse, hyt mote nedes shewe hymself:  
 Myles de Cogañ & hys meñ preuely wenten out, & smote grymly  
 vpon ham, so þat yn lytell whyl thay wereñ al dyscomfyted. Bot 16  
 roury hymself vnnethe escaped; & hys sone, a welle stalwarth man  
 amonge hys folk, was thaꝛ I-slawe, wyth many other.

## [CHAPTER XXIV.]

Nota: de 1  
 primo  
 aduentu  
 Regis An-  
 gliae in  
 hiberniam  
 Henry II  
 lands at  
 Waterford  
 on Oct. 18,  
 1171,  
 fulfilling  
 prophecies  
 of Merlin  
 and St.  
 Moling.

A ftir this, whan the kynge had I-dygħt al that nede  
 was to so noble comynge ynto Irlond, he went to seynth 20  
 daunes; & besoght the holy mañ, seynt dauy, with grett deuocion  
 & mych wurshype. And tho weder hym come, & wynd at wylle.  
 He put hym to saylle; passed the see, hool & sound; & arryued at  
 Waterford on seynt lukes day, with fywe houndred knyghtes, 24  
 & men, an hors an a foot, fulle many. Than was fulfylled a pro-  
 phycye that Merlyn seyð: "out of þe Este shal come a fyꝛ  
 bernynge, & shal Irlond al about for-swely." And seynt Molyng  
 seyð þus: "Out of þe eeste shal come a stronge thondred, & shal 28  
 smyte yn-to þe weste, & al the streynth of Ormond adoun brynge."  
 He arryued, the yeꝛ of hys kyngedome, senthe; of hys elde .xl.;

<sup>1</sup> Later note in right margin: 'For in Martilogis the king brought 400 great shippes into Irelande, and in short time subdued the whole lande, beinge governed by 5 kinges, all which submitted to the king, except the king of Connaght, who kept himself in woods and marishes.'



kyngys hand; and, Ar he myght fully take to hym, the faucon smote to hym from an hey, and for-clew hym the bake, and kest hym doune ded at the kynges fote. Al thay that hit Saw, ther-of had grete wondyr. <sup>1</sup>Than comandið the kyng, that fro that tyme, birdis of that faucon-is neste shold euer-more be kepe to his owyn behow; and So thay were, euery yere. And in al his kyngdome wer none So good faucones y-found, ne so bolde.

## [CHAPTER XXIII.]

**T**He mene-tyme that this was / Roueryke, the kyng of mythe<sup>1</sup>,—be-helde his tyme, and that the Erle out of lond was, and Reymond and lytil peple was leste at Deuelyn, the Cite and the contrey to kepe,—wyth mych pepyl come to deuelyn about myd hervyst, and assaylid the wallis of the Cite with gret Streynth and grymly cry, and wend wel to haue take the Cite, and al that therein was. But ther streynthis and bolnys, hit mote nede Schow hym-Selfe: Miles de Cogan and his men priuely wentyn out, and smote grymly vpon ham, so that in lytyll whyle thay weryn al dyscomfyted. But Roury hym-Selfe vnneth Escapyd; and his Sonne, a wel bolde man amonge his pepil, was ther Slayn, with many oper.

## [CHAPTER XXIV.]

**A**ftyr this, whan the kyng had dygh al that nede was to So nobyl comynge into Irland, he went to Seynt Dauyes, and besoght the holy man, seynt Daui, with gret deuocion and myche wyrchippe. and then wynde and weddyr hym come at wille. he putte hym to sayle, and passyd the see, holde and Sounde; and londyd at Watyrford on Seynte Luke-is day, with fyue hundred knyghtes, and men an hors and a foote, ful many. Than was fulfillid a prophesy that Merlyn Sayd thus / “Out of the Este shal come a fyre brennyng, and shal Irland al aboute forswely.” And seynt Molyng said thus, “Out of the Este shal come a stronge thondyr, and shal smyte into the weste, and al the streynth of Ormond adoune brynge.” he londyt, the yere of the kyng-dome, the Senfte; of his age, the xl; of our lordys incarnacion, M<sup>i</sup>. Clxxij; and was

<sup>1</sup> rex monocolus Medensis Ororicus . . . cum multitudine magna, circa kalendas Septembris, Dubliniam venit.—Op. v. 274.

A.D. 1171.  
<sup>1</sup> singulis  
rex annis,  
circa nidi-  
ficationis  
tempora,  
propter  
falcon s  
terrae  
illius, qui  
marinis  
in rupi-  
bus exclu-  
duntur,  
mittere  
consuevit.  
Capitulum  
xxiiij<sup>m</sup>.  
  
Sed quo-  
niam  
virtus  
claudi  
nescit; et  
ignis op-  
pressus, in  
flammas  
erumpit.

Capitulum  
xxiiij<sup>m</sup>.

Nota de  
primo  
aduentu  
Regis  
Anglie in  
hiberniam.

Veniet ab  
aurora  
turbo  
validus.

A.D. 1171. of ouȝ lordes Incarnacion .M.C.lxxij ; & was poppe, Alexander the thryd ; Emperouȝ, ffryderyke ; kynge of ffrance, lowyse.

## [CHAPTER XXV.]

Henry II  
has Fitz-  
Stephen

The kynge abode at Waterford a fewe dayes. Theder come the sytzeys of weysford, & broght to hym Robert 4 steuenesse-sone, as for gret seruyce, & yn hope of good reward ; ffor as myche as he come yn-to Irlond, lond to conquer, wythout auctoryte of hegher prynce, & yaue other, ensample for to comen ynto the lond. The kynge, at the byggynnyge, told of hym grete 8

[\* Fol. 12  
b.]

put in  
prison.  
The King  
of Cork  
does  
homage to  
Henry II ;

so do the  
King of  
Limerick,

and all  
the best  
folk of  
Munster.

Henry II  
returns to  
Waterford,

pardons  
Fitz-  
Stephen,  
and re-  
stores him  
his lands.

\* vnworthynesse ; & edwyte hym, with grete thretynge, of that grete boldnesse ; & lete take hym, y-bound as he was, & gyued hym to another, & put hym yn Rathnyldestouȝ for to kepen. Soine per-after come the kynge of Corke, Dermot Maccarthy, & yeld 12 hym to the kynge, & dydde hym homage, & swaȝ hym hold othes, & delyuered hym ostages for to be to hym hold & trew, & beȝ hym truage euery yeȝ of hys land. ffrom thus, the kynge went wythe the hoste to lysmore, & ther was tweȝ dayes ; & fro 16 thus, went to Casshle. Theder came donald Obreen, kynge of lymeryke, to hym vpon the watyȝ of ssur ; & for to hawe pees, yeld hym to be kynge yn al manere as Maccarthy hadde done. The kynge set kepers both at Corke & at lymeryke ; & to hym 20 comen the hoste of both contrees aftyr Maccarthy & Obreen, & yeld ham to be kynge, & becomen hys meyn by othes & ostages ; so that ther was none that waȝ of any name yn al Monestre, that by hys good wylle ne yeld hym to the kynge. Whan thys was al I-done, 24 the kynge, with mych wyrsshypp & wyth ryche yiftes, lete euery maȝ wend yn-to hys owne lond, & went hym-self by Tybrach ayeyne to Waterford. per was ayeyne Robert y-broght to-for hym. The kynge saw hym, & bethoght hym of be gret goodnesse pat 28 was yn hym, & of hys stalwarthnesse & hys hardy hert ; of many good seruices that he & hys hadden I-done, wyth mych trauaylle & grette perille of lyue ; he had grett reuth of hym yn hys hert ; &, throug besechyng of hegh men, al hys wreth, wyth good hert 32 he hym foryaf, & delyueret hym out of prysouȝ, & lete delyuer hym hys londes pat hym weren be-nomen, of Weysford & of be



pope, Alexandyr the thyrd; Emperoure, Frederike; kynge of A.D. 1171. Fraunce, Lowys.

## [CHAPTER XXV.]

**T**He Kyng abod at Watyrforde a few Dayes. Thedyr come the Cytteseynys of Weysford, and broght to hym Robert Steuenes-Sonne, as for grete Seruyse, and in hope of good reward, for-as-mych as he came into Irland, lond to conquere, wythout auctorite of heghyr Prince, and yaue othyr ensampil forto come into londe. The kynge, at the begynnyng, tolde of hym gret Vnuorthynys; and reprewid hym, with grete trefyng, of that grete boldnes; and lette take hym, bound as he was, and gywid hym to anothis, and Put hym in Rathnyldys toure forto kepyn. Sone ther-aftyr come the kynge of Corke, Dermot Maccharthy, and yelde hym to the kynge, and dyd hym homage, and Sware hym olde othis, and delyuerid hym hostagis forto be to hym holde and trew, and ber hym truage euery yere of his land. From thens the kynge went with the hoste to Lysmor, and ther was two dayes; and fro thens went to Cassell. Thedyr came Donal Obreyne, kynge of Lymerik, and to hym on the watyr of Sure; and for-to haue pees, yelde hym to the kynge in al maner as Macchardy hadd' done. The kynge Sette keperes both at Corke and at Lymerike; and to hym come the Best of both contreis aftyr maccharthy and Obreñ, and yelde ham to the kynge, and be-comyn his men by othis and hostagys, so that ther nas none that was holde of any reputaciō in al Monester, that by his good wyll ne yelde hym to the kynge. Whan this was al done, the kynge, with mych vrychip and wyth ryche yeftys, lette euery man wend into his owyn lond, And wente hym-Selfe by Tybraght ayeyne to watyrford. ther was ayeyn Robert broght to-for hym. The kynge Saw hym, and bethoght hym of the grete goodnesse that was in hym, and of his boldnys and his hardy herte, of many good seruyces that he and his haddyn done with mych trauayl and grete Perel of lyfe. He had of hym grete Pite in his herte; and, throw besechyng of good men, al his wreth with good herte he hym for-yaue, and delyuerid hym out of prisone, and delyuerid hym his londys that of hym wer take fro, of Weysford

[Fol. 12  
a.]Capitulum  
xxv.

*quasi sub  
praetextu  
obsequii,  
eo quod  
Hiberniam  
citra ipsius  
assensum  
primus  
intraverit,  
aliisque  
malignis  
mandi  
occasionem  
praestiterit,  
vinctum  
et captivum  
adducunt.*

*rex videns  
virum  
tantis fortu-  
nae periculis,  
et  
toties, ex-  
positum.*

A.D. 1171. contrey about. Some syggeñ that the kyng lete to-draw the Master Gerald says no-thing of traitors being drawn and quarterd. traytours that hym betrayed; Bot Maystre Geroud ne telleth nothyng *per*-of; & ther-fore I ne tel hyt nat to sothe, bot hyt oght well be so.

## [CHAPTER XXVI.]

The Kings of Con-naught and Meath yield to Henry II's messen-gers.

Prophecies [\* Fol. 13 a.]

of St. Moling and Merlin.

The Irish nobles wonder at the fine meals and decorations at Henry II's feast.

Sacri-legious bowmen die sud-denly.

Whan þe kyng had thus I-do, he left at Waterford, Robert beranardessoñ, wyth mych meyne; &, by Ossery, name the wey toward dyuelyñ. In that wyage, the kyng of Ossery came to hym, & yeld hym to the kyng; & whan he hade I-bydde 8 awhylle at dynelyñ, theder come Al þe heghest Iresshe-meñ of leynestre, & besoghten pees, & yolden ham to the kyng. Roryke O'conghouër, the kyng of Connaght, ayeys the kynges messagers at the watyr shynnen,—that ys to wytteñ, hugh þe lacy & wylyyam 12 Al-delines sone,—ther he yeld hym to þe kyng; & the kyng of Myth Also; So that ther nas none heght mañ yn Irland, that ne come to the kynges owne body, or sent messagers for to be-comen hys man, & yeld hym to hym, sawe only thay of vlnestre. Than 16 was fulfylled a *prophecye* that seynth Molyng seyd: “To-for hym shall foot-<sup>\*</sup>falle þe prynces, & trogh<sup>1</sup> boxom-fastines<sup>2</sup> the lyme of pees shul vnderfonge.” Merlyn seyd an-other: “Tho is lyght, the foules of the Iland shollen togedder fle; & the most of ham, with 20 har wenges I-brant, shollen ouerthrowen yn thraldome; the fyf deles shollen be broght yn-to on, & the syxt shal ouercome the strengest places of Irland.” Whan the mydwyutter came, many of the heghest comen to þe kynges court to feste; & myche wonder ham thocht 24 of the noble *seruice* that pey *per* saw, & of the myche plente of mete & of drynke, of bordes I-sette, & fayr clothes vpon; the high *seruice* of panetrye & buttellerie, & ryche vessels of gold & syluer; the many *manere* metes of kechen, on the *manere* of Englonð, 28 whych thay had neuer *per*-to-fore I-sey. After that þe fest was heghly & fayr I-hold, euery man went wyth gladnesse yn-to hys owne. In that tyme, weren bowemen at ffynglas I-horberowed, & wenten ynto chyrche haye, & hewen adoun trees, that seyntes 32 by old tyme hadden *per* I-sete: *per* came sodeyñ deth vpon ham, euerychoñ. [See Giraldus's *Topogr. Hibern. Opera*, v. 135.]

<sup>1</sup> A later overline *h* is above the *tr* of ‘trogh.’

<sup>2</sup> or ‘fastmes.’



and of the contrey aboute. Some sayne that the kynge lette to-  
draw the traytours that hym betrayed. But Maystyr Geraud ne  
tellyth nothyng ther-of; and therfor y ne tell hit not for throuth,  
but hit oght wel be so.

## [CHAPTER XXVI.]

Whan the kynge had thus done, he lefte at watyrford, Robert <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
Barnardessonne, with mych pepill; and, by Ossory, toke his <sup>xxvj<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
way to Deuelyn. In that vyage, the kynge of Ossory came to hym,  
and yolde hym to the kynge. and whan he had bydd awhyle at  
deuelyn, thedyr came all the heghyst Irysh-men of leynystre, and  
be-soghten pees, and yeldyn ham to the kynge. Roryke Oconghoure,  
the kynge of connaght, ayeynēs the kynges messaungeris at the watyr  
of shynnyn,—that is [to] Say, hugh de Lacy and Willam aldelines  
Sone,—ther he yelde hym to the kynge; And the kynge of Myth also;  
So that ther was no man of any reputacioun that he ne come to the  
\* Kyngys owyn Body, or Sent messangeres forto Becomyn Hys man, [\*Fol. 12  
Saue only thay of vlyster // Than was fulfillid a prophesy that b.]  
Seynt Molyng sayd: “To-for hym shal foote-fall the pryncys, and,  
throgħ buxumfastnys, the lyme of pees shal vndyrfonge” // Merlynge <sup>procident</sup>  
sayd anothyr prophesy: “To his lyght, the foulys of the yland <sup>principes,</sup>  
shullyn to-geddyr fle; and the mest of ham, with har wynges <sup>et fucato</sup>  
y-brante, shullyn ouer-throwyn in thraldome<sup>1</sup>. the fywe delys <sup>sub foedere</sup>  
shal be broght into one, and the Syxte shal ouercome the Strongyst <sup>pacis</sup>  
placis of Irland” / Whan the Mydwyntytyr came, many of the heghest <sup>amorem</sup>  
men comyn to the kynges courte to feste; and mych wondyr thay <sup>conse-</sup>  
had of the nobil seruyce that they ther Sawe, and of the mych plente <sup>quentur.</sup>  
of mete and of drynke, of bordys sette, and fayre clothis vpoñ; the <sup>sextus</sup>  
hey Service of panetrye and buttellerye, and rych wesselis of golde <sup>Hiberniae</sup>  
and Syluyr; the many maner metys of kechen, on the maner of Eng- <sup>moenia</sup>  
lund; whych they had neuer ther-to-for Seyn<sup>2</sup>. Aftyr that the feste <sup>subvertet.</sup>  
was ryaly holde, euery man went wyth gladnys into his owyn. In  
that tyme weryn bow-men at Fynglas y-herberowid, and wentyn  
Into church-hay, and hewyn adovn trees that Seyntys by olde  
tym had ther Sette: there came Sodayn deth vpon ham eueryon.

<sup>1</sup> corruent in capturam.<sup>2</sup> Why wasn't this crane bit englisht? 'carne  
gruina, quam hactenus abhorrerant, regia voluntate passim per aulam vesci  
coeperunt.'—Op. v. 280.

A.D. 1172.

Henry II,  
wishing to  
purify  
Irish life,  
assembles  
the Clergy  
at Cashel.

**T**he lond was than yn good pees by-foꝝ þe kyng, & þe pees wel I-hold: the kyng had wel y-hard that þe folk of the lond was of vnclene lyf, & ayeine god & holy chyrche; he thoght that he wold brynge the folk ynto better lyf, & myche desyr hadde ther-to; he leth assembly al þe clergie of þe londe at Casshell, & that me enquired & herd openly the fylthede of the lond-folk yn whych thay ladde haꝝ lyf; & setten hyt yñ wrytte, vnder the bysshoppes sele of lysmore, that was eke legat of þe court of Rome, & heghest of dygnyte ouer al thay that ther weꝛ; & þe statutes of holy chyrche Whych yit meñ halte, yn þe manere þat holy chyrche ham holte yn Englund, he lete thaꝝ sette: whych statutz, yn the wordes that thay weren theꝝ I-swewed, ys non harme thegh me expresse ham here:—

## NARACIO. [CHAPTER XXVIII.]

NARACIO.

The Synod  
at Cashel,  
under the  
Romish  
Legate,  
the Bishop  
of Lismore.

**I**n the yer of ouꝝ lordes Incarnaciõ M.C.lxxij, the forme yeꝛ that þe kyng of england, henry, Irland wan; Crystyeñ, bysshoppe of lysmore, & legat of þe court of Rome<sup>1</sup>; 16 Dougher, Erchebysshoppe of Casshell; laurenz, Erchebysshoppe of dyuelyñ; Cathel, erchebysshoppe of Connaght; wyth leed bysshoppes, Abbotes, priours, & many other prelates of holy chyrche yn Irland, throgħ the same kynges commaundement 20 comeñ to-gedder yn þe See of Casshell; &, for þe state of holy chyrch to brynge yn-to better fourme, helden theꝝ haꝝ conssaylle. To thys conseyl, comeñ these from the kyng I-sent: a noble man Rolf, abbot of byldewdys; Ralf, Erchedekene of landaf; Nychol 24 the prest, & otheꝛ many, the kynges clerkes & hys messagers. The statutes oꝝ constytucions of that consaylle beñ these here I-wrytten, & by the kynges auctoryte I-stablet. ¶ The fyrst ys, that crysten men In Irland shvllen leueñ haꝝ kynnes-wommen 28 + & heꝛ sybbes, whyche þay have aꝛ thys I-hold to haꝝ wylle out of spoushode, & lawfully spouse otheꝛ wommen, & spousehede lawfully hold<sup>2</sup>. That otheꝛ ys, that the chyldreñ, at þe chyrche dorre shulleñ beñ I-primseined<sup>3</sup> of the prestes hond, & yn þe holy 32 fantstones yn haꝝ moder chyrches to be I-fulled<sup>4</sup>. The thrydde,

Statutes or  
Constitu-  
tions made  
at it:—

1. Irish-  
men shall  
put away

[+ Fol 13.  
b.]

their  
concubine  
kins-  
women,  
and marry  
legally.

2. Children  
shall be  
baptized in  
church  
fonts.

<sup>1</sup> Late sidenote in MS.: 'Establishment of orders for the Clergy, and matters of Religion.'

<sup>2</sup> repudiato cognatarum et affinium contubernio, legitima contrahant matrimonia, et observent.—*Op.* v. 282. <sup>3</sup> catezizentur, <sup>4</sup> baptizentur.



The lond was than in good pees by-for the kyng<sup>e</sup>, and the pees <sup>Capitulum xxvij<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
wel holde. the kyng<sup>e</sup> herde that the pepil of the londe was  
of vnclēn lyfe, and aye<sup>y</sup>n godd and holy churche. he thogh[t] that  
he wolde bryng the pepil Into bettyr lyfe; and mych desyr had  
thereto. he Sende for al the clergy of the lond at Casshel; and that  
he Enquerid and herde opynly the fylthed of the lond-pepill in <sup>tam enor-  
mitatibus  
quam  
spurciliis.</sup>  
whych thay lad har lyfe; and Setten hit in writ, vndyr the Bi-  
schopis sele of lysmore, that was also legat of the courte of rome, and  
heyghest of dygnyte ouer al thay that there were. and the Statutes <sup>Statuta  
Cassellen-  
sia.</sup>  
of holy church, whyche yit men halte <sup>1</sup> in the maner that holy church  
ham holte in England, he lette thare Sette: Whych Statutes, in the <sup>1 quae ad-  
huc extant.</sup>  
Wordis that thay weryn ther Shewyd, is none harme thegh y  
expresse ham here:—

## [CHAPTER XXVIII.]

I<sup>N</sup> the yere of oure lord-is incarnacyon M<sup>i</sup>. Clxxij, the fryste <sup>Capitulum  
xxvij<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
yere that the kyng<sup>e</sup> of En[g]land, henry, Irland conquerid <sup>2</sup>,  
Crystyn, Byschope of Lysmore, and Legate of the Courte of Rome;  
Dougher, Archebyschope of Cassel; Laurance, Arcebishope of  
Deuelyn; Cathel, Arcebyschope of connaght; with othyr Byschopis, <sup>Catholicus  
Tuotue-  
nensis (Co-  
nactensis,  
Harl. 177).</sup>  
abbotis, pryorys, and many othyr prelatys of holy church in Irland,  
by the same kyngys comaundement comyn to-geddre in the Cee of  
Casshel; and, for the State of holy church to bryng into bettyr state,  
heldyn ther har consayle. to this Consayle comyn thes frome the  
kyng<sup>e</sup>, that is to say: a nobyl-man Rolfe, Abbote of byldewais; Ralfe,  
Archedekyn of landaf; Nycol the Preste, and othyr many of the <sup>Nicolaus  
capellanus.</sup>  
kyngys clerkys and his messagers // The Statutes or constytuciones  
of that consayle ben this her writtyn, And by the kynges auctorite  
Stabelid // The fryst is, that crystyn men In Irland sholde lewe j<sup>m</sup>.  
har kynnys-women, whych thay haue ar this holde to har will out <sup>cognata-  
rum et  
affinium.</sup>  
of Spoushode, and lawfully spouce othyr women, \* and Spoushode  
Lawfully Holde // The Seconde is, that the chydryn at the church ij<sup>a</sup>.  
dore sholde be y-primseined of the prestes honde, and in the holy <sup>[\*Fol. 13  
b.]</sup>  
fantstonys in hare modyr chyrchis to be yfullid. The thyrd, that iij<sup>a</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> conquestid, MS.

A.D.  
1171-2.

3. Tithes  
to be paid.

4. Church  
lands to be  
left in  
peace.

5. Clergy  
not to pay  
any of  
kingsmens  
fines for  
Man-  
slaughter.

6. Wills to  
be made  
openly.

Property to  
go to family  
in thirds,

or halves.

7. As to  
funeral  
services.

8. All folk  
to go oft to  
Church.

All Ser-  
vices to be  
in the  
English  
way.

In winter,  
no ships  
can get to  
Ireland.

that euery crysten man lawfullych<sup>o</sup> pay hys tethynges to hys  
parochie chyrche, of corne & of al othe<sup>r</sup> thyng that a ye<sup>r</sup> hym  
aneweth<sup>1</sup>. ¶ The ferthe, that al þe londes of holy chyrche & ha<sup>r</sup>  
possessiouns, of al herthly askyng be quyte; & namely, that no  
kynges ne othe<sup>r</sup> heye men, ne he<sup>r</sup> sonnes, ne he<sup>r</sup> meygnees, mette  
ne herbrowe yn chyrche londes, ne ask, ne wyth streynth ne be so  
hardy to take; & that Cursed me[te] that four syth a ye<sup>r</sup> was wonet  
to be asked y<sup>n</sup> chyrche tounes, & of the next neighbors, neuer eft  
be asked. ¶ The fyft, that of manslaghttre that lewed men doth,  
whan man maketh fy<sup>n</sup> with hys foma<sup>n</sup>, the clerkes that ben hys  
kynnes-me<sup>n</sup>, no þyng ne yeue ne yeld ther-to; bot, as thay be<sup>n</sup>  
gyltles of the dede, also be thay harmles of þe payement. ¶ The  
syxth, that wha<sup>n</sup> a man ys seke, he shal make testament openly  
to-fo<sup>r</sup> hys prestes of the parorch<sup>e</sup>, & to-fore hys neighbors; & after  
hys dettes & seruau<sup>n</sup>tes hyre out take, dele hys catel a thre; yf  
he hath wyf & chyldre<sup>n</sup>, that on to hys spoused wyf, that othe<sup>r</sup>  
to hys shyldre<sup>n</sup>, The thryde to hys testament. And yf he hath  
non chyldren by spouse, the good be y-deled bytwene hym & hys  
wyf, euery Ilyche; & yf the wyf deyeth, the goodes be I-deleth  
a thre bytwene the housbond, & the chyldren, & the wyf. ¶ The  
.vij. that wha<sup>n</sup> a man othe<sup>r</sup> a woman deyeth, ha<sup>r</sup> wathe<sup>2</sup>, & the  
seruyce of holy chyrche, & the buryeng, be man-shyply I-done.  
¶ The .viij. that al me<sup>n</sup> & wommen wyrshyppe holy chyrche, & oft  
go to chyrche; & holy chyrche y<sup>n</sup> al seruyce be gouerned on the  
maner that hyt ys yn England. In al these thynges, the kynge  
ynto the lond come, many defautes we<sup>r</sup> yn the land I-found,  
& mych horynesse or oryble synnes that me ne aght nat to speke  
of, that—throg<sup>h</sup> grace of god, & by the kynges purueyaunce & hys  
myght—weren amendet, & yn better wonne I-bro<sup>3</sup>th. ¶ The  
prymat of Ardmagh was nat at thys conssaylle, ne thede<sup>r</sup> myght  
come, for he wase old Man & feble; Bot he come the<sup>r</sup>-after to  
dyuely<sup>n</sup>, & graunted yn al thyng the kynges purueyaunce. In  
thys tyme was the wede<sup>r</sup> so stronge, & the wynd so awayward,  
that yn al the wyntyr ne myght no shyppe com ouer yn-to Ireland.

<sup>1</sup> 16th century side-note: 'the privileges and frydom gyven to the church, and londs ther of.' <sup>2</sup> ? mistake for 'wache,' or *th* used for *k*, as on p. 67, l. 4.



euery crystyn man lawfully pay his thethis to his Parashie church, <sup>A. D.</sup>  
 of coñne, and of al othyr thynges that a yere hym aneweth // The <sup>1171-2.</sup>  
 iiije. that al the landis of holy church and har Possessiones of al <sup>iii<sup>a</sup>.</sup>  
 Erthly askynge be quyte; and namely, that no kynges†, ne othyr hey <sup>animalium,</sup>  
 men, ne her Sones, ne her menyces, mete ne herbrow in church <sup>frugum,</sup>  
 londys, ne aske / ne with streynth ne be So hardy to take; and that <sup>ceterarum-</sup>  
 Cursed met that foure tymes a yere was wonyd to be askyd in <sup>que proven-</sup>  
 church tounes, and of the nexte neghbores, neuer aftyr to be axed <sup>tionum.</sup>  
 The V<sup>e</sup>, that of manslaghtre that lewid men doth, whan men makyth <sup>[† MS.</sup>  
 fyne with his enemy, the clerkys that ben his kynnys-men, nothyng <sup>nothyng.]</sup>  
 ne yeue therto; but, as thay ben gyltles† of the dede, also thay be  
 harmeles of the pament. The vj<sup>e</sup>. that whan a man is seke, he  
 shal make testament opynly, to-for his preste of the parash and vj<sup>a</sup>.  
 to-for his evyncrystynnes and aftyr his dettis and his <sup>[† MS.</sup>  
 vagis out-take, dele his catel athre. yf he haue wyfe and chyldryn, <sup>glytles.]</sup>  
 that on to the Spousyd wyf, that othyr to his chyldryn, the thyrd  
 to his testament. And yf he haue no childe [by] Spouse, the good be <sup>2 inter</sup>  
 y-delid between hym and his wyfe, euery y-lyke. and yf the wyfe <sup>ipsum et</sup>  
 deyeth, the good be y-delid at thre <sup>2</sup>, betwene the hosbonde, and the <sup>liberos</sup>  
 chyldryn, and the wyfe / The vij<sup>e</sup>, that whan a man oper woman <sup>bipartiri</sup>  
 deyeth, har wache, and the seruyce of holy church <sup>3</sup>, and the burienge, <sup>debent.</sup>  
 be wyrchply done // The viij<sup>e</sup>. that al men and women wyrchply <sup>vij<sup>a</sup>.</sup>  
 holy church, and ofte go to church; and holy church in al seruyce be <sup>vij<sup>a</sup>.</sup>  
 gouerned on al maner that hit is in England. In al thes thynges, <sup>3 et missa-</sup>  
 the kyng Into the lond come <sup>4</sup>, many defautes were in the land found, <sup>rum et rigi-</sup>  
 and mych felth or orribil synnys that y ne oght not to Speke of, <sup>liarum ex-</sup>  
 that,—by the grace of god and by the kynges purueyaunce and his <sup>hibitione.</sup>  
 myght—weryn amendid, and in bettyr state broght // The Primat <sup>multimoda</sup>  
 of Ardmagh was not at this consail, ne thedyr myght come, for he <sup>malorum</sup>  
 was olde man and febill. But he come ther-aftyr to deuelyn, and <sup>genera.</sup>  
 graunted in al thyng the kynges Purueyaunce <sup>5</sup>. In this tyme was  
 the weddyr so stronge, and the wynd so awayward, that in al the  
 wyntyne ne myght no shipp come ouer Into Irland. the kyng

<sup>1</sup> et quod de villis ecclesiarum cibis ille detestabilis, qui quater in anno a vicinis comitibus exigitur, de cetero nullatenus exigatur.—*Op.* v. 282.

<sup>4</sup> 1 abl. abs.—Nam ante ipsius adventum in Hiberniam.—*Op.* v. 283.

<sup>5</sup> Harl. 177 ends a chapter here too, and leaves out the Archbp.'s white cow.]

A.D. 1171-2. The kynge went to Watyrford, & abode theȝ a whyle, & ful mych  
 [\* Fol. 14 a.] Henry II gets the best Irishmen on his side. desyre adde for to hyr tythynges from beyont see. & of the  
 A.D. 1172. He hears bad news: knyghtes that he fond \*yn Irland, he drogh to hym sleghly for  
 the proba- ble Inter- dict on his land, and o coste the beste: as Reymond, Myles de Cogan, wylyyam Masturel, 4  
 the trea- sonous conspiracy of his sons. & other, for to make hys part þe strenger, & the Erles parte the  
 A.D. 1172. He hears bad news: fobler[so]. ¶ After the myd-lente, come shyppes yn-to Irland, that  
 the proba- ble Inter- dict on his land, and hard tythynges hym broght, & lydder, bothe out of engeland & out  
 of fraunce, And normande, & other londes; ffor ynto Normandy 8  
 bad news: weren ycome twey cardinalles, from the poppe Alexander y-sent.  
 (that oon heght Albertus, & that other Theodynus), for to serchen  
 & enqueren of the holy martyres deth, seynt Thomas: ryghtful  
 men, as me vnderstond, & to that lawfully y-chosen / natheles thay 12  
 weren Romainys; & such folweth oft coueytise; &, bot the kynge  
 come the rather to ham, the kyngedome of england, & al the londes  
 that he was lord of, sholden be entredyted. & (as me fynd oft <sup>1</sup>,  
 good aduentures comen oft slowly & aloon, bot mesaduentures 16  
 ne cometh neuer-more aloon;) wyth thay tythynges comen other  
 mychel wers, & of more perylle; ffor the kynges sone, henry, the  
 eldest, whyche he so fayne was about to crowne kynge of England,  
 & other tweyn of hys bretheren, (that throgh yought & foolrede 20  
 hym folwed, & many drogh to ham, both of england & of beyend  
 þe see,) waren I-swore to-greddeȝ to entre vp-on the kynge, & bynyn  
 hys londes, The whyle that he was yn Irland: & wel may be  
 that hyt was I-purueyed bytween ham, ar he ynto Irland wente. 24  
 ¶ Whan the kynge thys herd, he was <sup>2</sup> yn grete anguysshe.  
 sory he was at the begynnyge, þat he, gyltles, was I-retted of the  
 holy mannes deth; sore he was afred that hys londes shold bene  
 I-shent throught that lydder dede of hys sonne; sore hym for- 28  
 thoght, that he the lond of Irland so sone most fore-lete, whyche  
 he hade y-cast for to streynth with castell, & stable yn pees, the  
 next somer that was to comen. Of al thys, he was yn many  
 thoghtes; & spake theȝ-of fyrst to hymself, þer-after to hys men. 32  
 Aftyȝ many redes, he sent some of hys ynto England by-fore hym;  
 & theȝ-after he puruyed how he myght sykyrlychest kepe Irland.  
 and keep it.

<sup>1</sup> MS. est.<sup>2</sup> MS. way.



wente to watyrford, and abode ther awhile, and grettely desyr hadd <sup>A.D.</sup> forto hyr thythyngis from be-yont see. And of the knyghtes that <sup>1171-2.</sup> he found in Irland, he drew to hym wylely for o Purpos, the beste, as Reymond, Miles de cogan, Willam Masturel and othyr, forto <sup>A.D. 1172.</sup> make his parte the strongyr, and the Erlis parte the febelier / Aftyr the myd-leynte, come shippis into Irland that <sup>1</sup> screwid thythynges <sup>naves ad-</sup> hym broght / out of England, and out of Fraunce, And Normandy, <sup>venient,</sup> and othyr londes. For into Normandy weryn come two cardynalis, <sup>tam gravi-</sup> from the pope Alexandre Sende,—that one was callid Albert, and <sup>tatis nun-</sup> that othyr Theodoin,—forto serche and e[n]quere of the holy martires <sup>ciae, quam</sup> deth, Seynt Thomas. (ryghtful men, as y-vndyrstode, and to that <sup>pravittatis.</sup> lawfully chose.) <sup>2</sup> Natheles, they were Romanys; and such <sup>\* folwyth</sup> ofte covetys <sup>[\* Fol. 13</sup>; and, But the Kyng come the Sondyr to Hame <sup>b.]</sup>, the Kyngdome of England, and al the londys that he was lord of, <sup>3 nisi citius</sup> Sholdyn be Entredytyd, and (as y fynd ofte, good aduentures comyn <sup>eis rex</sup> ofte Slowely and aloon, but mysaduentures ne comyth neuer more <sup>occurrerit.</sup> al-oon,) Wyth thay thythyngys, comyn moche wors, and of moche more Pereyl. For the kynges sone henry, the eldyst, whych he So fayn was to crowne kyng of England, and othyr two of his bretheryn (that throw youuth and fooly hym folwid, and many drew <sup>fratrum</sup> to hame both of England and of beyonde See,) ware Swern to-gidre / <sup>puerili</sup> to Entyr vpon the kyng and take his landis, The whyle that he <sup>levitate</sup> was in Irland: And hit may wel be, that hit was Purveyed be-twen <sup>secuti,</sup> ham, ar he into Irland went // Whan the kyng this herde, he was in <sup>pravissimo</sup> grete a[n]gwysche: Sory he was at the begynnyng, that he, gyltles, <sup>consilio.</sup> was yretted of the holy manys deth <sup>4</sup>. Sore he was aferd, that his londes sholde ben shente throw that vngoodly dede of his Sonnes. Sore hym forthoght, that he the londe of Irland so sone moste leue, whych he had Purposid to streynth wyth castelis, and stabil in pees, <sup>tam incas-</sup> the nexte Somer that was to come. Of al this, he was in many <sup>tellare</sup> thoghtys, and spake therof fryst to hym-Selfe, theraftyr to his men. <sup>quam</sup> And aftyr many consalys, he Send Some of his men into England <sup>firma stabi-</sup> to-for hym; And there-aftyr he Pvrueyed how he myght Svrly kepe <sup>lire pace.</sup> Irland /

<sup>1</sup> thad, MS.<sup>2-2</sup> sed tamen Romani.—Op. v. 285.<sup>4</sup> se tanta tam immerito suspicione notari.—Ibid.

A.D. 1172.

Henry II  
leaves  
Leaders  
at Dublin  
to keep  
Ireland,

and sails  
from Wex-  
ford on  
Easter  
Monday.  
At St.  
Davids, in  
Wales,

a Welsh-  
woman  
complains  
to him,

[Fol. 14 b.]  
he goes on,

and she  
appeals  
for ven-  
geance on  
him, to the  
stone of  
Lechlavar,  
the  
'speaking  
stone'  
(prophesied  
of by  
Merlin  
which lies  
over a  
stream N.  
of the  
church  
yard.

As a corpse  
was carried  
over it, the  
stone  
spoke.

He left at dyuelyn, the cyte & the contray to kepe,  
hught de lassy, wyth .xx.<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes; Robert steuenes-sone,  
& Moryce fytz Geraud, wytht other .xx.<sup>ti</sup> at Waterford; hunfrey  
de boun, Robert Bernardessoñ, & hugh de Gundeuyll wyth .xl.<sup>ti</sup> 4  
knyghtes; At weysford, wylliam Al-delines-sone<sup>1</sup> & phylppe de  
Breuse wyth .xx.<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes. And a morow after Estre day  
herly, he dydde hym to saylle at Weysford, & arryued at  
seynt daues, sone after none. Whan he come a lond, he went 8  
wyth grete deuoccion to the modyr chyrche, as a pylgrymage,  
a-foot, with a burdoñ yn hys hond. Come the chanons of the  
chyirche ayeyne hym at the whyte yate, & with fayr processoun,  
with mych reuerence, & with mych manshype, hym receyued. As 12  
þe processoun yede a rewe to-for hym, come a walche womman,  
& fel hym to þe feet, & made a myche mone, yn hyre langage,  
of the bysshope of that place. The [kyng] stode, & herd hyr  
[Fol. 14 b.] mone || of an ynterpretour-es mouth that hyt hym told; & for he 16  
he goes on, went forth, & dydde hyr no ryght anoon as tho wolde, she smote  
hyr handes to-gyddre, & bytterly began to crye tofore ham Al,  
a walshe langage, "A-wreke vs to-daye, lahlauar! A-wreke ouȝ  
kynred & ouȝ folke of thys man!" Thay that vnderstode hyr 20  
speche, put hyr away, & fore-bade hyre cryyng; & sho so myche  
the more cryed yn the same manere, & hoped to an old prophecye  
that Merlyn seyð: "The kyng of england that shal wyn Irland  
shal be I-woundet yn Irland of a man with a rede hond; & as 24  
he cometh ayeyne by south wales, he shal deye vpon lehlauar:"  
þat was þe name of a stone, that lay ouer a streme by north the  
chyirche heye of seynt daues, yn stydde of a brygge. The stone  
was of Marbel wel fayȝ, & smothe of mannes geynge, & hadde 28  
.x. feet yn leynth, & .vi. yn brede, & a foot thykke. And ys 'lehlauar,'  
a walshe, as mych to sygge as 'a spekyng stone.' And hyt was  
ytold, that som tyme as me baȝ a dede body ouer that stone,  
he begaȝ to speke; & wyth the spech he clauē throgħout; & yit 32  
the clyft ys I-sene, & yit yn-to thys day me be-bereth no dydde  
body ouer that stone. The kyng come to that stone, & bethoght

<sup>1</sup> Weisefordiae, vero Guillelmo Aldelini filio, Philippo de Hastings, et Philippo de Breusa.—Op. v. 286. [William Fitz-Audeline.]



**H**E lefte at Deuelyn the Cite and the contray to kepe <sup>Capitulum</sup> Hugh de Lacy with xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes, Robert Steuenes-Sone <sup>xxix<sup>m</sup>.</sup> and Morice fiz-geraud, wyth othyr xx<sup>ti</sup>.; at Waterford Humfrey de <sup>A. D. 1172.</sup> bonn, Robert Barnardes-Sone and Hugh de Gondeuyl, with xl. <sup>Hugone de Gundevilla.</sup> knyghtes / At Weysford, Willam Aldelines sone and Philip de Bruse, with xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes. And amorrow, aftyр estyr-day, Erly he did hym to Sayle at Weysford and londid at Seynt dauyes sone aftyр noone. Whan he come alond he went wyth grete deuocion to the modyr church as a Pylgrymage afocte with a <sup>devoto peregrinantium</sup> stafe in hande. Come the chanones of the church ayeynes hym at the white yate; and wyth fayre processoun<sup>1</sup>, wyth mych reuerence and wyth mych wirchip, hym resceiwid. And as the Procession yede arew to-for hym, come a Walch woman, and fel to-for his feete, and made mych mone in hyr Speche of the Bischoп of that Place. He stod, and herde hyr complaynte of an interpretoure-es mouth that hit hym tolde; and, for he wente forth, and did hyr no ryght anoone as sho wolde, She smote hyr handis to-giddyр and bittyrly began to cry to-for ham al in walch Speche: <sup>quoniam jus suum incontinenti non est assecutus.</sup> "A-wreke vs to-day, lathlaur! wreke our kynred and our pepil of this man!" Thay that vndyrstode hyr Speche, Put hyr away, and forbade hyr cryyng. She so mych the more cried in the Same maner, and hopid to an olde prophesy that Merlynge sayde<sup>2</sup>: "The kynge of England that shal conquere Irland [shal be wounded in Ireland of a man<sup>3</sup>] with a rede hand, and as he comyth ayeyn by South walis, he shal dye vpon lethlaur": that was the name of <sup>ab homine cum rubra manu in Hibernia vulneratum.</sup> a stone, that lay ouer a streine<sup>4</sup> by north the churchey of Seynte <sup>qui trans flumen Aluni . . . jacens.</sup> dauyes, instyd of a brige. The stone was of marbill, \* Wel fayr <sup>[\* Fol. 14 a.]</sup> and smoth of men goyng, and was of x fote in Leynth, and vj in Brede, and O foote thykke. And is 'lethlaur' in walch, as mych to say as 'a spekyng stone': and hit was tolde, that Some tyme <sup>Lapis loquax</sup> that whan ther wase a dede body y-bore ouer that stone, he began to speke; and wyth the speche he clewe throg<sup>h</sup>-out; and yit the clyfte as Seyn. And sithyn on-to this day, thay berryth no ded body ouer that stone. The kynge come to that stone, and bethogh[t] <sup>ipso conatu crepuit medius.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> canonicorum ecclesiae processionem . . . invenit.—Op. v. 286.

<sup>2</sup> alludens illi fictitio vulgari, nec vero Merlini proverbio, quo dici solebat.—Op. v. 287.

<sup>3</sup> throgth, MS.

A.D. 1172. hym of that prophecie. & he stode at þe stones end & grymly hyt  
 Henry II be-hold ; & awhyle ther-after, boldely yede ouer a good paas. & whan  
 walks over the stone, he was ouer, he turned ayeine to þe stone, & deynously þus seyð :  
 and asks ' Who 'll  
 now be- lieve the  
 liar Mer- lin ? ' " Who shal heten-forward beleue Merlyn the leyer ? " A man stode 4  
 þer besyde & herd, & wold, hys thankes, saue þe prophetes sawe,  
 Answard the kyng & seyð, " Thou art nat that kyng that shal  
 Irland conquer ; ne Merlyn ne speketh nat of the." Thus the  
 kyng went yn-to the chyrch, yn seynt Andrees & seynt daues 8  
 wyrshyppe I-sette, & herd hys masse of a preste that was I-found  
 He hears Mass, and goes to Haverford, and Normandy. fastyng, as god wold. After masse, he eete hys mete ther, & after  
 mete wente to hauerford, than ouer .xl. myle ; ffrom thens he wente  
 hastily yn-to englande ; out of enland yn-to Normandy, & come 12  
 to-for þe cardynalls with mych buxumnesse at Custance. Ther,  
 after myche dalyaunce & many wordes I-spoke, he excused hym  
 He swears that he didn't slay Beket, but he does penance, by othes of þe holye Martyres deth, that he was nat by hym I-slaw ;  
 bot he ne for-sok nat that he nas for hym ; & þerfor he vndretoke 16  
 such penaunce as holy chyrche hym wold loke. Þe cardynals, he  
 sent ayeine wyth myche wyrshyppe ; & noon he went to þe marche,  
 & ther he spake with the kyng of ffraunce. þer, (throgh besechyng  
 of hegh men, & namely of phylepe þe erl of flaundres, that from 20  
 and makes peace with King Lewis of France. seynt James was ryght than I-come,) the pees was made betwene  
 the twey kynges, of the wreth that was betwene ham for the  
 forseyd martyres deth ; ffor-þy that þe kyng of ffraunce, with  
 otheð mychel & myghty men, name an hand to the erchebyssshopp 24  
 whan he shold turne ayeine yn-to England, [ayein] the pees  
 between the kyng & hym. ffor þer was pees thus y-made betwene  
 the kynges, al the harme þat the sones with hað allyees hadden  
 throught to do, was I-lost tyl þe next yere theſaſtyr. 28

## [CHAPTER XXX.]

[Fol. 15 a.] Wnder this, as the lond of Irland was yn good pees  
 vnder ham that weren In lefte, the lond for to kepe,  
 byfelle that a day of parlement, at a certeyne place, was betaken  
 Hugh de Laci and O'Rourke, King of Meath, meet. by-twene hugh de lacy, whom the kyng had I-yeue dyuelyn to 32  
 kepe with trust, And þe kyng of Myth. a nythe, whan the  
 parlement shold ben a morow, a knygh[t] that was Moryce fytz  
 Geraudes neuw, & Robert Gryffyn by name, thocht yn hys



hym of that prophesy, and he stod at the stone his ende, and grymly A.D. 1172.  
 hit be-helde; and a whyle ther-aftyr, boldely yede ouer a good  
 pace. and whan he was ouer, he turnyd ayeine to the stone, and  
 deynously thus sayde: "Who shal, fro this forth, beleue Merlynge verbum hoc  
 the lyer?" A man stode ther bysyd, and herde, and wolde, his indig-  
 thanks, Sawe the prophet-is Saynge, Answerid the kyng and nanter  
 Sayde, "Ye ben not that kyng that shal Irland conquere, ne emisit.  
 Merlyng Spekyth not of yow" / Thus the kyng went into the  
 church of Seynt Androwis and seynte daues, and herde his  
 masse of a preste that was founde fastyng, as god wolde. Aftyr  
 masse he ette his mette and aftyr mette went to hauerford than quasi per  
 othyr xv myle. Frome thens he went forth hastely Into England, miliaria  
 out of England into Normandy and come to-for the cardynals duodecim  
 with mych buxumnesse at Custaunce. Ther, aftyr mych delyaunce abinde  
 and many wordys spoke, he excusid hym by othys of the holy distans.  
 martyris deth that he was not by hym Slayn, but he forsoke  
 not that he was for hym. And ther-for he vndyrtoke such  
 Penance as holy church wolde hym enyoyn. the Cardynalls,  
 he sende ayein with mych wirchip; and anoone he went to the ad mar-  
 marche, and there he spake wyth the kyng of Fraunce. There, chiam cum  
 (throghe besechyng of good men, and namely of Phylippe the Erle Francorum  
 of Flandris, that frome Seynt Iamys was than come,) the Pees was rege Lodo-  
 made betwen the two kynges, of the wreth that was betwen ham vico . . .  
 for the forsaid martires deth; <sup>1</sup> For-they that the kyng of Fraunce, <sup>1</sup> puta  
 with othyr mychel men and myghty / And vndyrtoke to the quem  
 archebischope, whan he shold turne Into Englan, ayeyn the pees Anglorum  
 be-twen the kyng and hym. For ther was Pees thus made rex archi-  
 betwen the kynges, al the harme that the Sonnes, with hare praesuli in  
 allyences, haddyn thoght to do, was left til the nexte yere Angliam  
 ther-Aftyr. redituro  
... fide-  
jussorem  
donaverat.

## [CHAPTER XXX.]

**V**Ndyr this, as the lond of Irland was in good pees Capitulum  
 vndyr ham that weryn lefte, the londe for-to kepe, by-fel xxx<sup>m</sup>.  
 on a day, that a certayn Place, to a parlement was sette, be-twen  
 Hugh de Lacy, to whom the kyng had yewe Deuelyn to  
 kepe wyth truste, and the kyng of myth. On a nyght, whan et regem  
 the Parlement sholde ben amorrow, a knyght, that was Morice monoculum  
 siz-geraudes eme, and Robert Gryffyn by name, thoght in his Ororeium  
 Medensem.

A.D. 1172. slepe that he saw a mych flote of wylde swyne yernynge vp-on  
 Griffith hugh & moryce; & a boore amonge ham, myche & grysly ouer al  
 Fitz- otheṛ, come toward ham, & with hys tuskes wold haue smytten  
 Gerald's dream: he haṁd & I-slawe, yf he stalwarthly ne had y-come betwene, & 4  
 saves  
 De Laci, & I-slawe the bore, & I-holpe ham bothe. A morow, thay went to þe  
 Maurice place ther þe parlement was I-sette, at a place that me hath seth  
 Fitz- y-cleped 'rorykes hylle': ffyrst thay helden har parlement from  
 Gerald. ferṛ, by messagers goynge betweṁ; theṛ-after thay name sekernesse 8  
 The inter- view is at of othes I-sworne, & comen to-geddre by forward; natheles few,  
 Rorik's & glych fale on ether halue, and thay vnwepened,—bot the one, her  
 Hill. swerdes; & the other, heṛ sparthes,—& ether of har folke somdel  
 Griffith fer from ham. Gryffyn, that with Moryce was to the parlement 12  
 keeps seven I-come, was ful thought-ful of the vysyoṁ that he sawe. he name  
 trusty to hym seuyṁ knyghtes of hys owne kyn, than that ho moost  
 knights truste to har stalwardnesse, & drowen ham on the on halfe of  
 near. the hylle, as neyght as thay myght leppen vpon har stedes, with 16  
 sheldes about haṛ nekkes, & speres an-hond; & for a coste,  
 pleneden & prykkeden har hors ayeyṁ other, so that, yn whych  
 halue the parlement turned, throught encheson of such pley thay  
 myght be fonden Redy. Roryk & hugh helden haṛ parlement 20  
 of many thyng; bot of nothyng thay myght nat accord, & begyn  
 to departe a wrethe. The traytour Roryk had yn hys thoght þe  
 O'Rourke traysoṁ þat he hadde I-purueyed. he made semblant, & draw hym  
 treacher- by-halues as for to pyssen, & made tokens to hys men that thay 24  
 ously at- tacks De hastely shold come to hym. Whan he thys hadde I-done, he  
 Laci. turned ayeyne wyth hys sparth an hegh, hys wysage al blak with  
 Maurice ful snel goynge. Moryce was Iwarned of hys neuue, of the  
 Fitz- vysyoṁ that he sawe; stod, & beheld al thys. he hent out þe 28  
 Gerald swerd, & cryed vpon hugh, & mynyed hym, & dyd hym-self ayeyne  
 De the traytour, for to defend hym. The traytour ran to hugh, hym  
 Laci, for to smyte; har latymer yed betwene hym & the dynt; & he  
 smote hym of the oon arme, fast by the sholdre. Moryce stode, & 32  
 who is campled wyth hys swerd ayeyne the sparthe, & lowd cryed to har  
 saved by men. & ar hugh myght be yn any state, hym-self foṛ to helpe,  
 his inter- through grete hastyng, he felle twys || abak; & vnnethe, through  
 preter, and [|| Fol. 15  
 escapes b.] helpe of Moryce, that hym defendet thus, Hugh escaped wyth hys 36  
 alive.



Slepe that he Saw a mych flote of wylde Swyn yernynge vpon  
 Hugh and Morice; and a bore amonge ham, mych and grymly *horribilem  
 et grandem  
 prae aliis.*  
 ouer al other, come to ham, and wyth his tuskys wolde haue  
 smytten ham Slayn, yf he boldely ne had come betwene, and  
 Slayne \* the Boore, and Holpyd Hame Both. On the morrow, [\*Fol. 14  
 they Went to the Place ther the Parlement was sette, at a place  
 that Sedyn is callid "Rorike-is hille." Fryste thay heldyn har  
 Parlement from fere, by messageres goynge betwen; ther-aftyr thay  
 toke Surtey, and othis Sware, and comyn to-giddydr aftyrward.  
 Natheles fewe, and ylyke many on euery syde, and thay vnwepenyd,—  
 but the on, her Swerdys; the othyr, her Sparthes,—and her felle-  
 chip in euery syde fere fro ham. Gryffyn, that wyth Moryce come to  
 the Parlement, was ful thoghtful of the vysion that he Saw; he  
 name to hym Sewyn knyghtis of his owyn kyn, tham that he  
 most truste to har bolthenys, and drowen ham on the one halfe  
 of the hille / as neye as thay myght, Leppen vpon har stedes,  
 with sheldis about har nekkes, and Sperres in honde, and for oo  
 Purpos pleydyn and prikkedyn in the felde ayeyne othyr, So that  
 in what syde the Parlement turnedyn, throgh encheyson of Suche  
 Pley, thay myght be foundyn redy. Rourik and Hugh kepten har  
 Parlement of many thyngis; but in nothyng thay myght acorde,  
 and begon to de-Pert, as in wrethe. The traytoure Rourik had  
 in his thought / the trayson that he hadd Purueyed: he made  
 semblant, and drow hym be-sydis as forto Pissyn, and made tokyn  
 to his men that thay hastely sholde come to hym. Whan he this  
 had done, he turned ayeyne with his sparth an hey, his face al  
 blake with ful snel goynge. Morice was warnyd of his eme by the  
 vysyon that he sawe; stode, and be-helde al this. he toke out  
 his Swerde, and cried vpon Hugh, and mynyd hym, and did hym-  
 Selfe agayn the traytoure, forto defende hym. The traytoure rane  
 agayn hugh, hym forto smyte. har latymer yed between hym and  
 the stroke; and he smote of hym the oone harme of, fast by the  
 shuldyr. Morice stode, and camplid with his Swerde ayene the  
 Sparthe<sup>1</sup>, and loude cried to har men. And ar hugh myght be  
 in any state<sup>2</sup>, hym-Selfe forto helpe, throgh grete hastyng, he fel  
 twies a-bac; and vnneth, throgh helpe of Morice, that hym defendid

*praeter  
 hinc gla-  
 dios tan-  
 tum, inde  
 secures.*

*ex indu-  
 tria torna-  
 mentis  
 Gallicis  
 praeludia  
 faciebant*

*simulans  
 ad min-  
 gendum.  
 vultu  
 pallido.*

*prae-  
 muniens et  
 suscitans.  
 viri inter-  
 pretis . . .  
 letali  
 vulnere  
 brachium  
 amputavit.  
 1 contra  
 securim  
 gladio  
 confugebat.*

<sup>2</sup> staste, MS.

A.D. 1172. lyf. The whyll that thys was, Rorykes men ful many come to hys  
 clepyng, out of dales & wodes about, yernynge to ham wyth  
 speres & with sparthes, for to brynge hugh & Moryce out of  
 dawes. Than Gryffyn & hys felewes comeñ yernynge vp on har 4  
 O'Rourke hors styffly to ham. þe traytour saw ham comynge, & lep to hors  
 that to hym was broght, & wold do hym to flyght; & as he lepe,  
 is slain by Maurice Fitz-Gerald. vp come Gryffyn, & wyth hys spere smote hym & hys hors throg-  
 out, & slowe hem bothe. Wyth hym weþ I-slayne þay that, yn so 8  
 mych perylle, the hors hym broght; & hy[s] heed I-smytten of, &  
 yn-to england þer-after to the kyng I-sent; & al hys men yn-to al  
 the feldes dyscomfyte, & I-slawe ful many. Rolf, Robertes sone fytz  
 Stephen, was the other stalwardthest that daye yn the felde<sup>1</sup>. 12

## [CHAPTER XXXI.]

[Fol.16 a.] **M**orice was a mane ful wyrshypful & chamfaste; vysage  
 Maurice Fitz-Gerald described. wel colowred; becomlyche; lytel of body, sumdele more  
 þan lytel, & lasse than metlych. of hert, & body, wel I-thewed;  
 nothyng hauteyne. of k[i]ndly goodnes, he was good; & leuer 16  
 hym was be good, than be sey good; hys maner was euer-more to  
 hold hym methelyche. man of short spech & lytel, bot of fayr  
 wordes, as he that more hadde yn hert than yn mouth, more of  
 wytte & reyson þan of spech. <sup>2</sup> Nat forthy<sup>3</sup>, whan tyme was, & nede 20  
 to sp[e]ken, to good reyson forth brynge,—as lettred as he was, as  
 wytty he was<sup>2</sup>. In thyng that byfell to bataylle, swyth hardy,  
 & vnnethes of stalwarthnesse any was hys better; natheles, of  
 perille to take, he was nat to hastyf ne to fool-hardy. bot as he was 24  
 thus, & of purueaunce thyng to begynne, Also he was stronge &  
 stydfast yn thyng. Whan he hyt hadde begune. he was sobre, wel  
 I-thewed & chaste, lawful, & stydfast, without blame.

A.D. 1173.

## [CHAPTER XXXII.]

In April, Henry II's three sons, **I**n the next auryl ther-after, þe yonger kyng henry, þe 28  
 kynges sone, the lyddernysse that he hadde I-thoght to hys

<sup>1</sup> The twelve lines on the back of fol. 15, 'a bak (p. 74, at foot) . . . felde,' were first written by mistake on fol. 16, but afterwards struck out.

<sup>2-2</sup> Et tamen, cum sermonem res exigebat, ad sententiam dicendam sicut serus, sic scientissimus.—*Op.* v. 297.

<sup>3</sup> ? MS. Rat fortly.



thus, Escapid wyth his lyfe. the whyle that this was, Rourik his men, ful many, come to his callinge, out of dalis and woddis about, rynnynge to ham with Speres and Sparthes, forto berew hugh and Morice the lyfe. Than gryffyn and his fellows come rynnynge vpon har hors styfly to ham. the traytoure<sup>o</sup> Saw ham comynge, and lep to hors that to hym was broght, and wolde do hym to flyght / And as he lep, vp come gryffyn, and wyth his spere smote hym and his hors throught-out, and slayne them both. wyth hym were Slayn thay that, in so myche Peril, the hors hym broght and his hed Smytten of / and into England theraftyr to the kyng hit sende; and al his men into al the feldis discomfite, and Slayn ful many / Rolfe, Robert-is Sone, fiz-Steuyñ, was the othyr boldyste that day in the felde.

## [CHAPTER XXXI.]

**M**Orice was a man ful wyrchippul and shamefaste; <sup>Capitulum xxxjm.</sup> <sup>Descriptio Maurici fiz-geraud. [\*Fol. 15 a.]</sup> <sup>plus pectoris habens quam oris, plus rationis quam orationis, plus sapientiae quam eloquentiae.</sup> <sup>A.D. 1173.</sup> <sup>Capitulum xxxijm.</sup> wel colorid; becomlych; lytil of body, sume-whate more than lytel and lasse than metlych. of herte and body, wel thewed; nothyng couetyng. of<sup>\*</sup> Kyndely goodnes, He was good<sup>1</sup>; ande Leuer hit Was to Hym to Be good, than to Be sayde good. his maner was euer-more to holde hym methelyche. man of Shorte Speche and lytyll, but of Fayre<sup>o</sup>wordis, as he that more had in herte than in mouthe, more of witte and Reyson than of speche. Nat forthy, whan tyme was, and nede to Spekyn, to good reyson forth bryng, —as letterid as he was, as witty he was. In thyng that befel to battayl, Swyth hardy. But as he was thus, and of Purueyance, thyng to begyn, Also he was stronge and stydfast in thyng whan he hit hadd begonne. <sup>2</sup>he was sobyr, wel condicionyd and chaste, lawful and stidfaste, wyth-out blame<sup>3</sup> /

## [CHAPTER XXXII.]

**I**N the nexte Aurel ther-aftyr, the yongyr kyng henry, the kynges Sonne, the Wickidnys that he had thoght to his fadyr done / nolde no longyr helle, wyth his two bretheryn that

<sup>1-1</sup> vultu colorato, decentique; mediocri quadam modicitate, tam medicribus minor, quam modicis major; vir tam animo quam corpore modificato, nec illo elato, nec hoc dilutato; innata vir bonitate bonus.—*Op.* v. 297.

<sup>2-2</sup> Vir sobrius, modestus et castus; stabilis, firmus atque fidelis.—*Ibid.*

A.D. 1173. fadyr nold no lenger hellen; *with* hys twey bretheren—that ys to wytte, the Erl of peytou & the erl of brytayn<sup>1</sup>—wenten to the kynge of ffraunce, whose doghteṛ he hadde I-spoused, & purchased helpe of hym for to werṛ vpon hys fadyr. The encheson wher-for<sup>4</sup> hyt was, Mayster Geraud ne telleth nat, ne I ne can nat sey; bot many hegḥ & Ryche men he hadde to consaylle & to helpe, both of England & of beyend the see; many openly & wel; most, illy & dernely. The old kynge, the yonger kynges fadyr, for the fortune<sup>8</sup> that hym come to on euery halue so vnwarly, was ful sorowful.

Henry II. **C** Nathales, throgḥ gret sleght & hegḥ herth, he made fayr semblant, & heped to god; & on euery syde that he myght, yn al maner he besoght help. He sent messagers ynto Irland, & mad come ouer<sup>12</sup> to hym the meste parte of the knyghtes & of the good meygne þat he ther hadde I-lefte. Thay come to hym at the cyte of Ruem, & he bethogh hym that †hyt was perylle to leue har lond vnkepet; ther he betoke þe Erl Rychard al þe lond to kepe, & sette to hym<sup>16</sup> Reymond as hys otheṛ hand; ffor the erl for-soke al out & out, þat he that kepyng wold nat receyue, bot yf he hadde Reymond *with* hym for to helpe.

## [CHAPTER XXXIIL.]

Most Irish, hearing of the Princes' rebellion, turn against Henry II.

**T**he Erle [&] Reymond, *with* haṛ power, wentten yn-to<sup>20</sup> Irland; &, for the folk of yrland hade y-hard of the mych stryff that was betwene the kynge & hys sonnys be-yent the see,—as folk þat styddefast ys yn vnstedfastnesse, & lawfully ham holt to vnlawfulnessse,—the most parte of the prynces of þe lond, ayeyn<sup>24</sup> har trouth I-found, þay turned ayeyn-to the kynge. The erl hadde sone I-spend the traysour that he broght ouer wyth hym; & whan the meygne lacked spendynge, & nat spedden yn prayes takynge vnder heruy, that was conestable ouer the meygne, & euer hadde<sup>28</sup> enuy to Reymond, Thay wenten ham to the erl comynly by one accorde, & sey hym wel, that ‘bot yf he wold sete Reymond ouer ham, thay wold leue hym euerychone, & wend yn-to england; oper, that wel wors was, thay wold turnet to haṛ enemyes ayeyns har<sup>32</sup> heed.’ As the meygne wold, Reymond was I-sette ouer ham; thay name than hert to ham, & wenten vpon the Ofolanes yn the dees,

<sup>1</sup> Pictaviae scilicet et Britanniae comitibus.—Op. v. 297–8.

The English demand to be put under Reimund Fitz-Gerald. They invade Offaly, in Leinster,



is to Say, the Erle of Peytou *and* the Erle of Brytayne, wentyn A.D. 1173.  
to the kynge of Fraunce, whose doghtyr he had Spousid; *and* ad Lodovicum, Francorum regem.  
Purchasid helpe of hym forto were vpon his fadyr. The encheyson  
wherfore hit was, Maystyr Geraud ne tellyth not / ne I ne can  
not say; but many hey men he hade to consayl and to helpe,  
both of England *and* of beyonte see; many opynly *and* wel; multo  
[more] falthyr pryuely. The olde kynge, the yonger kynges fadyr, plures occulte habens, et fautores.  
for the fortvne that to hym was fal on euery syde so vnwyttyngly,  
was ful Sorroful. Neuer-the-las, by grete Sotylte *and* hey herte,  
he made fayre semblante, *and* trystid to god; *and* on euery syde  
that he myght, in al maner he besoght helpe. he sende messageres  
into Irland, *and* made come ouer to hym the meste Parte of the  
knyghtes and of the good mennye that he ther lefte. Thay come  
to hym at the Cite of Ruem. *and* he be-thoght hym that hit was ad urbem Rothomagensis.  
Peril to leue har londe vnkepte: ther he be-toke the Erle Richard;  
al the londe to kepe, and sette to hym Reymonde as his othyr custodiam illam suscipere omnino renuerat.  
hande; For the Erle forsoke out and out, that he that kepynge  
wolde not rescewe, but yf he hadde Reymond wyth hym, hym  
forto helpe.

## [CHAPTER XXXIII.]

**T**he Erle and Reymond, with har men, wentyn Into Capitulum xxxij<sup>m</sup>.  
Irland; and, for þe Pepil of Irland had herde of the grette  
stryfe that was betwene the kyng and his Sonnes be-yount the  
See,—as Pepyl that stydfast is in vnstydfastnes, *and* lawfully ham  
holde to vnlawfulnes,—the most Part of the Pryncis of the londe, gens sola constans inconstantia.  
agayn har trouth y-founde, thay turned agayn the kynge. The  
Erle had spende the tresoure that he broght ouer wyth hym; *and* deficientibus quoque stipendiis.  
whan the fellochipe lackid spendynge, *and* not Speddyn in Prayes-  
takyng, Vndyr heruey, that was constabil ouer the menny, and  
euer had envy to Reymond; Thay wenten ham to the Erle  
comynly by oone acorde, *and* sayde to hym wel, ‘but that he  
wolde sette Reymonde ouer ham, thay wolde lewe hym euerichone,  
*and* wende Into Englande; othyr, that wel wors was, thay wolde  
turne to har enemys agaynes hame’ / And as the menny desyrid,  
Reymonde was sette ouer hame. thay take then herte to ham, in Offelanos inaurgentes.  
*and* wenten vp-on the Ofelany in the desceses, and toke grette

A.D. 1173. & name grett prayes, arrayed ham nobly wyth hors & wepne.  
 Lismore, From thens thay wentteñ to lysmore, & the cyte, & al þe contre  
 &c., and about, robbeden & prayeden, & by the see wey senten many grete  
 take much prayes to Watyrford; & of pylfre & thynges that thay namen, thay 4  
 prey. fylled .xiiij. far costes that wereñ I-come fro Waterford yn-to the  
 The hauen of dongaruame. As thay weř wynd abydynges, theř come  
 English þe men of Cork from by west, by the see, yn xxxij shypys, & many  
 fleet fight a men theř-In, for to take thay other. Theř was the fyght styffely 8  
 Cork fleet, I-yeuen, of these twey fletes yn the see: That oon assaylled that  
 other grymlych *with* stones & *with* sparthes; the other wereñ  
 welle I-wepned, & *with*-stode styffly *with* arblastes & *with* bowes.  
 rout it, and At þe end, thay of Corke weren descomfyted & ouer-come; heř 12  
 kill its men, shypys I-take; heř men I-slawe, & I-caste yn the see. Adam de  
 and take herford & phylep de Wellsse, that weren I-sette ouer thay yong-  
 their prizes to Water- lynges, *with* mo shypes & grete beyetes of wepne & of pylfre, to  
 ford. Watyrford wenten *with* grete yoye. Reymond herd speke of thys 16  
 Reimund marches, fyght, & tythynges to hym come; he toke *with* hym xx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes  
 & an hundreth bowmen, & went by the see wey thederward.  
 Than come to hym tythynges þat dermot, þe prynce of desmond,  
 was, *with* myche hostes, comen to lysmore, to helpe ham of Cork. 20  
 Dermot daren't Reymond went hym thederward. þe prynce that herd, & turned  
 face him. ayeine, & durst hym nat abyde. And Reymond went fortheř yn-to  
 Reimund has 4,000 the contrey, robbed & prayed, so that he hadde *with* hym at hys  
 cattle. turny[n]ge aye toward Watyrford, four thousand kyne; & as thay 24  
 [¶ Fol. 17 a.] wer comynge || by narow weyes wyth har praye, come the Ireshe-  
 The Irish men of þe contray, & henten a party of har kyne, & wenten al  
 take some. quyttten *with* ham to wodde. þe crye arose, & Reymond<sup>1</sup> (as man  
 that euer was formost redy) went aftyr, *with* oñ priuisant man an 28  
 hors wyth hym; come to the woddes ense<sup>2</sup>, theř the theues  
 He pur- weren an hydynges. Whan he hadde I-faylled of þe preye, &  
 sues them into a wolde turne ayeine, hys felewes folyly entyced hym for to wende  
 wood. yn-to þe wodde, & he so dydde. Whan thay weren wel *with*-yn, 32

<sup>1</sup> The Latin text gives this exploit to Meiler: Gir. Cambr. *Op.* v. 309-10, 'et in primis Meilerius, ut erat praeceptus semper et probus, satellite quodam comitatus equestri, praedones usque ad silvae condensa est persecutus.'

<sup>2</sup> Ends.



Prayes arrayed ham nobely with hors and wepyñ. From thens A.D. 1173.  
 thay wentyn to lysmore; \* and the Cite and the contrey about, [\*Fol. 15  
b.]  
 robbodyn and preedyn, and, By the See-wey, Sendyne many gret  
 prayis to waterford; and of pilfre and of thynges that thay toke,  
 thay fillid<sup>e</sup> xiiij<sup>e</sup>. farcostes that weryn come from watyrford into naviculas  
tredecim.  
 the havyn of doun-garvan. As thay were wynde abydynges ther,  
 come the men of Corke from be weste, by the See, in xxxij<sup>ti</sup>. Shippis,  
 and many men therin, forto take the othyr. ther was the fyght bellicosus  
refertas  
viris.  
 fressely yewyn of this two flittes in the See. That oone assaylid  
 the othyr grymly with stones and with Sparthis; the othyr wer  
 wel wepenyd, and wythstod styfly with arblastes and with bowes<sup>1</sup>.  
 At the Ende, thay of Corke weryn dyscomfyted and ouer-come;  
 Her shippis take, her men slayne, and caste Into the See. Adam  
 de herforde and Philippe<sup>2</sup> the wellsshe, that weryn sette ouer  
 thay yonglynges, with mo shippes and gret begetes of wepyn cum armis  
et oneribus.  
 and of Pylfre, to Watyrford wentyn with gret Ioy. Reymond  
 herde speke of this fight, and tythynges to hym come: he toke  
 with hym xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes and an hundrid bowmen, and went by per mari-  
timam  
viam.  
 the see-way thedyrwarde. Than com to hym tythyngis that  
 Dermot, the prince of desmonde, was with myche hostys comyn  
 to lysmore, to helpe ham of Corke. Reymonde wentyn hym  
 thedyrward: the prince that herde, and turned agayn, and durst  
 hym not abyde. And Reymonde wente Ferdyr Into the<sup>3</sup> contrey,  
 robbid and Prayed, So that he hadd with hym at his turnynges  
 agayn toward watyrford, iiij<sup>e</sup>. M<sup>ti</sup>. kyne. and as thay were comynges  
 by naroweis wyth har Pray, come the Iryssh-men of the contray, ad silvas  
de plano.  
 and tokyn a party of har kyne, and wentyn al quyte with ham to  
 wodde. the cry aros, and Reymond, as man that euer was formyst  
 redye, went aftyr, with one pruyisant man an hors with hym, come  
 to the woddys syd ther the thewis were an-hydynges. Whan he had  
 falid of the pray, and wolde haue turne agayne, his fellowis folely juvene in-  
stigante  
temerario  
 Enticed hym forto wende into the wodd; and he so dide. Whan

<sup>1</sup> dum isti lapidibus et securis acriter impetunt, illi vero, tam sagittis quam laminis ferreis quibus abundabant, promptissime resistunt.—*Op.* v. 309.

<sup>2</sup> Philpippe, MS.

<sup>3</sup> the the, MS.

A.D.  
1173-4.  
Reimund is  
attackt,  
but cuts  
his way  
thro' his  
foes.

the Irysshe-men rysse to ham on euery halue, & leyd ham oñ,  
& anoon-ryght the yonge mañ was al to-hakked to-for hym; he  
yarne to snellych for to socur hym, & was assaylled oñ euery  
halue; & he, as man, hent out the swerd & leyd on about hym, 4  
& smot of that mañ the hond, þat other the arme, þe pryde the  
heede by þe sholdres; thus he opened hym the wey, & come out  
to hys men, & broght twey sparthes fast on hys sheld, & thre on  
hys hors<sup>1</sup>; bot all hool & sound, & harmeles of body, he escaped. 8

## [CHAPTER XXXIV.]

A.D. 1174.

Reimund  
goes to  
Wales.  
Hervey is  
made Con-  
stable.

Whan thys was y-done, & the meygne was noblych  
arrayed both byl ond & eke by watyṛ, come tythynges  
to Reymond, that hys fadyṛ Wylliam fytz Geraud was dede.  
Reymond went ouere yn-to Walys, to take seysyne yn hys fadyṛ 12  
landys; & heruy was the whyle eft<sup>2</sup> y-made conestable of þe  
meygne: he wold fayne entremette hym to do some thyng the  
whyle that Reymond was out of londe, & made the Erl & the  
meyne wend to Cassell for to weren yn Monestre; he sent eke 16  
after the meyne of dyuelyn to come to ham. And as thay come  
throgh Ossery, & laye a nyght yn a place thaṛ thay supposed to  
be al sykeṛ, Obreen, the kyng of thomone, was sykeṛ, & awayted  
haṛ comynge by good spies. he aroos with mych folk vpon hem 20  
erly a day yn the morowenyng, & smot vpon ham vnwytyngly,  
& slogh fouṛ knyghtes that wereñ ouer ham, & fouṛ hundret  
ostmen. Whan the tythynges heṛ-of come to the Erl, he turned  
ayeyne to Waterford with mych shame, & held hym thaṛ as man 24  
that was beseget, that he cam nat fro thennes. And for thys  
aduentuṛ, the folk of Irland wyth oo hert al to-gyddre aresen vpon  
the englysshe, & slow ham yn-to al theṛ thay myght ham fynd.  
The kyng of Connaght come eke ouer the shynen yn-to Myd, 28  
& fond al þe castels wast & voyde; he brant & keste ham adoun  
to ground, tyl he come ryght to dyuelyn. The Erl saw þat he  
was narow by-ladde: by consaylle of hys men, as the last remedy  
of lyue, he sent hys lettres to Reymond ouer yn-to Walys, yn these 32

Donnell  
O'Brien  
slaughters  
the Dublin  
men.

The Irish  
massacre  
the Eng-  
lish.

<sup>1</sup> tres secures Hibernicas in equo confixas, duasque in clipeo portans.—Gir.  
Camb. Op. v. 310.

<sup>2</sup> MS. est.



they wer with-In the Irysh-men rysse to ham on euery halue *and* A.D.  
1173-4.  
 leyde on ham, *and* anoone the yonge man was al to-hackid to-for  
 hym. He rane forto socoure hym, *and* was assaylid on euery syde.  
 And he, as man, toke out his Swerde, *and* leyde on aboute hym, *and* *exserto  
gladio,  
viam sibi  
vir ani-  
mosus viri-  
bus ape-  
ruit.*  
 Smote of, that man the honde, that othyr the harme, the thyrde the  
 hede by the sholdris; thus he oppenyd the wey, *and* come out to  
 his men, and broght two Spares faste on his shelde, and thre on his  
 hors; but al holde and Sounde *and* harmeles of body he Escapid.

## [CHAPTER XXXIV.]

A.D. 1174.

**W**han this was done, *and* the meyne was nobely arrayed Capitulum  
xxxiiij<sup>m</sup>.  
 both by londe *and* also by watyr / come thythyngis to  
 Reymonde, that his Fadyr willam fiz-geraude was dede. Reymond  
 wente ouer into Walis, to take seysyne in his Fadyr landis; And  
 heruey that tyme was made constabil of the meny. he wolde fayn *aliquid  
agere  
videretur.*  
 entremitte hym to done sumthyng, the whyle that Reymonde  
 was out of londe; *and* made the Erle *and* meny wende to cassell  
 forto werryn in monestre. He sende also after the meny of  
 deuelyn to come to ham. And As thay come throgh Ossory,  
*and* lay a-nyght in a place thar thay demyd to be al Sure,  
 Obreen, the kynge of Thomonde, was Sure, *and* awayted hare  
 \*comynge By good Spies. He aroose, with mych Pepil, vppon [\*Fol. 16  
a.]  
 Hame, erly a day in the mornynge, *and* Smote vppon ham vn-  
 wittingly, *and* killid iiij<sup>e</sup>. knyghtis *and* weryn ouer hame, *and* *qui alius  
praecerant.*  
 CCCC men. Whan the thythynges herof come to the Erle, he  
 turned agayne to Watyrford with mych shame, *and* helde hym  
 ther as man that was besegid, that he came not fro thennes.  
 And for this aduenture, the Pepil of Irland with oo herte al- *unanimiter  
insurgunt.*  
 to-giddy arysen vpon the Englysh, *and* Slowen ham in al places  
 that thay ham myght fynde // The kynge of Connaght come also  
 ouer the shynnyfi into Myth, *and* found al the Castelis waste *and*  
 woyde. he braunt and keste ham doune to grounde, til he come  
 ryght to Deuelyn. The Erle Saw that he was narrow bylad: by *in arcto  
jam posi-  
tum.*  
 consail of his men, as the laste remedy of lyue, he sende his  
 lettres to Reymond, ouer into Walis, in thes wordis: "As rath as

A.D. 1174. wordes: "As rathe as thou hast I-sey these *lettres*, ne leue nat to  
 Striguil come to socour vs wyth good myght: & thy desyr of basyle, my  
 asks Reimund's sustre, lawfully for to spouse, anone at py comynge, wythout faylle  
 help, and thou shalt haue." Whan Reymond hadde thys I-herd, both for the 4  
 promises him his maydnes loue pat he so longe hadde desyred, & for to proue hys  
 sister Basile. stalwardnesse, & socour hys lord yn hys mychele nede, wyth Meyleŕ,  
 hys emes sone, he dyght hym al pat he myght yn such hast, so  
 that he hadde thretty || knyghtes of hys owne kyn, & thre hundert 8  
 bowmen, the choyse of al Wales: he put hym to saylle, & arryued at  
 Weysford yn fyftene shyppes. That same tyme, the men of Weysford  
 hadden I-purueyed ham to vndo al þe englysshe, wheŕ-so me myght  
 ham fynde. Whan thay sawe the shyppes comynge yn þe hauyŕ, & 12  
 baneres that thay wel knowe; proght pat comynge so fersly, that  
 traysonð was y-lefte; & anoonð Reymond went wyth hys men to  
 Waterford, & broght thens the Erl stalwarthly to Weysford.  
 fressel, that was kepeŕ of Waterford, went after the Erl by þe 16  
 water of Sur, yn botys with hys men; &, as pay weŕ yn the watyŕ,  
 the lydder gyddes that hym shold lode<sup>1</sup>, slowe hy[m] & al hys men,  
 & turned ayeyne to the Cyte, & gadered ham to-gedder al þe  
 Irysshe-men, & smyt vponð þe englesshe, & slowe al that thay 20  
 myght fynd yn hous & yn wey, men & wommen, yonge & old,  
 without any sparynge, saue thay that escaped yn-to Rathe-  
 vyldestouŕ; & throug ham was the toun I-saued, tyl the traytours  
 þer-after come to pees, & euer ther-after the lasse beleued & loued. 24  
 Reymond, whan he hadde thys I-se[u]yd the Erl, he miniyed the  
 Erl of hys beheste. The Erl sent anoonð to dyuelyŕn after hys  
 suster, and went neuer from Weysford, fort sho was with mych  
 wyrshyppe I-spoused to Reymond. Whan he was I-spoused, & 28  
 al þe day was Ihold yn yoy, gladnesse, & mych plente of mete  
 & drynke, & the nyght after, yn delytes of chambre as ham beste  
 lyked, came tythynges that Oconghouŕ, kyng of Connaght,  
 hadde I-destrued al myght, & was I-come wyth myche power 32  
 yn-to the contrey of dyuelyŕn. Reymond was nat slowe, nether  
 for loue of hys fayŕ wyf ne for the moche feste, bot anoonð  
 a morowe he toke hys meŕn wyth hym, & went toward dyuelyŕn.

<sup>1</sup> for lede.



ye haue sey thes lettres, ne lette not to come to socoure vs with A.D. 1174.  
 good myght: *and* youre desyre of Basyle my Sustre, lawefully forto et deside-  
 Spouse, anone at youre comynge, with-out fayl ye shall haue" // rium tuum,  
 Whan Reymond hadd this herde, both for the maydes lowe that he in Basilia  
 so longe had desiryd, *and* forto prow his myght, *and* socoure his sorore mea  
 lorde in his mychel nede, with Meyler, his emys sone, he dight hym tibi  
 al that he myght in such haste, so that he myght haue / *and* legitime  
 hadde xxx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes of his owyn kyne, *and* CCC bowmen, the coyse copulanda.  
 of al Walis. he putte hym to sayle, *and* arryued at Weysforde in de electa  
 xv. shippis. that same tyme, þe men of Weysforde hadd Purveyed Kambriæ  
 ham to vndo al the Englysh, wherso thay myght ham fynde. juvenute.  
 Whan thay Saue the chippis comynge Into hawyn, and baneres  
 that thay wel knew; throw that comynge So Fresly, that trayson adventu  
 was lefte; and anoone Reymonde went wyth his men to watyrforde, tum subito.  
*and* broght thens the erle boldely to Weysforde. Fresell, that was Fretellus,  
 keper of watyrforde, wente by the watyr of Sure in botis with his custos.  
 men; and, as they were in the watyr, the liddy gides that hym ab iniquis  
 Sholde lede, slayne hym *and* al his men, *and* turned agayn to the Ostmannis.  
 Cite, *and* gaddrid ham to-geddyr al the Irysh-men, *and* smyte  
 vpon the Englysh-men, *and* slayne al thay that thay myght fynde  
 in hous, in wey, men *and* women, yonge *and* olde, with-out any in plateis  
 sparynge, Saue thay that Escapid into Rathevyldestoure; *and* et domibus.  
 throgth ham was the touffe Sawid, tyl the traytours ther-aftr  
 come to Pees, *and* euer ther-aftr the lasse belewid *and* lowid. /  
 Reymond, when he hadd thus I-Sawid the Erle, he mvnyed the  
 Erle of his promes. the erle sende anoone to deuelyn aftr his revocatam  
 suster; *and* Wente neuer frome Weysforde till that she was, with a Dublinia  
 myche wyrechipp, Spousid to Reymonde. Whan he was spousid,  
 and al the day was holde in Ioy *and* gladnys, *and* mych Plente  
 of mette *and* drynke, and the nyght aftr in delytes of chambyr, in thalami  
 as ham beste plesyde / Came tythyngis that o-conghoure, kyng of deliciis  
 Connaght, hadd destrued al Myth, *and* was come with grete hoste nocte con-  
 into the contrey of Deuelyn. Reymond was not Slow, nethyr for sumpta.  
 lowe of his fayre wyffe, ne\* for the moche feste; But amorrow He nec rino,  
 toke His men With Hym, *and* Went towarde Deuelyn. O-con- nec venere,  
 [Fol. 16  
b.] retardatur.

A.D. 1174. Oconghou<sup>r</sup> hadde *per-to-forne* assayed hys mayne, y-douted hym  
 O'Conor retires. the more; he ne abode nat wyth hym, bot was gladde to take  
 Reimund homward. Reymond let restore & arere that was destrued throgh  
 rebuilds his be wer<sup>r</sup>, & fale castels ryght vp, & broght yn-to rather state; 4  
 Castles and & for dred of hym, the lond wax yn good pees a good whyle, that  
 restores none Iresshe-ma<sup>n</sup> ne durst hym styrrer, wer to begynne.  
 peace.

## [CHAPTER XXXV.]

A.D.  
 1173-4. **T**his while the kyng was yn mych stryf, wel two yer,  
 Henry II ayey<sup>n</sup> hys thre sonnes & ha<sup>r</sup> allies, both yn englande 8  
 strife. & yn normandy & garioigne; & so was I-peyned with trauaylle  
 & yn wepne & wakyng nyght & day, that no man ne myght more.  
 The worst Bot, for ne wors fomanne may be, pa<sup>n</sup> thay that ma<sup>n</sup> moste  
 was, that trusteth to, o thyng was, that meste tene hym dydde: that pe 12  
 his trusted knyghtes that he hadde I-chose, hys body to kepe, yn whose  
 Body- hondes hys lyf & hys deth he be-taght, for the moste dele euery  
 guard deserted to hys rebel nyght wenten to hys sones pryuely; so that, whan the kyng  
 his rebel oft-tymes asked afty<sup>r</sup> ham, thay war nat I-founde. Natheles, the 16  
 sons. bataylle that was of so dotous begynnyge, hadde so good endynge  
 that, for the vnryght that hys sonnes hym dedde so vnk[i]ndely,  
 But he won hyt semete better tha[t] he soght by power of god, than by erthly  
 all fights, power; ffor yn al places, the ouerhand was hys. And as hyt semete 20  
 fyrste that hyt was for wreth of seynth Thomas-es deth that pat  
 [[Fol. 18 vnhape hym || betydde, Also hyt semed *per-afty<sup>r</sup>*, Whan he  
 a.] hadde I-done asseth to holy chyrche, & pees made wyth the  
 holy martyr, wyth teres & repentaunce of herte, al hys tene, 24  
 by God's throught goodys helpe, hym turned to gladnesse: ffor afty<sup>r</sup> the  
 help. mych tene & trayso<sup>n</sup> pat he hadde Itholled al two yer, at pe  
 laste was pe bataylle I-smytten<sup>n</sup>, at the whych, betwen the twey  
 His sons ostes, Ther war the kynges sonnes dyscomfyt, progh Rauf de 28  
 were routed, and Glanuyl, that was mayster of pe kynges hoste. Ther was I-take  
 pe kyng of scotland, & pe erl of shestre, & pe erl of leycestre,  
 & so fele gret men, bothe of england & of beyent see, that vnnethe  
 me fond prisons to ham. Ther<sup>r</sup>, afty<sup>r</sup> al pe trauayl pat pe kyng 32  
 obliged to hadde, & pe enuy, & pe costes al two yer, come pe sonnes to pe  
 make fadyres pees, & maden asseth, falsly, as hyt was *per-afty<sup>r</sup>* wel  
 peace (a false one). Ishewed yn deede. Of pus vntrowth, spake Merlyn yn hys



ghoure had thertofoꝛ assayed his meny, *and* douted hym the more. A.D. 1174.  
 he wolde not abyde hym, but was glade to take homwarde. *et castris  
 Mediae . . .*  
 Reymonde lette restore and arere that was destrued by the werre; *dirutis . . .*  
 And fale casteles ryght vpe, and broght into radyr state. *and for jam repa-  
 ratis et in  
 statum  
 redactis.*  
 Irysh-man ne durst hym not styre, werre to begynne.

## [CHAPTER XXXV.]

**T**his whyle the kynge was in myche stryfe, wel two yere,  
 agayn his Sonnes *and* har allience, both in Englande and in *Capitulum  
 XXXV<sup>m</sup>.*  
 Normandy, *and* gascoygne; *and* So was peyned with trawail in  
 wepyn, nyght and day, that no man ne myght more. But, for no  
 wors enemy may none be, than thay that a man trusteth moste to,  
 O thyng was, that most angyr hym didd: that the knyghtes that he *illi quoque  
 quos cu-  
 bicularios  
 sibi milites  
 elegerat.*  
 hadd chose his body to kepe, in Whos handis his lyfe and his deth  
 he betoke, for the mor Party, euery nyght wentyn to his Sones  
 priuely; So that, whan the kynge ofte-tymys askyd after hame, thay  
 were not founde. Natheles, the battayll that was of So doutous  
 begynnyng, hadd So good Endynge that, for the vnryght that his  
 Sones hym didde so vnkyndely, hit Semyd bettyr that he foght by  
 Powere of god, than by Erthely Powere. For in al Placys, the ouer-  
 hande was his. And as hit Semyd fryst, that hit was for wrethe of  
 Seynte Thomas-es deth that that vnhape hym befell, Also hit  
 semyd ther-aftyr, whan he hadd done asseth to holy church, *and*  
 pees made with the hooly martyr, with terys and repentaunce of *propiti-  
 ante nobili  
 martyre  
 Thoma,  
 lacrimis et  
 deuotione  
 jam pla-  
 cato.*  
 herte, al his tene (by godys helpe) hym turned to gladnys. For  
 aftyr the mych tene and trayson that he hadd sufferid al two yere,  
 At the laste, was the battayl Smytten, at the whyche, be-twen the  
 two hostys, Ther were the kynges Sonnes dyscomfyte, by Ralfe de  
 Glanvil, that was Maystyr of the kynges hoste. Ther was take  
 the kynge of Scotlande, and the Erle of Chestre, and the Erle of  
 leycestre, and So many grete men, both of England *and* of beyonte  
 See, that vnneth thay found prisonys to ham. Ther, aftyr al the  
 trauail that the kynge hadde, and the Envy, and the costys al two *umbratili-  
 que magis  
 quam vera  
 concordia.*  
 yere, come the Sonnes to the faderis Pees, *and* madyn asseth, falsly,  
 as hit was ther-aftyr wel Shewid in dede. Of this vntrouth, Spake

Merlin of  
Celidon's  
prophecy of  
the Rebel-  
lion of  
Henry II's  
sons.

prophecies, & seyde: "The sonnes shullen agylte ayeyn þe fadyr  
for hys gyltes, & the rather gylte shal be encheson of þe gyltes  
þat after shullen comen. The sonnes shullen aryse vpon þe fadyr;  
& for to awreke hys felonye ayeine þe wombe, the tharmes shal  
swer ham togydder. In the man of blode, the blode shall aryse,  
& wanhoply shal hys pynsyng be, tyl that scotland þe penaunce  
of hys pylgrymage bewepe."

## [CHAPTER XXXVI.]

Henry II  
had grey  
eyes, a red  
face,

The kynge henry the other, was<sup>1</sup> a man saunrede, rounce  
heed, & round grey eghe; roghly lokynge, & rede yn wreth;  
vysage rede bernynge, grete speche, neke somdel logh of þe  
sholdres, brest thyk, armes staluarthe, of flesshy body; & more  
of kynde than of glotony, grete of wombe; for he was, as to pryce  
belongeth, [of] mete, & of drynke ful meen & for-berynge<sup>2</sup>; & for  
to a-quenche that gretnesse, he put hymself to ful mych trauaylle,  
that wnneth he lete hys body haue eny reste, ether by day other  
by nyght; ffor, wynter, & somer, he arose euer more yn the dawn-  
ynge, & herd fyrst hys seruyce of holy chyrch; ther-aftyr, most  
what al þe day he wold ben out, other wyth houndes other wyth  
hawkes, for yn thay two thynges he delyted hym swyth mych  
wythal; & vnnethe he wold ryde any amblyng hors, bot myche  
trottyng hors, for to trauaylle hys body the more. Aftyr al hys  
trauaylle a-day, vnnethe he lete hys body haue a lytell reste for to  
syte to hys mete the whyle that he eete; & anoon aftyr mete,  
& namely aftyr sopper, anoon he wold aryse & stonde, & so dryue  
forth al þe meste parte of the nyght, so that al þe court was  
oft ennyede ther-of. þe man that he ones yn lych beheld, euer eft  
he hadde knowleche of hym; & dyng þat he hadde ones herd,  
euer eft he hyt wold vnderstond; þe man that he ones hated,  
vnnethe he wold euer eft<sup>3</sup> loue; & man that he ones loued, vnneth

and a big  
belly,  
tho, to  
lessen it,  
he'd hardly  
rest his  
body. All  
day he was  
out hunt-  
ing, and  
rode a high  
trotter;

at night he  
stood.

When once  
he'd seen a  
man, he  
knew him  
again.

<sup>1</sup> vir subrufus, caesius (= lentiginosus), amplo capite et rotundo, oculis glaucis, ad iram torvis, et rubore suffusus, facie ignea, voce quassa, collo ab humeris aliquantulum demisso . . . corpore carnosus, et naturae magis quam gulae vitio, citra tumorem enormem et torporem omnem, moderata quadam immoderantia ventre praeamplo. Gir. Cambr. Op. v. 302.

<sup>2</sup> Erat enim cibo potuque modestus ac sobrius; et parcimoniae, quoad principi licuit, per omnia datus. Gir. Cambr. Op. v. 302. <sup>3</sup> MS. est.



merlynge in his prophesies, and Sayde : " The Sonnes shullyn agylte agayn the Fadyr for his gyltes ; and the radyr gylte shall be encheyson of the gyltes that aftyr shullyn come. The Sones shall aryse vpon the fadyr ; and forto aw[r]eke his felony agayne the wombe, the tharmes shal Swere ham to-giddy. In the man of blode, the blode shal aryse ; and wanhoply shal his Pynsyng be<sup>1</sup>, til that Scotland the Penance of his Pylgrimage bewepe. ' *et ob scel-  
ris vindic-  
tam in  
ventrem  
viscera con-  
jurabunt.*

## [CHAPTER XXXVI.]

The kynge henry the othyr, was a man same rede, rounde *Capitulum  
xxxvj<sup>m</sup>.*  
hede, and rounde grey eyyn ; row lokinge, and rede in wreth ; *Descriptio*  
Visage rede, brennyng ; \* grete Speche ; neke somdel shorte of the *Henrici*  
Soldrys, breste thyke, of fleschy Body ; ande, more of kynde, than of *regis tercij.*  
glotony, gret of wombe ; for he was, as to prynce belongyth, of a.] *[\*Fol. 17  
a.]*  
mete and of drynke ful meen and for-berynge ; and forto aquenche  
that gretnes, he put hym-Selfe to ful mych trauayl, <sup>2</sup> that vnneth he *immo-  
derata  
corpus  
vezatione  
torquebat.*  
lette his body haue enny reste, othyr by day othyr by nyght. For  
Wyntyr and Somer, he aros euer-more in the dawninge, and herde  
fryst his seruyce of holy church ; theraftyr, most part al the day he  
wolde be out, othyr with houndys or with haukes ; for in thay two  
thyngys he delyted gretly with-al / and vnneth he wolde ryde any  
hamlynge hors, but mych trottyng hors, for to trauail his body the  
more. Aftyr al his trauayl a-daye, vnneth he lette his body haue  
a lytil reste forto sitte to his mette. the whyle that he ette, and  
anoone aftyr mette, and namely aftyr soper, anoone he wolde arysse  
and stonde <sup>2</sup>, and So dryue forth al the moste Parte of the nyght, So *totam  
statione  
continua  
curiam  
lassare  
consue-  
verat.*  
that al the courte was ofte wery of his wakyng. the man that he  
onys in lyche be-helde, euer he hadd knowlege of hym ; and thyng  
that he hadd ones herde, euer aftyr he wolde hit vndyrstonde.  
the man that he onys hattyd, vnneth he wolde euer aftyr loue ; and  
man that he onys lowyd, vnneth he wolde euer aftyr hate. Whan

<sup>1</sup> et desperabilis fiet afflictio.—Op. v. 301.<sup>2-2</sup> sibi nec pacem ullam nec requiem indulgebat. Venationi namque trans modestiam deditus, summo diluculo equo cursore transvectus, nunc saltus lustrans, nunc silvas penetrans, nunc montium juga transcendens, dies ducebat inquietos : vespere vero domi receptum, vel ante coenam vel post, rarissime sedentem conspexeris.—Op. v. 302.

Henry II  
described.

He lov'd  
meekness,  
and hated  
pride.

he wold euer eft hate. Whan any vnhappyes hym befelle, noman meker ; efte whan he was yn sekernesse, no man sterner. Suert ayeyn the bold, meke wyth ham that weren vnder y-brought, hard amonge hys owne, & priuely large amonge vnkouth ; & openly 4 mekenesse & debonerte he louede ; pryde & hautesnesse he hated, & wold brynge vnder fote.

A.D.  
1174-5.

Henry II  
does not  
forget his  
Ireland.

[CHAPTER XXXVII.]

[\*Fol. 18  
b.]

He gets a  
grant from  
the Pope,  
of the Lord-  
ship of Ire-  
land, and a  
charge to  
reform the  
folk to the  
laws of the  
Church,

No[ta]  
teno[rem]  
bullee  
[A]drian.

to with-  
stand sin,  
and better  
bad doings.

Thegh þe kyng wer wel longe yn grete nuy & grete anguyshe throught hys sonnes, as hyt ys to-fore I-told, 8 natheles, amonge otheṛ nedes, he ne foryet nat hys Irland. He lete take the *lettres* that waṛ Imade yn the consaylle of Casshele, of the vnclene lyf & the horyble synnes that the folk of Irland lyueden In, || other-wyse than crysten men oght lyuen ; & the 12 *lettres*, al ensealed as thay wer, he sent by hys messagers to the Court of Rome, to the pope Alyxsander that than was ; & thaṛ he dydde the *purchace*, that by auctoryte of the pope, & by hys concent, was to hym I-graunted the lordshype of the lond ; & þe 16 lond-folke, that crysten shold be, & al clene was out of ryght reule of crystendome & ryght byleue, to bryngend yñ-to ryght lawe of holy chyrch, yn the manere of England. That pryuelege forth, wyth another, that rather was *purchaced* of þe pope Adrian, 20 that was to-fore Alexander, was I-sent ouer yn-to Irlande by Nychole, pryour of Walyngford, & Wyllyam Aldelines sone ; & was a consaylle of al the clergie of Irland I-gaddered to-gyddre at Waterford : theṛ weṛ the pryueleges I-shewed & I-radde 24 solempnelych to-fore ham, & I-graunted heghlygh by consente-ment of al the comynes. The forme of thay *preuylesges*, as thay wer endyted yn the Court of Rome a latyne, ne myght I nat comly setten yn Englyshe, & perfor I hyt leue ; bot the meste 28 streynth ys thys :—Whan the pope Adryan hadde herd opynly the euyle lyf, & þe synfule, that þe folk of Irland ladden, wors than wyld bestes, & out of constytucions of holy chyrch & ryght byleue, he graunted the kyng that he shold ynto Irland wend, for to 32 adresse & sprede þe *termes* of holy chyrch, for to wythstond & lete the ruine of syn, for to Amend the lyther thewes, & sette þe good,



any unhappis hym be-felle no mane mekyr. Whan he was in sickyrnys, no man sternyr. Smyrte agayn the bolde, meke wyth ham *clemens in subactos.* that weryn vudyr-broght; harde amonge his owyn, ande Pryuely large amonge strange men; and opynly mekyns and debonerte he *diffusus in extraneos.* lowyd; Pryde and hauteynesse he hatyd, and wolde brynge vndyr-fete.

## [CHAPTER XXXVII.]

---

A.D.  
1174-5.

---

**T**hegh the kynge were wel longe in gret angwysche throgh *Capitulum xxxvij<sup>m</sup>.* his sonnes, as hit is to-fore tolde, natheles, amonge othyr nedys, he foryate note his Irlande. he take the letteres that ware *suae tamen inter agendum Hiberniae non im-memor.* made in the Consayl of Cassell, of the vnclene lyfe and the horribil Synnys that the Pepil of Irland lyuedyn In / In othyr wyse than crystyn men oght lyue; and the lettres, al Ensealid<sup>r</sup> as thay were, He sende his messagers to the Courte of Rome, to the Pope *ab Alexandro tertio, tunc praesidente, priuilegium impetravit.* Alysandyr that than was, and thar he did Purchase that, by auctorite of the Pope and by his concent, was to hym grauntyd the lorchippe of the londe, and the londe-Pepill that crystyn shold be, and al clene was out of Ryght rule of crystyndome and ryght *quod idem rex ab Adriano... perquisierat.* belewe, to brynge into ryght lawe of holy church, in the maner of England. That pryvylege forth, with an othyr <sup>1</sup>that radyr was *in publica audientia ejusdem privilegii, cum universitatis assensu solemniter recitatis facta fuit.* Purchasid of the Pope Adriane, that was to-fore Alexandyr, was sende ouer Into Irlande by Nycole, pryoure of Walyngeforde, and Willam Aldelines-sone; and was a consayle of al the clergy of Irland y-gadderid to-giddy at Watyrford. ther wer the pryuy-legis y-shewyd, and y-radd Sollempnelych to-fore ham, and grauntyd hyghlych of al the comyns. The fourme of thay Pryuylegis, as thay wer endyted At Rome a-latyne, y may not comly sette in Englysh, and therfor y \* Hit Leue; But the mest streynth is this: [\*Fol. 17 b.] Whan the Pope Adryan Hadd Herde opynly the evyl lyfe, and the synfull, that the Pepell of Irland laddyn, wors than wilde bestis, and out of constituciones of holy church and ryght be-lewe, he graunted the kynge, that he sholde into Irland wende, forto adresse and sprede the termys of holy church, forto wythstonde and <sup>2</sup>et vitiorum plan-taria inde extir-panda. lete the ruene of synne<sup>2</sup>, forto a-mende the wickid dedis, and sette the good; forto En[e]che religion of crystyndome, So that hit were

A.D.  
1174-5.  
But every  
house in  
Ireland is  
to pay the  
Pope 1d. a  
year.

All oppo-  
nents are to  
go to the  
Devil.

A.D. 1174.

Now again  
for our  
Knights'  
deeds in  
Ireland.  
Hervey of  
Mont-  
maurice,  
jealous of  
Reimund,

marries  
Nesta  
Fitz-  
Gerald.

O'Brien,  
King of  
Limerick,  
rebels.

for to enecche relygyoun of crystendome, so that hyt war wyrshype to god, & helte to the soules; & the folke of þe londe, manshypply hym shold vptake, & worthly as lorde; saue ryghtes of holy chyrche vnwemmed; & to seynt petyr & þe holy modyr chyrche of Rome, of 4 euery hous a pany to rent, a yer, yn Irland, as yn England. Thys pryuelege was I-purchased of þe pope Adryan; & a clerk hyt purchased, that hette<sup>1</sup> Ithōn of Salusbury; & the pope, by the same clerk, sent to the kynge a gulden ryng, yn name of Seysyne 8 of the lond. the pope Alexandre next aftyr hym confermed that same yift; & euery eþer of ham amonested & parted from god almyghty, & betheght þe deuyl al ham that yn any tyme þer- 12 ayeayne wold come.

[CHAPTER XXXVIII.]

Off þe kynge And of hys sonnes, & of the purchase that þe kynge dede, ys Inowe Itold shortlyche: now we wyllen turne ayeyne to ouþ knyghten gestes yn Irlande. The lond of Irland was yn good pees vnder Reymond-ys kepyng; bot 16 heruy of Mountynorthy,—that euer hadde enuy to Reymond, & saw that hys selth & hys wyrshype wex euer more & more,—fore he ne durst nat openly showe the felony that was yn hys hert, he bethoght that he wold dernely; he made hym semblant of myche 20 loue; besoght ful yorne þat he most allyaunce haue to har kynrede, & namely, that he moste haue to wyue a gentyl-wommañ, Moryces doghter, fytz Gereud, that hegh Neste. Thys mayd was hym Igraunted, & he hyr spoused; & þat þe kynrede sholden the 24 fasteþ be Ibound togydyr, by procuryng, of Reymond & of hym eke, þe Erl yaf helyn, hys sustre, to Wyllyam, Moryces eldest sone: þe erl sent eke aftyr Moryce, that was than Iwent ynto Walys; & at hys comynge, he yaue hym þe haluendele of Ofelañ, & þe 28 castel of wykynlo; & þat oþer haluendele he yaue Meyler. In the tyme þat þe pees was, & þe lond yn good state, byfel that Obren, the kynge of Thomon, ayeyne hys trouth & ayeyn the kynges pees, began to withdrawen hym from the kynge, & noght nold be 32 bowynge to hym, ne to ham that weþ vnder hym yn þe lond.

<sup>1</sup> MS. 'sette' for 'hight, hette, or hete,' p. 94, l. 22 below: 'per Johannem Salesberiensem,' v. 316.



vyrchipp to god, *and* helth to the Sowlys ; *and* the Pepil of the londe, manshippy hym sholde vp-take, *and* worthy as lorde ; Saue the ryght of holy church vnwemyd ; *and* to seynt Petyr *and* the holy modyr church of Rome, of euery hous a peny to rent, a yere, in Irland as in England. This pryuylege was Purchasyd of the Pope Adrian. / *And* a clerke hit Purchasid that was callid Ihon of Salysbury ; *and* the Pope, by the Same clerke, Sende to the kynge a golde ryng, in tokyn of Seysyn of the londe. *And* the Pope Alexandyr nexte after hym confermyt that Same yfte ; *And* euery othyr of ham amonessed *and* Partid from god almyghty, *and* betoke the deuyll al ham that in any tyme ther-ayeynnes wolde come.

A.D.  
1174-5.

*salua beato Petro, et sacrosanctae Romanae ecclesiae, sicut in Anglia sic et in Hibernia, de singulis domibus annua unius denarii pensione.*

## [CHAPTER XXXVIII.]

A.D. 1174.

OFF the kynge *and* of his sonnes, *and* of the Purchas that the kynge did, is y-now tolde Sortelych. Now we will turne agayne to oure knyghten gestis in Irland // The londe in Irland was in good pees vndyr Reymonde-is kepyng ; but heruey of montmorthy,—that euer hadd envy to Reymonde, *and* Saw that his goodnes *and* his wyrchippe [wex] euer more *and* more,—for he ne drust not opynly show the felony that was in his herte, he be-thoght that he wolde Pryuely / he made to hym semblant of mych loue ; be-sogh[t] gretly that he sholde alyaunce haue to har kynryde, *and* namely, that he haue to wyue a gentyl woman, Morices doghtyr, fitz-geraude, that was callid Neste. This mayde was to hym graunted, *and* he hyr Spoused. *and* that the kynred sholde be fastyr bounde to-giddy, by procuryng of Reymonde *and* of hym also, the Erle yaue Ellyn his sustyr, to Willam, Morices Eldyst Sone. the Erle sende also after Moryce, that was than went into walis ; *and* at his comyng, he yaue halfe to hym of Ofelan, *and* the castel of wickylow ; *and* the othyr halfe he yaue to Meyler. In the tyme that the Pees was, *and* the londe in good state, besel that Obreen, the kynge of Thomonde, agayn his trouth *and* the kynges Pees, began to wyth-drawe hym frome the kynge, *and* wolde not be bowyng to hym, nethyr to ham that wer vndyr hym in the londe.

Capitulum  
xxxviii<sup>m</sup>.

*Videns . . ejusque successus de die in diem amplius prosperari.*

*Nota matrimonium inter Herueium contrahi et Nestam filiam Maurici fitz-geraud.*

*medium Ophelaniae cantaredum . . . cum Wikingelonenst castro.*

[Fol. 19  
a.]

A.D. 1175.

Reimund  
marches to  
Limerick;  
but is  
stopt by  
the Shan-  
non.His  
nephew,  
Davy the  
Welshmanswims the  
river  
aslant;but as only  
one knight  
follows  
him, he  
swims  
back.Meiler  
thencrosses the  
Shannon.

Reymond told *per*-of myche vnworthynes, & yn lytyl whyle gadered to-dedderes [so] hys hoste, so that he hadde an hundred knyghtes & .xx.ti, thre hundred other an hois, & .cccc. bowmen afote, & about al-halwen-tyde went toward lymeryke. Whan thay wer theder 4  
I-come, thay hadde grete lette of the grete watyr of þe shynen, that was betwen ham & þe sytè, so that thay myght nat ouer wende: the yonglynges—that wel coueytouse wer ham self to auaunce, her stalwarthnesse to showe, & also wynnyng to gete & to 8  
hawe,—weren wel sore a-tened þat thay myght nat ouer to þe syte that was ham so neght, for þe watyr þat was so depe & so streit rennyng betwene, & eke so stony by the ground. As the formest of ham waren hounges vpon þe waterys brynk, was a yonge 12  
knyght amonge ham, newly I-dobbet, fayr & stalwa[r]th, Reymondes Neuowe, that hete Daui the Welsse<sup>1</sup>: throgħ grete couetyse that he hadde, ouer al otheṛ to wyn the formest pryce, ne dredet nat to do hym-self to so horyble perylle of deth; he smote hys hors with 16  
the spores, & ouer-threwe adoun ynto þe watyr, þat was so depe & so stony. the horse was myche & stronge, & come sone vp aboute the watyr wyth hym. he wyssed the hors sydlyng ayeins the watyr asquynt, & come ouer on the otheṛ syde, & cryed to hys 20  
men, & seyde that he hadde a ford I-found. bot, for he fond no man þat hym wold felowe, bot o knyght that hete Geffrey Iudas<sup>2</sup>, he turned ayeine by that same wey, & þe knyght with hym. he come ouer hole & sound; bot þe knyght, progh þe streyntnesse of þe 24  
watyr, was I-throw adoun, he & hys hors, & y-drent to-for ham al. Whan Meyler, that theder was wyth Reymond I-comen, þys saw, he hadde grete enuy that such hardynesse shold be I-teld of any other, & nat to hym: vpon the hors þat hym baṛ, he put hymself 28  
yn the watyr, & hardylyche, wyth-outten any ferdnesse, passed ouer þe otheṛ syde. The cytzeins sawe hym comyng so al-oon; thay comen ayein hym, some for to kepe hym vpward at hys comyng out of þe watyr, for to mak hym turne ayeine; otheṛ, to vndo hym 32  
ryght yn the watyr. The knyght was stalwarth, & boldly putte hym vp bytwene twe perylle:—on on halue, þe wode-yernyng

<sup>1</sup> David agnomine Walensis. *Op.* v. 321.<sup>2</sup> Galfridus Judas. *Ibid.*



Reymonde tolde therof gret vnworthynys, and in lytyll whyle A.D. 1175.  
 gaddrid to-gidderis his hoste, So that he hadd an hundred knyghtes circa  
 and xx<sup>ti</sup>, thre hundrid oper an hors, and CCCC bowmen afoote; and kalendas  
 aboute al-halwyn-tyde wentyn toward lymerike. whan thay wer Octobris.  
 thedyr come, thay hadd gret lette of \* the watyr of the Shynnyfi, [\*Fol. 18  
 that Was Betwen Ham and the Cite, So that thay myght not ouer- a.]  
 wende. the yonglynges—that wel couetos were ham-selſe to juventus,  
 auauunce, har myght to show, and also wynnynge to gette and to tam lucrī  
 haue,—wer sore greuyd that thay myght not ouer to the cite that quam  
 was ham so nyghe, for the watyr that was to depe, and so Streyte laudis  
 rynnynge betwen, and also so stony by the grounde. As the cupida,  
 fryste of ham was abydyng vpon the watyres brynke, was tanquam  
 a knyght amonge ham newly dobbid, fayre and stalwarth, Rey- ad aquas  
 mondes Eme, that was callid Daui the Welsse: throgh gret Tantali  
 couetyse that he hadd, ouer al othyr to wyn the formyste price, he posita.  
 dreddit not to do hym-Selſe to so horribill Perel of deth. he horren-  
 smote his hors with the Sporis, and ouer-threw adoune Into the dumque  
 watyr, that was depe and ful of stonys. the hors was mych and mortis  
 stronge, and come Sone vp abow the watyr with hym. he wissed periculum  
 the hors sydlynge ayeynes the watyr asquynt, and come ouer on the laudis  
 othyr syde, and cried to his men, and seyde that he had a forde amore con-  
 founde. but, for he found no man that hym wolde follow, but temnens.  
 O knyght that [was] callid Geffrey Iudas, he turned agayn by that Cursum  
 Same wey (and the knyght come with hym) holde and Sounde; but itaque  
 the knyght, throgh the Streyt[nys] of the watyr, was caste down, he fluminis  
 and his hors, and drounde to-for ham all / whan Meyler, that lateraliter  
 thedyr was with Reymonde come, this Sawe, he hadd gret envy obliquans.  
 that Such boldnys sholde be tolde of any othyr, and noght of hym: Cursum  
 vpon the hors that hym bare, he Put hym-Selſe in the watyr, and illum, in  
 boldely, wyth-out any ferde, Passid ouer the othyr syde. The redeundo,  
 Citteseynys Saw hym comynge out of the watyr so al-oone: thay amnis im-  
 came agayn hym, some forto kepe hym vpward at his comynge out petuosi  
 of the watyr, forto make hym turne agayn; othyr, to vndo hym violencia  
 ryght in the watyr. The knyght was stronge, and boldely Putte raptum, ad  
 hym vp be-twen two Pere'is:—on oone halue, the wode rynnynge ima sub-  
mersumque  
non re-  
duxit.

A.D. 1175. watyr so grysly ; on othe<sup>r</sup> halue, hys fomen, that *with* stonys & *with*  
 Meiler is fawes hym leyden on, both at þe watyr, & vpon the wallys of the  
 stoned and toun, þat ryght vpon the watyr stode. He pute hys sheld & hys  
 shot at by the Lim- heed wyth the helme ayeys the dyntes, & hertely held hym amydde 4  
 erick men. al þat harme, alone, wythout any helpe, ful unseker on al syde : þe  
 Reimund crye was ful horyble on euery halue. And Reymond, that was at þe  
 last of þe hoste, as hede & lodesman & prynce of al þe hoste, herde  
 the crye, & wyst nat yit what hyt was. He come anon hastily 8  
 thurgh al þe hoste, tyl he come to þe watyr ; & when he sawe hys  
 neuue on that othe<sup>r</sup> syde, so narowe byladde, & on al syde besete  
 so narowe, he hadde grete angwysshe yn hys hert ; & sharpe &  
 calls on his byttyrly bygan to cry to hys felowes : " Men that so stalwarth 12  
 troops to ben of ryght kynd, & yn so fele Anguysshes *with* vs hath your  
 streynth assayed, cometh forth, men ! the way ys open to-for vs,  
 & the ford that noon of vs ne couth, throggh hardynesse of our  
 save y-found. folow we now the herty knyght, that so stronge ys 16  
 Meiler. byladde, & let me hym neuue so neygh to-for our eghen be I-shent ! "

He and all *With* that word, Reymond was þe fyrst that put hym yn þe watyr ;  
 his host & al þe hoste after dyde ham yn aduentur, & yn goddys grace,  
 swim the & wenten our al quyte, bot o knyght that hete Guy, & twey fote- 20  
 Shannon, men. her fomen flowen <sup>2</sup> to-fore hem ynto the Cytè, & thay braken  
 and take yn after, & wan the cytè, & slown ful many of þe cytzeys, &  
 Limerick. dreyntten. Thay fonden ther so myche gold & syluer & other

[¶ Fol. 19 b.] rychesshe, that for that, & eke for the maystre || that god ham sent, 24  
 they told lytel of the perylle & the lostes that thay hadde ther-to-  
 fore. Nowe arede ye, whyche was the hardyest of these thre  
 Which was knyghtes ? whether he, that wythout any man to-fore hym, put  
 the boldest hym yn-to the watyr for to techen al the other the weye ; Ather 28  
 of the he, that, after ensample of hym, & the horyble death of ham that  
 three ? weren I-dreynt to-fore har eyghen, passed the watyr, & al-one sette  
 Davy, so hardyly hys body to mark amonge so many fomen ; Other he,  
 Meiler, or that after ham both, so hardyly & so boldly, *with* al the hoste, put 32  
 Reimund ? hym yn so gret perrylle ? Thus was, as the <sup>3</sup> tyme, lymeryk I-wonne

<sup>1</sup> MS. fawes. Lat. creberrimis lapidum jaculorumque jactibus. Op. v. 322.

<sup>2</sup> MS. slown. Lat. fugatis in urbem hostibus, v. 322.

<sup>3</sup> ? for 'at this.'



watyr so grymly; on the othyr syde, his enemys, that wyth stones A. D. 1175.  
 and with fawis hym leydyn on, both at the watyr, and vpon the creberri-  
 wallis of the toun, that ryght vpon the watyr stode. he Put his mis lapi-  
 shelde and his hede with the sallet<sup>1</sup>, agayn the strokys, and hertely dum jacu-  
 helde hym amynd al the Perelis al-one, with-out any helpe, ful lorumque  
 vnsure on al sydis / the cry was ful horribill on euery syde. And jactibus.  
 Reymond, that was at the laste of the hoste, as hede and ledder and <sup>1</sup> galeam  
 pryunce of al the hoste, herde the cry, and wyst not what hit was. ictibus  
 he come anoone hastily throw al the hoste, til he come to the watyr; clipeumque  
 and whan he Saw his eme on that othyr syde, so narrow besette, praeten-  
 he hadd grete angwysche in his herte; and sharpe and bittyr began dens.  
 to cry to his fellouys, "Men, that So bolde ben, of ryght kynde, and acriter ex-  
 in so many angwyschis with vs hath youre streynth proued, come clamavit:  
 forth, men! they way is oppenyd to-for vs; and the forde that noone Viri, qui-  
 of vs knew, throug boldnys of oure is founde. followe now the herty bus virtutis  
 knyght that so stronge is by-ladde; and lette we neuer so ney to-for vigorem  
 oure eyne be shente!" wyth that worde, Reymonde was the fryste insitum  
 that \* Put Hym in the Watyr; and al the Hoste aftyr did Ham in novimus a  
 aduenture, and in goddys grace, and wenten ouer al quyte, (but natura,  
 o knyght, that was callid Guy, and two footmen,) <sup>2</sup>her enemys quorumque  
 kyledyn to-for hem, into the Cite<sup>3</sup>, and Slowyn ful many of the in tot an-  
 Citteseynes, and dreyntyn<sup>2</sup>. Thay foundyn ther so mych golde and gustis ani-  
 Siluyr, and othyr riches, that for that, and also for the Maystry that mositatis  
 god ham sende, thay tolde lytel of the Perel and the lostis that thay vires ex-  
 hadd ther-to-fore. Now ared þe, whyche was the boldyst of this perti  
 thre knyghtes: Whedyr he that, with-out any man to-for hym, put sumus.  
 hym in the watyr forto techyn al the othyr the wey; Othyr he that, Nota pñ  
 aftyr Ensampill of hym, and the horribil deth of ham that weryn captionem  
 drovnde to-for har eyyn, Passid the watyr, and al-one sette so ciuitatis  
 hardy his body, to marke, amonge so many ennemys; Othyr he that, limeric.  
 aftyr ham both, so hardy and so boldely, with al the hoste, Put hym [\*Fol. 18  
 in so grette Peril. Thus was as this tyme limerike take on b.]

<sup>2-2</sup> fugatis in urbem hostibus, non sine grandi civium strage, muros statim irruerunt; et urbe potiti cum victoria, spoliis plurimum ditati et auro, periculi damna lucri simul et laudis honore compensarunt. v. 322-3.

<sup>3</sup> The English copier of this MS. has jump't from the first 'Cite' to the second—see lines 21, 22 opposite,—and put 'killedyn' = 'alowen' l. 22 opp. for 'flowen,' l. 21 opp.

A. D. 1175. one a tywesday<sup>1</sup>; Watyrford I-wonne one a tywesdaye, & dyuelyn  
 Three Vic- also : noght for o coste was that day awayted *per-to*, bot as hyt  
 tories on a Tuesday, byfelle by cas & by adwentu<sup>r</sup>; & nat wythout skyle, ffor the  
 the day dedicated tywesday, by hethen men day yn the old world, was I-sette to a god 4  
 by hea- that day cleped Mars, & was I-hold god of bataylle; & on that day  
 thens to thay fonden, þat whoso bataylle besoght, he shold spedē better than  
 Mars. yn oper dayes.

## [CHAPTER XXXIX.]

Reimund  
 Fitz-  
 Gerald

was a far-  
 seeing, self-  
 restraind  
 man,

watchful at  
 night,

liberal,

and most  
 skilful in  
 War.

Meiler  
 lookt dark  
 and stern.

Now I wille yowe telle these twey stalwarth knyghtes, 8  
 Reymond & Meyler, whych thay weren. Reymond was  
 a man brod of body,<sup>2</sup> somdel more than metlyche, yolowe he<sup>r</sup> &  
 sam-crysp, grey eyghen & depe, somdel heyghe nose, neb rody,  
 wel I-hewed, glad semblant & cleer<sup>2</sup>; man of moche methe & of 12  
 grete *purueyaunce*; nothyng delycion, nother of mete ne of cloth;  
 heet & cool, al I-lyche, wel he myght suffre; man of mych  
 trauaylle; tholmode yn wreth; as redy he was to *serue*, to queme  
 ham that he was ouer, as to be I-*serued* of ham. Whan he hoste 16  
 ladde, he was so besy about to kepe the host, that oft he left  
 slepe al the nyght, & wandredde about, spyenge & crynge for to  
 look þat noon harme ne shold betyde, & for he wold euer fyrst be  
 redy, yf hyt nede wer. & shortlych to sygge hys thewes & hys 20  
 maneres, he was man free & meke, queynt & *purueynge*; & thegh  
 he wer swyth hardy & wel taght yn wepne, of quenyntyse & of  
 sleight yn syght, & of selth yn bataylle, he passed al other<sup>3</sup>; &  
 thegh he yn both we<sup>r</sup> myche to preyse, he was better leder of 24  
 hoste þan knyght.

## [CHAPTER XL.]

Meyler was a man of durk semblant; blak eghen, &  
 rogh lokynge; sterne semblant; of body, somdel more than  
 methlych; ful stalwarth, wel I-brested, smal mydel<sup>4</sup>, armes & other 28

<sup>1</sup> Later note in margin: 'The<sup>r</sup>-aftyre hyt was I-socoured one a tywsday.

<sup>2-2</sup> *staturaeque paulo plus quam mediocris; capillis flavis et subcrispis, oculis grossis, glaucis et rotundis, naso mediocriter elato, vultu colorato, hilari, ac sereno.* *Op.* v. 323.

<sup>3</sup> *et quanquam animosus plurimum, et armis instructus, prudentia tamen rebus in martiis et providentia praecelebat.* v. 324.

<sup>4</sup> *staturae paulo mediocri plus pusillae; corpore tamen pro quantitatis captu pervalido; pectore quadrato, ventreque substricto.* v. 324.



a tyvysday, therafter hit was socourid on a tywysday, waterford A.D. 1175. was take on a tyvysday, and deuelyn also. noight for oo Purpos *nec per industriam* was that day wayted therto, but as hit befell by case and by *haec, sed casu solo contigisse.* aduenture, and not with-out skylle. For the tyvysday, by hethyn men tyme in the olde worlde, was sette to a god that is callid Mars, and Was holde god of battayle; And on þat day thay fovndyn, that who-so battayl be-soght, he sholde spede bettyr that day than in othyr dayes.

## [CHAPTER XXXIX.]

**N**Owe y wille you telle thes two bolde knyghtes, Reymond *Capitulum xxxix<sup>m</sup>.* and Meyler, whych they weryn // Reymond was a man *Descriptio Reymundi Le gras.* brode of body, somdel more than metlych, yolowe here, and sam-crysp; grey cyyn and depe, Somdel hegh nose, face rody we[1] hewid, glad, semblante, and clere; man of mych mette and of grete Puruey-*Vir modestus et providus, nec cibo nec veste delicatus.* aunce / nothyng delycious, nothyr of mete ne of cloth; <sup>1</sup> hette and colde, al y-lyke, wel he myght suffyr; man of mych trauail; tholmode in wreth; as redy he was to Serve, to queme ham that he was ouer, as to be seruyd of ham <sup>1</sup>. Whan he hadd host, he was so byssy about to kepe the hoste, that ofte he lefte Slepe al the nyght, and Walkid about, Spyenge and crienge forto loke that noone harme ne sholde befall, and for he wolde euer fryst be redy, yf hit nede were. And Sortely to Say his condicionys and his maneres, he was man fre and meke, queynt and Purueyng; and thegh he wer *providus et prudens.* Swyth hardy, and wel taght in wepyn, of queyntyse and of Sleght <sup>2</sup> *multum quidem militis habens, sed plus ducis.* in fygh[t], and of Selth in battayl, he Passid al othyr; and thegh he in both were mych to Preyse <sup>2</sup>, he was bettyr ledder of hoste than knyght.

## [CHAPTER XL.]

**M**Eyler was a man of durkesemblant; <sup>3</sup>blake eyne and rogh *Capitulum xli<sup>m</sup>.* lokyng; sterne Semblante; of body, somdel more than *3 oculis nigris et torris.* metlych, ful bolde, wel brestyde, smale myddyl, armys and othyr

<sup>1-1</sup> *caloris et alioris ei patientia par: vir patiens irae, patiensque laboris. Quibus praesidebat prodesse magis quam praeesse, potiusque minister quam magister videri volens.—Op. v. 324. (No Latin here for 'Whan . . . nede were.')*

lymmes ful bony, more synowy than fleysly. he was knyht ful  
 Meiler was hardy & enuyouse; he was *neuer* aferde ne agryse to begynne  
 never afraid of thyng yn fyght that any man oght done hym on, Ather wyth  
 any enter-prise. otheṛ y-meued<sup>1</sup>. In euery fyght, he was þe fyrst to begynne, & the 4  
 He'd laste that hyt wold leue. Al þe stalwarthnese that any man myght  
 win or die. do, he wold passe, or suffre deth; the maystrye & prys to wynne,  
 But he, and otheṛ deye,—nothyng he ne sette betwene. Of al thyng, bothe  
 all the knights, these knyghtes weṛ to preyse myche wyth-al, neṛ hyt that thay, 8  
 robd the Church. through couetyse, oft byname holy chyrch heṛ ryghtes; bot more  
 harme ys, & mychel to mourne, that defaute hadden meste al ouṛ  
 Praises of knyghtes from the forme begynnyng. What was Robert  
 the Fitz- steuenessoṇ & hys sonnes yn haṛ tyme? what, Moryce fytz 12  
 Stephens, Geraud & hys sones? what, Robert debarry, of whom ys to-fore  
 Fitz- I-told? what, myles de seynt dauy? both Robertes & Moryce  
 Gerald's, neueuen, that *with* þe formest boldly come ynto Irland? what,  
 St. Davids, Robert fyz henry, Meyleres brother? what, Reymond de Cante- 16  
 Fitz- tone? what, Robert de barry the yonge? what, Reymond hues-  
 Henrys, sone? what, otheṛ of the selue gentrye, many & I-nowe, whych  
 Fitzhughs, hyt waṛ stronge to namen al by nam? for no mane ne myght hyt  
 &c. bethynk, bot haṛ stalwarthnesse ne heṛ good deddes shold *neuer* 20  
 The wend out of mynd. Thay weṛ a folke & a kynrede, on two halue,  
 memory of their pluck and grand deeds shall never die out.  
 [\*Fol. 20 & theṛ of wel I-taght yn wepne of myche \* nenbre (?) of kynred  
 a.] & kynd stalwarthnesse euer more to heṛ ende. Whan Reymonde 24  
 A. D. 1175. hadde I-wonne the sytè of lymeryke, he ordeyned & purueyed  
 how the cytè myght be best I-kept; he lete bryng theder  
 Reimund vyttaylle on euery halue grete plente, & lefte þer Myles of seynt  
 victuals Limerick, dauy, *with* fyfty knyghtes & squyers an-hors, & ccc bowmen, 28  
 and leaves his cousin, & *with* þe other parte of the hoste wyth yoy & gladnesse al  
 Miles of harmles turned ayeine ynto leynestre.  
 St. David's, in charge of it.

## [CHAPTER XLI.]

Hervey of The lond was þan yn good pees vnder Reymondes kep-  
 Mont-ynge, so that non Iresshe-man ne durst hym stur to 32  
 maurice mysdom. Heruy of Mommorthy, that euer hadde enuy to hym,  
 envies

<sup>1</sup> Miles animosus et aemulus; nihil umquam abhorrens, quod aggredi quis vel solus debeat vel comitatus, v. 324.



lymes full bony, more synowy than fleshy. he was knyght ful hardy *and* Enuyouse; he was newyre aferde ne agryse to begynne thyng in fyght that any man ogh don hym *on*, \* Althyr wyth othyr ymewyd. In euery fyght, he was the fryst to Begynne, and pe laste hit to leue; al the boldnes that any man myght do, he wolde Passe, or suffyre dethe. The maystry and Prysee to wyn othyr dye, nothyng he ne sette betwen. Of al thyng, both this knyghtes were to Preyse mych wyth-all, nere hit that thay, throgh covetyse, ofte toke holy church ryghtes; but more harme is, *and* gretly to morne, that defaute haddyn meste al our knyghtes frome the fryst begynnyng. / What was Robert Steuenes-sone *and* his Sonny; What, Robert de barry, of whom is to-for tolde; What, Morice fizgeraud *and* his sonnes; What, Miles de seynte dauy; both Robert *and* Morices emys, that wyth the fryst boldely come into Irland; what, Robert fiz-henry, Meyler-is brodyr; What, Reymonde de Canteton; What, Robert de barry the yonge; What, Reymond Hues-Sone; What, othyr of the same gentil, many *and* y-now, whych hit were stronge to telle by name? for no man ne myght hit be-thynke, but har boldenys ne her good dedys shold neuer go out of mynde. <sup>1</sup> They wer a pepill *and* a kynred, on both sydys, be kynde, bolde *and* hardy; on othyr halue of the kynde of Fraunce, *and* ther-of wel taght in wepyn, of mych nembre, of kynred *and* kynde bolde, euer more to her ende <sup>1</sup> // Whan Reymonde hadd take the Cite of lymerike <sup>2</sup>, he ordeynyed *and* Purueyed how the Cite myght be best keppe: he lette brynge thedyr vytayll, on euery halue, grete Plente; *and* lefte ther Miles of Seynt dauy, with fifty knyghtes *and* Squerys an hors, *and* CCC bowmen; *and* wyth the othyr Parte of the hoste, with Ioy *and* gladys, al harmeles, turned agayn Into leynystre.

## [CHAPTER XLI.]

**T**He londe was than in good Pees vndyr Reymondys kepyng, So that non Irysh-man durst not styr hym to mysdone. Heruey of Mounmorthy, that euer had Enuy to hym, ne lefte not,

<sup>1-1</sup> O genus! O gens! gemina natura, a Trojanis animositatem, a Gallis armorum usum originaliter trahens.—*Op.* v. 326.

Descriptio  
Melerij.

[\*Fol. 19  
a.]

inter mor-  
tis et  
martis  
triumphos,  
nihil me-  
dium  
ponens.

Quid alii  
generosi-  
tatis ejus-  
dem quam  
plurimi,  
quibus  
insignia  
singulorum  
gesta  
perennem  
poterant  
laudis  
memoriam  
promereri?  
<sup>2</sup>A. D. 1175.

Capitulum  
xlj<sup>a</sup>.  
Herueius  
de Monte  
Mauricii.

A. D. 1175. ne left nat, for the allyance that was ham betwene, þat he ne  
 Reimund dydde hym al þe harme that he myght, & opynly shewed than  
 Fitz- þe felony that he longe hadde I-borne yn hys hert. He sent ouer  
 Gerald, and sends lies to þe kynge by Messagers, <sup>1</sup> & made hym to vnderstond that 4  
 about him to Henry Reymond was yn yndygnacion of the kynge; & ayeine hys owne  
 II, trouth, so hauteyn I-worth, that he wold al Irland take to hym  
 & to hys <sup>1</sup>; &, for hys lesynges shold þe bettyr be y-leued, feel  
 þynges he made hym to vndrestond, & so fayr hyt slyked wyth 8

which the  
 King  
 believes,  
 and des-  
 patches  
 Messengers  
 to bring  
 Reimund  
 back.

Nota de  
 aduentu  
 poweren-  
 ter in hi-  
 berniam.

Hervey de  
 Mont-  
 maurice

was as fair  
 without, as  
 he was foul  
 within.  
 He was  
 lecherous,  
 incestuous,  
 envious,  
 trea-  
 cherous,

a coward,  
 a braggart,  
 and a liar.

falsnesse, that hyt somet sothe, al that he seyde. The kynge—as  
 ofte manere ys that lydder tales ben bettyr I-leued, & lenger  
 I-thoght, that good—he beleued þe fals mannys talys & wryynges,  
 & sent yn-to Irland four Messagers, that ys to wytten, Robert 12  
 the power, Osbern of herford, Wylliam Berynger, & Adam of  
 yarmemouth, of whych the twey shold abyde with the Erle yn  
 Irland, & þe other tweyn shold wende ayeine ynto England wyth  
 Reymond, as þe kynge hym hadde COMMAWNDET. 16

#### [CHAPTER XLII.]

**H**eruy was a man fayr & lygne, eyghen grey & depe,  
 ouelyche lokynges, fayr semblaunt, of fayr spech & wordes  
 wel besete; of body more than methlych, of al lymmes ful  
 becomly; bot as fayr & as becomly as he was wytout, as lydder 20  
 & as fals of many maner lastes he was wyt-In; ffor, fro the tyme  
 that he was chyld, he yaf hymself to lecherye; & nat only to many  
 sengle wommen; bot he ne synned neþer spousbrych ne syblynges;  
 he was onful & bakbyter, <sup>2</sup> wreyer, false & traytu, duble of 24  
 tonge & nothyng stydfaste, butt yn <sup>2</sup> falsnesse hys speche thoght  
 as thogh hyt wer hony & mylk out of hys mouthe, bot euer hyt  
 was I-meygnet with attyr at þe ende. Som tym he was stalwarth,  
 as to knyght longeth; bot aftyr, he yaue hym selue more to 28  
 cowerdyse than to knyghthode; & more he couth hym maken,  
 thañ he was worth <sup>3</sup>; hegh of berynge yn hous, & noght of plente;  
 of mych speche, & lytel sothnesse.

<sup>1-1</sup> illi sinistre rerum eventum indicarit: asseverans quoque Reimundum,  
 contra regis honorem, et fidem debitam, non tantum Limericum, verum etiam  
 Hiberniam totam, sibi suisque jam occupare proculdubio proposuisse.—*Op.* v. 327.

<sup>2-2</sup> These words are in a different hand.

<sup>3</sup> MS. wroth.



for the alyaunce that was ham betwen, that he ne did hym al the harme that he myght, and opynly shewed than the felony that he longe thocht in herte. he sende ouer to the kynge by messangerys, and did hym to vndyrstonde, that Reymonde was in indignacion of the kynge; and agayn his owyn throuth, so Hauteyn I-worth, that he wolde al Irland take to hym and to his. And, for his lesyngys sholde the bettyr be belewid, <sup>1</sup>many lesyngys he made hym to vndyrstonde; and So fayre hit glosyd with lesyngis, that hit Semyd trouth, al that he sayde <sup>1</sup>. The kynge,—as ofte maner is, that fals talys ben bettyr belewid, and lengyr thocht<sup>2</sup>, than good,—he belewid the fals manes talys and accusynge, And Sende Into Irland foure Messagers, that is to wittyn, Robert de Power, Osbern of Herforde, Willam Berynger, And adam of Iarnemouth<sup>3</sup>; of the whych, two sholde abyde with the Erle in Irland, and the othyr two sholde wende agayn in-to England, with reymond, as the kynge hym hadd comandyd.

## [CHAPTER XLII.]

**H**Eruey was a man fayre and lygne, eyghyn grey and depe<sup>4</sup>, lolych lokinge, fayre semblant, of fayre Speche and wordys wel besette\* of body more than metlych, of al Lymmys wel becomly; But as fayre and as Becomly as he was wyth-out, As wickyd and as fals of many maner lastes he was wyth-In. // Fro the tyme that he was chylde, he yaued hym-Selfe to lechery, and not only to many Syngyl Women<sup>5</sup>, but he ne synnyd neuer spousebrich ne siblynges; he was onfull and bacbyter, wreyer, fals and trechoure, doubill of tonge, and nothyng stydfast but in falsnesse; his spech, as hit were honny and mylke out of the mouth, but euer hit was medlid with wenym at the Ende. Sometym he was bolde, as longyth to a knyght; but aftyr, he yafe hym [more] to cowardyse than to knyght-hode; and more he made of hym-Selfe than he was worth; hey of berynge in house, and not of plente; of myche speche, and lytyl trouth.

*Et ut hoc  
stigmatum  
delator  
regis  
auribus  
tutius et  
probabilius  
praesen-  
taret.  
2 memoria  
diuturnior.  
Nota de  
aduenta  
Power-  
encium in  
Hiber-  
niam.*

*Capitulum  
xliijm.  
Descriptio  
Heruei.  
[\*Fol. 19  
b.]  
promi-  
nentibus  
aspectu  
amabili.  
5 nec  
incestus  
ullos, nec  
adul-  
teriam  
vitans. Vir  
invidus,  
delator, et  
duplex;  
vir sub-  
dolus, et  
facetus, et  
fallax.*

<sup>1-1</sup> ad votum effectui mancipandum, in Bragmannorum morem conjuratas ad hoc catervas Reimundum asserit composuisse. v. 327.

<sup>3</sup> Robertum Poerium, et Osbertum de Herlotera, Gulielmum de Bendinges, et Adam de Gernemes. v. 328.

## [CHAPTER XLIII.]

A. D. 1176.

Reimund  
hears that  
Donnell  
O'Brien,  
King of  
Limerick,  
is besieging  
the English  
there.

Reimund  
marches  
for  
Limerick,  
[\* Fol. 20  
b.]

with  
McMur-  
rough  
of Okensely  
and King  
Donnell of  
Ossory.  
The men  
of Thomond  
barricade  
the Pass  
of Cashel  
against the  
English.

K. Donnell  
of Ossory  
appeals to  
the Anglo-  
Irish force  
to fight  
bravely.

Reymond hym dyght for to wende ynto England, as the  
kynge hym commandet; & nothyng abode, bot wynd &  
wedyr at the see: come Messagers, hastyly I-sent from the meygne  
of lymeryke, & tolden that Obreen, the kyng of thomond, was 4  
belyggynge lymeryke with ful grete hostes; &, for pey hadden  
all the wytaylle pat Reymond ham lefte & eke that thay hadden  
ther-aftyꝛ I-puchassed yn the wenter-tyme, al I-spendet, me shold  
ham hastyly send socoure. The Erle was ful anguysshous ham 8  
for to socour, & spake per-of to the meygne, & besoght ham wel  
yonre (yorne?) theder to go; bot thay war so wroth & so sory  
for Reymondes wendynge away, that euerychon, with oo mouth,  
for-soken alout, that, without Reymond, for nothyng theder thay 12  
nold wend. The Erle toke consaylle heꝛ, of the kynges messagers;  
&, for the thyng was yn grett perryll, at pe end, throgħ bys  
besechynge of the erle & eke of ham, Reymond turned ayeyne  
the baneres toward \* lymeryke. And as thay come toward 16  
Casshel wyth the hoste,—as myght be, syxty knyghtes, & two  
hundret squyers & thre hundret bowmen, wythout Iresshe-men  
that comen eke wyth ham, as Macmorgħ of okensely & dofnild  
of osserye,—me come to ham, & told ham, fore that pay of 20  
thomoñ hadde I-lefte pe sege of lymeryke, & wer I-comen ayeyns  
ham, to kepe ham yn the paas of Casshel; & thegħ the paas  
was stronge yn hymselfe, thay kesten adoun tren, & made dyches  
thaꝛ towꝛ, & hegges vpon, for noon horsmañ ne shold ouer wend. 24  
Whan thay wereñ negħ to the pas I-comen, Reymond deled the  
hoste a thre. & downyld, pe kyng of Ossery, that ful mychell  
hated, & foman was to, ham of thomon, saw pe Englyshe hoste—  
thegħ thay fewe weꝛ—of ful good herte, & wel & semly I-wepned, 28  
for thay shold be pe trustyer, & the better herte haue to hem, &  
seyd, “Men, that pys lond wyth stalwarthnesse haue I-wonne,  
assayleth today styfly youꝛ fomen! ffor yf, ye, as youꝛ won ys,  
ouercometh, & the maystry haue; ouꝛ sparthes, forth wyth your 32  
swerdys, ouꝛ fomen smertly shulle folowen aftyr; & yf ye—that  
god forbede!—ben ouercome, sykeꝛ be ye that we forth with ouꝛ  
fomen wyllen turne vpon yowe. Take hede, knyghtes, & vnder-  
stondeþ, youꝛ townes & your castels ben welle ferꝛ hennes, & 36



## [CHAPTER XLIII.]

**R**Eymond made hym redy to go into England as the *Capitulum*  
 kyng hym commaundid *and* nothyng abode but wynde *xlili<sup>m</sup>.*  
*and* wedyr at the See. Come messagers hastely sende frome *A. D. 1176.*  
 the meny of lymerike, *and* toldyn that Obreen, the kyng of  
 Thomonde, was besegyn lymerike with ful grete hostis; and, for *quoniam*  
 thay haddyn al the vytail that Reymonde with ham had lefte, *omnia ali-*  
*menta, tam*  
*ibi inventa*  
*quam at-*  
*tracta,*  
*brumali*  
*tempore*  
*consump-*  
*serant.*  
*se illuc*  
*ituros*  
*absque*  
 and also that thay purchasid sithenys, thay had al spende, And  
 that thay sholde hastely sende ham Socoure. The Erle was ful  
 angwyschous ham for-to socoure *and* Spake therof to the meny  
 and besoght ham wel ofte thedyr to go, but thay were so wroth  
 and So sory for Reymondes goyng away, thay euerchone wyth o  
 woyse forsokyn al, that wyth-out Reymonde for no-thing thedyr  
 thay wolde goo. / The Erle toke consayl her-of of the kynges  
 messangers, and for the thyng was in gret Perel. at the Ende  
 throw besechyng of the Erle *and* also of ham Reymond turned  
 agayn the baners toward lymerike. And as thay come to-ward  
 cassel with the hoste—as myght be, Sixti knyghtys *and* two hundrid  
 Squyeres *and* iijc bowmen, without Iryssh-men that comyn also  
 with ham, as Macmurgħ of O-kensley and dofnyld of Ossery—thay  
 come to ham, *and* tolde ham, <sup>1</sup>fore that thay of Thomon hadd lefte  
 the sege of lymerike, *and* were comyn agaynes ham, to kepe ham in  
 the Paas of Casshel; and thegh the Paas was stronge in hym-Selfe,  
 thay castyn adoun trees, *and* made dichis thartowre, *and* heggys  
 vpon, for noone hors-man ne sholde ouer-wende. When thay wer  
 ney to the Paas y-come, Reymond delid the host a thre. And  
 downyld, the kyng of Ossory, that gretly hatid, *and* enemy was  
 to ham of Tomonde, Saw the Englyssh host (thegh thay few were)  
 of ful good herte, *and* wel semely wepenyd; and for thay sholde be  
 the trustier, and the bettyr herte haue to them; *and* sayde, “Men,  
 that wyth boldnes this londe haue conquerid, assaylyth this day  
 styfly youre enemys! For an ye, as youre wone is, ouercomyth, and  
 the maystry haue, our Sparrys, forth with youre Swerdys, oure  
 enemys smyrtly shull follow aftyr. And yf ye (that god forbede!)  
 ben ouer-come, syckyr be ye <sup>2</sup>that we forth with oure enemys wil  
 turne vpon yow. Take hede, knyghtys, and vndyrstondyth, youre  
 \* tounys and your castelys Ben wel ferre Hennes, and the flyght ful

[\*Fol. 20  
 a.]

A. D. 1176. the flyght ful longe, & ouȝt maner ys, to helpe ham that ben omost,  
 & folowe the fleynge. trysteth wel to vs; bot no lenger than the  
 ouer hand ys your." ¶ Whane thys was yseyd, Meyleȝ, pat was  
 yn the formeste of the host, smertly spronge out, as sparke out  
 of fyr; & al the host aftyr stalwartly com to the pas; & nat  
 wyt-out gret slaght of ham that wythstoden, opened the way,  
 & wentten ouer an estre euen, & a thrydde ester day, that ys to  
 wentteñ, on a tywesday, as at the other tyme. Also nowē, the  
 host come ynto lymeryk, Reymond lete ryght & areȝ that, throgħ  
 the sege of haȝ fomen, was I-wasted & destrued. & nat lange  
 ther-aftyr, he held parlement wyth the kyng of Connaght & the  
 kyng of Thomon, bot yn oo day bot nat yn o place; ffor the kyng  
 of Connaght held hym yn the watyr of the shynen, yn a myche  
 logħ, yn botys, & the kyng of Thomon was thaȝ negħ yn a  
 wodde. Reymond was betwene two, at kyldalo, as myght by,  
 syxten myle frome lymeryk. Ther was the parlement so fer forth  
 I-dryuen, that euery of ham delyuered to Reymond good hostages,  
 & othes many-fold sworne hold & trewe, yn good pees for to hold  
 euer este to the kyng & to hys. Whan thys was I-done, &  
 Reymond turned ayeyne wyth hys hostages to lymeryke, þe  
 prynde of desmond, Dermot Maccarthy, sent by messagers to  
 Reymond, & besoght hym that he ayeyne hy[s] eldeste sore that  
 hete Cormoc Olethañ—tha[t] wel negħ hym out of hys kyngedome  
 I-putte—hym, as the kynges trew man, shold helpe; &  
 large yftes he byhete, both to Reymond & the meygne, wyth that  
 that thay wold hym helpe. Reymond, as mañ that had nat loth  
 wynnynges, ne hymself to anaunce, spake her-of to hys falawes,  
 & thay alle graunted to doñ as he wold, & turned the baners  
 toward the Contreys of Cork. by weyes as thay wentteñ, thay  
 name many prayes, wher-of the meynge was ful wel apayed, &  
 mych ther-of was oft I-sent to lymeryk, so longe, that throgħ help  
 of Reymonde, Dermot recouered al hys kyngedome vpon hys sone  
 —of whyche he was negħ I-pute owt:—the sone was I-take &  
 delyuered to the fadyr, & he hym pute yn pryssoun, & nat longe  
 ther-aftyre hym be-lete take out of pryssoun, & smyth of hys  
 hede.

Meiler  
Fitz-  
Henry  
leads the  
attack, and  
forces the  
Pass on  
Easter Eve  
April 3.  
They enter  
Limerick,  
and repair  
it.  
Reimund,  
at

Killaloe,

induces the  
Irish rebels  
to swear  
allegiance  
to Henry  
II.  
He then  
agrees to  
help Der-  
mot Mac-  
Carthy  
against his  
son Cor-  
mack.

Reimund  
marches  
to Cork,  
and beats  
Cormack,

who is put  
in prison,  
and then  
beheaded.



Longe. <sup>1</sup> And oure maner is, to helpe ham that ben omyste, and follow the fleynge. trystyth wel to vs; but no longyr than ye haue the ouer hande" / Whan this was sayde, Meyler, that was in the formyst of the hoste, smyrtly styrted out, as sparke of fyre; and al the host aftyr, boldely come to the Paas; and not wyth-out gret slaght of ham that wythstodyn, openyd the way, and wentyn ouer an Estre-evyn, and the thyrd Estyr-day, that is to say, on a tyvysday, as at the othyr tyme. also now þe hoste come to lymerik, Reymond lette rere that throw the sege of har enemys was wastid and destrued. and not lange ther-aftyr, he helde Parlement wyth the kynge of Connaght and the kynge of Thomonde, both in oo day, but not in oo Place; For the kynge of Connaght helde hym in the watyr of shynnyyn, in a myche logh, in botis, and the kynge of Thomonde was thar negh in a wodd. Reymonde was betwen two at kyldalo, as myght by, syxtene mile from lymerik. Ther was the Parlement So fer forth drywen, that euery of ham delyuerid to Reymond good hostagis, and othis manyfolde Sworn, holde and trew, in good Pees forto holde euer aftyr to the kynge and to his. Whan this was don, and Reymond turned agayn with his hostagis to lymerike, the Prince of Desmonde, Dermot Maccarthy, sende by messagers to Reymonde, and besoght hym that he-agayn his eldyst Sone that hete Cormok Olethan, that wel ney hym out of his kyngdome Putte,—hym, as the kynges trew man, sholde helpe; and large yftys he Promysyd, both to Reymond and the meny, yf thay wolde hym helpe. Reymond, as man that had no loth wynnynge, ne hym-Selfe to auctorice, Spake herof to his fellowis; and thay al graunted to do as he wolde, and turned the baners toward the contreis of Corke. <sup>2</sup> by weyes as thay wentyn, thay rerid many Prayes, Wherof the meny was ful wel appayed and wel arrayed, and mych therof was ofte sende to lymerik. So longe, that by the helpe of Reymond, Dermot recoverid al his kyngdome vpon his sone, of whom he was ney Putt out / the Sone was take, and delyuerid to the Fadyr; and he Putt hym in prysone. and not longe ther-aftyr, hym he lette take out of pryson, and smyte of his hede.

*Nota quod hibernici non sunt amici nisi quandiu forma faciet.*

*<sup>1</sup> Et nos victoribus semper adhaerentes, solum persequimur fugientes. De nobis itaque confidite, sed victores.*

*fidelitatem Anglorum regi et suis de cetero iniolabiliter exhibendam sacra-mentis corpora-liter prae-stitis renouaverit.*

*<sup>2</sup> Multis itaque tum praedis in brevi quam stipendiis, familia in partibus illis abunde refecta, et alimen-torum copia Li-mericum abinde persaepe transmissa.*

A.D. 1176.

[CHAPTER XLIV.]

[Fol. 21a.]

Reimund  
Fitz-  
Gerald  
hears from  
his wife  
Basile,

that her  
bad tooth  
is out,

i.e. that  
Earl Stri-  
guil is  
dead, tho'  
his death  
is kept  
secret.

Reimund's  
Council  
advise him  
to quit  
Limerick,  
and take  
his men to  
Leinster.

So he com-  
mits Lim-  
erick to  
O'Brien,  
who swears  
to keep it  
in peace;  
but at once  
breaks his  
oath, and  
destroys  
the Bridge.

The while that Reymond was in this maner yn  
desmon, come a Messenger to hym ffrom dyuelyn,  
hastly I-sent, & broght hym a *lettre* from basile, hys wyf; bot  
he that hyt broght, wyst nat what hyt was. Reymond hadde 4  
wyth hym a clerk that he wel tryst to; he lete hym rede the  
*lettre priuelych*, that thus myche hym seyde: "To hyre leue  
lord & hyr spouse Reymond, hys basyle sendeth gretynge. as to  
hyr selue, wyt thou, lef man, that the grete chek-toth that so sore 8  
me oke, ys I-falle. Wherefore, yf thou any thyng reche of thy  
self, other of me, ne leue nat to come hastily to me." Whan  
Reymond thys herd, he vnderstode that the mych toth that hyr  
was I-falle, betokned þe Erles deth; for he lefte hym ful seke at 12  
dyuelyne, whan he parted from hym. And thegh he lange ther-to-  
fore was ded, for drede of Iresshe-men he was for-hold tyl  
Reymondes comes, & the meygnees, ynto leynestre. Reymond  
turned sone to lymeryke. & þe sorow that was yn hys hert 16  
*with-yn*, he, for al hyt, as myche as he myght, *with* fayr semblant  
makyng *with-out*; & ful fewe men, he shewed the aduentur that  
so sodeynly was byfalle; & of ham that mooste good kouth, he  
besoght consaylle & rede, what was ham to done. Than was 20  
comenly haȝ rede such: "what fore the erles deth, what for  
Reymondes wendinge out of the lond, that the sytē of lymeryke,  
that was so ferr, & amonge so many enemyes, me shold leue voyde;  
& al the meygne holy led ynto leynestre, þe townes vpon þe see 24  
& the castels for to kepe." Reymond, thegh hym loth weȝ,  
graunted thys, & stod to haȝ rede; &, for he ne fond none that  
after hym wold ther abyde, he betoke Obreen, the kyng of  
thomōn, the Cytē to kepe as the kynges baroun, & toke of hym 28  
este newe hostages, & many new othes I-swore, the toun harmles  
for to kepe, & the pees trewly for to hold. Vpon thys forward,  
thay wentten al out of the Cytē, & lefte Obreen & hys men *with-yn*;  
& vnnethes thay war I-passed the brygge, that þe tother end nas 32  
I-broken anoon ryght behynd ham, & þe toun, that wel & fast was  
I-walled, & wel I-byld *with* good housses I-herlerged o wyttaylle  
that on euery half pether was I-broght well I-stoffe, nat *without*



## [CHAPTER XLIV.]

A.D. 1176.

The while that Reymond was in this maner in  
 desmonde, come a Messenger to hym frome deuelyn,  
 Hastly sende, and broght hym a lettyr frome basyle, his wyfe;  
 but he that hit broght, wyst not what hit was. Reymond hadd  
 with hym a clerke that he trust wel to. / He mad him rede the  
 lettyr priuely, þat thus mych hym sayde: "To hir welbelowid lorde  
 and Spouse, Reymond, his basylle sendyth gretynge. as to hyre-  
 Selfe, wit thou, lefe man, that the grete chektoth that so sore me  
 grewid, is falle; Werfor, yf ye rekyth any-thinge of youre-Selfe,  
 othyr of me, ne leue not to come hastely to me." When Reymond  
 this herde, he vndyrstod by the mych toth, that \* Hyr was fall,  
 Betokenyd the Erllys deth; for He Lefte Hym ful seke at deuelyn  
 when he lefte hym. And thegh he lang therto-for was ded, for  
 fere of Irysh-men, he was for-holde tyl Reymondes comys and  
 the menyys, in-to leynystere. Reymond<sup>r</sup> turned sone to lymerike.  
 and the Sorrow that was in his herte wythin, <sup>1</sup>he, for al hit, as  
 mych as he cowthe, made fayre semblant without <sup>1</sup>; and to ful few  
 men he shewid the aduenture that so sodeynly was byfall; and of  
 ham that moste good couth, he besoght consayl and rede, what was  
 ham to done. Than was comynly har consail Such, "what for the  
 Erllys deth, what for Reymondys <sup>2</sup> wendinge out of the londe, that  
 the Cite of lymerik, that was so ferre, and amonge so many enemys,  
 that they sholde leue woyde; and al the meny, holy lede Into  
 leynystere, the toynes and the castelys vpon the See forto kepe."  
 Reymond, thegh loth hit was to hym, gravntyd this, and stode to  
 har rede; and, for he ne found none that aftyr hym wolde byde  
 there, He yaue Obreyne, the kynge of Thomonde, the Cite to kepe  
 as the kynges barovne, and toke of hym, fryst, new hostagis, and  
 many new othys Sware, the touffe harmles forto kepe, and the Pees  
 trewely forto hold / Vpon thys, thay wentyn al out of the Cite,  
 and lefte obreen and his men within / and vnnethys thay were  
 Passyd the brige, that the othyr ende nas brokyn anoone ryght  
 behynde ham; and the toun, that wel and faste was wallid, <sup>3</sup>and wel  
 bylid with good houses, I-herbergid of wytalys, that on euery halfe  
 thedyr was broght wel Stuffid, not wythout gret Sorynys of herte,

Capitulum  
xliij<sup>m</sup>.  
nota De  
morte  
comitis  
Richardi.

quod dens  
ille molaris  
et magnus,  
qui tantum  
mihi dolo-  
erat, jam  
cecidit.

[\*Fol. 20  
b.]

usque ad  
Reimundi  
famili-  
tum.  
exte-  
riore vultus  
hilaritate  
valde dissi-  
mulans.

totamque  
familiam  
integre.

Duvenaldo  
Tuketmo-  
niae prin-  
cipi.

<sup>3</sup>aedificiis  
decenter  
ornatam,  
alimentis  
undique  
congestis  
plane  
refertam.

<sup>2</sup> de[parting?] at first written here.

A. D. 1176. grette sorynesse of hert, thay sawe on fouȝr partyes I-sette aȝyȝ; O'Brien & thys the traytour Obren shewed openlych how me shal tryst  
burns & Iryshemen trouth. ¶ Reymond, with all the meygne, wentt hym  
Limerick. tho to dyuelyȝ; & the Erles body, that by hys byddyng was I-kept 4  
Richard Fitz-Gilbert, vnburyed, [was buryed] yn the modyr-church of þe Trynyte, to-for  
Earl of Striguil, is the swete rode, by procuryng of sent laurence, that was yn that  
buried. tyme erchebysshophe of dyuelyȝ.

## [CHAPTER XLV.]

Henry II's  
Commissioners go  
back to  
him.

Nota the  
goodnesse  
of Geraud.

Henry II  
sends Wm.  
Fitz-Aude-  
line and  
others to  
Ireland.

[\*Fol. 21  
b.],

Reimund  
yields all  
his towns  
and host-  
ages.

His fine  
retinue  
excites  
Fitz-Aude-  
line's envy,

and he  
always  
works  
against  
Reimund  
and the  
Geraldines.

Afȝyȝ that þe Erle was dede, the kynges mes- 8  
sagers, that weredn afȝyȝ Reymond I-come, vpon newe  
aduenturs toke new consaylle. Thay leste Reymond keper of  
Ireland, & wentten ham ynto Engeland hastily to the kyng, &  
told hym of the erles deth, & the state of the lond. The kyng 12  
sent than ynto Irlande, Wylliam aldelinesesone, procuratour of the  
lond, with x knyghtes of hys owȝd priue meygne; & with hym, Ihoȝn  
de Courcy with other x; Robert steuenessone & Myles de Cogaȝn,  
pat al two yeȝ yn engeland & yn gascoyne nobly hadden with the 16  
kyng I-be, come þaȝn ynto Irland with xx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes. Tythynges  
come to Reymond that thay waȝ arryued; & he anoon-ryght went  
ayeȝns ham with mych gladnesse \* & fayr felawshyppe of knyghtes  
to Weynsford. Ther he yeld vp to Wylliam, as to Seneschal from 20  
the kyng I-sent, al the kynges townes, & hys castels, & al the  
ostages of Irland. Wylliam sawe Reymond wyth so many & so  
fayr yonglynges bylad, & beheld Meylleȝ & other knyghtes of hys  
kyn, fayr & rychely y-wepned of o maner vepne, wel thrytty, vpon 24  
ful fayȝ hors, sheldes about haȝ nekkes, & spers yn hand, pleyng  
to-geddre ynto al the felde: he turned hym to hys men, & seyde al  
soft, "Thys pryd shal be pute In, ar hyt be lange, & þese  
sheldes to-dreued." Ffro that tyme euer afȝyȝ, these & meste al 28  
otheȝ proc[ur]atours yn Irland, as thoght hyt weȝ by on oth  
to-geddre I-swore, throgȝ ond & enuy ne stynt neuer to besech  
Reymond & Meilleȝ, Robertes sones, & Moryce, & al that kynrede,  
al þe enuy that pay myght & durst; for þys ys euermore haȝ 32  
wayte & haȝ aduentur: euer whaȝn grete nede byfelle yn tyme of  
weȝ, thay war lef & derward, & the formeste to I-clepped, & to  
bataylle, throgȝ hardynes, formest & fyrst redy; whaȝn non ned was,



thay Saw on foure Parties sette a fyre. And thus the tray-toure A.D. 1176.  
 Obreyne shewid opynly how we sholde trust to Iryssh-men trouthe // *corpus*  
 Reymond, with al the meny, went to deuelyn; and the Erlis body *comitis*  
 that by his byddyng was kepte vnburiyd [was buried] in þe modyr *quod . . .*  
 church of the trynyte, to-for the Swete Rode, by procuryng of *fuerat re-*  
 Seynt laurance, that was in that tyme Archebyschope of Deuelyn. *servatum*  
*. . . in ec-*  
*clesia . . .*  
*est tumu-*  
*latum.*

## [CHAPTER XLV.]

Aftr that the Erle was dede, the kynges mes- *Capitulum*  
 sangers, that weryn aftr Reymond come, vpon new *xlv<sup>m</sup>.*  
 aduentures toke new consail. Thay lefte Reymond keper of *Nota the*  
 Irland, and thay went into Englande hastely to the kyng, and tolde *goodnys*  
 hym of the Erle-is deth, and the state of the londe // The kyng *of GERAL-*  
 sende than into Irland, Willam Aldelins Sone, Procuratoure of the *dynes.*  
 londe, x. knyghtis of his owyn Pryue meny; And with hym Ihon de *Nota de*  
 Cursi, with othyr x; Robert Steuen-es [sone] and Miles de cogan, *adventu*  
 that al two yere in England and in gascoyn nobely haddyn with *Willelmi*  
 the kyng be come than Into Irland with xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtis. Thythynges *Addellini*  
 come to Reymond that thay ware londid; and he anone-ryght went *flij, et*  
 agaynes ham with mych gladnys, and fayre felochipp of knyghtes, *Iohannis*  
 to weysforde. Ther he yaued to Willam, as to Senescal from the *de Cursi,*  
 kyng sende, al the kynges townes, and his castelis, and al the *in Hiber-*  
 hostages of Irland. Willam Saw Reymond with so many and so *niam.*  
 fayre yonglynges \* Bylad, And Be-Helde Meyler and Othyr *<sup>1</sup> Super-*  
 Knyghtes of His Kyn, fayre and riche wepenyd of o maner *biam*  
 wepyn, wel xxx<sup>ti</sup>, vpon ful fayre hors, sheldys aboute har neckys, *hanc, in*  
 and sperris in honde, Pleyng to-gadderes in-to al the feldys. *brevi com-*  
 He turned hym to his men, and sayde al softe, "This Pryde shal *primam, et*  
 be Put In<sup>1</sup> ar hit be lange, and this sheldys to-dreued." Fro that *cliceos*  
 tyme euer aftr, and thes and most al othyr procuratoures in *istos*  
 Irland, as thegh hit were by one othe to-giddy Sworne, throgh *dispergam.*  
 hate and envy ne stynte thay neuer to malyngne agaynys Reymond *[\*Fol. 21*  
 and meyler, Robert-es Sonnes and Morices, and al the kynred of *a.]*  
 geraldines, al the envy that thay myght and durste; for this is *Nota de*  
 euer-more har abydyng and har aduenture: Euer whan grete *geraldinis.*  
 nede bifel in tyme of werre, thay wer lese and derwarde, and the *Nota*  
 fryst to be callid for bolnys, and to battail fryst redy; whan no *causam*  
*invidie*  
*inter*  
*aldelini*  
*filiu et*  
*geraldinos.*  
*Semper in*  
*armata*  
*militia*  
*cart.*

A. D. 1176. anon̄ thay weŕ loth, & I-pute abake; heŕ felowshyp I-left yñ yurne  
to harme. Na the wodde of haŕ gentryce, throgh non enuy ne  
myght neuer be I-rotet; for euer ham spryngyth new spourges, of  
whych the myght yn the lond nys nat lytelle. Who beth that 4  
Yet the Geraldines won and kept Ireland.  
kepeþ the contreys? the Geraudynes: Who throgh þurleth the  
hostes? the Geraudynes: Who ben that fomen adredeth? þe  
Geraudines: Who ben that enuy bachyteth? þe Geraudines.  
Had justice been done them, they'd have held the land in peace.  
Hade thay I-found prynce yn any tyme, that haŕ stalwarthnesse 8  
ham had y-yold, as thay worthy weŕ, yn good pees & stydfast  
hadden I-broght the state of Irland. Bot thegh thay nededen  
neuer so well, thay ne hade bot lytele thanke, other̄ noon; haŕ  
trauaylle yuel I-yold, & ouerthrow yn haŕ goodnesse, & mysbeleue 12  
& bachyttyng of haŕ stalwarthnesse; & to other̄, the prynces  
trysten, wyt whych no staluarthnese was I-founde, ne no power  
hadde well to done without helpe & socouŕ of ham. And also  
Aldelinese-sone, at hys comynge ynto Irland, he wente from toun to 16  
toun vpon̄ þe see, & progh soght the Cyttes ther̄ plente was of  
mete & drynke; bot the monteynes, & þe londes with-In, nold he  
neuer come negh. gold & syluyre, whaŕ-of mych plente was yn þe  
lond, wel hungrylych he gaderede, to helpe-with pledynge & 20  
pullynge of pees men, & nogh of theues ne of reuers. In that  
tyme, about myd-heruest, Moryce fyzt-Geraud deyd, nat without  
gret Sorynesse of al hys, & mych harme & lost to al Irland; ffor  
he was a man methefull, suttell, & stalwarth: treweŕ man ne 24  
stydfaster mañ, ne left he non yn Irland. ¶ Wyllyam adelinese-  
sone ran Moryce sones to harme anon, & ne stynt neuer tyl he  
hadde I-take of hym þe Castel of Wykelowe wyth falsnesse. of  
Reymond & Robert steuenesse-sone, he name the londes that thay 28  
hadden yn the vale of dyuelyn & yn Ophelayn; & other̄ that  
hadden londes yñ pes, he name thay londes to the kynges behoud,  
& delyuered ham londes furthyre yñ marche, & yn perryll nexth  
haŕ fomen: al with vnryght, & by hys owne wyll; ffor ther̄ ys 32  
nothyng so bold ne so kene as ys that mañ that ys of noght  
I-come, Whan he ys an-hegh I-broght, & vnkyndely I-sette yn  
maystry. ¶ Wyllyam was a man mych of body, & of makynge;  
[\*Fol. 22 a.] \* good met-yeuer; fre & corteys by semblant; bot al that he dyde any 36



nede was anoon they were hatyd *and* Putte abake, her fellochip A.D. 1176.  
left *and* turne to harme. // Na the wodd of har gentryce, throug Nota de geraudynes.  
non envy ne myght, neuer be y-roted, for euer ham spryngyth  
new Spourgis, of whych the myght in the londe is not lytell.  
What ben thay that kepyth the contrayes? the Geraudynes. Who Qui sunt qui penetrant hostis penetrantia?  
throw thurlyth the hostis? the geraudines. Who ben that Enemys  
dreddyth? the geraudynes. What ben thay that envy bachityth?  
the geraudines. Hade thay found prynce in any tyme that har Note the harde adventure of Geraldines.  
streynth ham wolde yeue, as thay worthy wer to haue / in good  
pees *and* stydfast thay haddyn broght the state of Irland. But  
thegh thay euer so wel had done, thay hadd but lytyll change,  
or noone, for her laboure. But euer thay profited in har goodnys;  
and mysbeleue and bachitynge, of hare boldnys. And to othyr  
the Pryncis trystyn, wyth whych no boldnys was founde, ne  
Power had wel to do / *with-out* helpe and Socoure of ham //  
And also Aldelines Sonne, at his comynge into Irland, he went  
from toun to toun vpon the See-syde, *and* throw soght the Citteis Nota quo tempore mortuus erat ille Mauricius geraldii filius.  
ther Plente was of mette and drynke; but the montaynys *and* the  
londe *with-In*, he wolde neuer come ney. / golde *and* syluer, wherof  
mych Plente was in the lond, wel hungryly he gadderid to-giddy,  
*with* pledynge and Pullynge of peese men, *and* not of theuys ne of  
Robers. In pat tyme about Mid-heruest, Morice fiz-geraud deyed, Descriptio Mauricii fiz gerald.  
not *with-out* grette Sorrow of al his, *and* mych harme and lostes to  
al Irland // For he was a man meteful, Suttyl *and* bolde: trewer  
man, ne stydfastyr man, ne lefte he none in Irland // Willam  
Aldeliny sone ran Morices sone to harme, *and* styntid neuer til he  
hadd take of hym the castel of Wickelow wyth falsnes. Of fraudulenter eripuit.  
Reymond *and* of Robert Steuenes-sone, he toke the londys that  
thay hadd in the vale of Deuelyn, *and* in Ophelan; *and* othyr that  
hadd londis in Pees, he toke thay londys to the kynges be-howe,  
and delyuerid ham landys furthyr in Marche, *and* in Peril nexte Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum.  
har enemys, al *with* vnryght *and* by his owyn will. For ther is  
nothyng so bolde ne so kene, as is that man that is of noght come,  
whan he is an-hey broght, *and* vnkyndely sette in Maystry<sup>1</sup> // Claud. Eutrop. i.  
Willam was a man mych of body *and* of makynge, good mete-  
<sup>181.</sup>  
\* yeuer, fre and corteys By Semblant. But ale that He did any b.] [\*Fol. 21]

Bad character of William de Fitz-Audeline.

to wys hype al hyt was yn spynges, felonye, & trecherye; euer he shedde attyr vndyr hony. To-day he wold do the wyrshyp, to-morow he wold the reue & do shendshype; the meke & þe lotles he vndedde, þe sterne & the hawteyn he plessed; softe with 4 wyld men, & hard with pees men; of fayr spech, soft, fals, trecheur; argþ & enuyous, dronklewe & lecheour.

A. D. 1177.

[CHAPTER XLVI.]

John de Courci sees Fitz-Audeline's rascality.

Iohan de Courcy saw that al thynges that Willyam dydde was couetise And trecherye, & that he nas 8

He gets troops from Dublin; invades Ulster,

nothynges trewe to ham that vndyr hym weþ, ne dredlyche to the mysdoynge. he chase hym of the meygne of dyuelyn a few, bot thay weþ good & stalwarth & hardy throgħ al thynges, so that he hadde xxiij knyghtes, fyfty squyers, & fotmen as myght 12 be by ccc, & went hym ynto Vlnester, whare non engeleshe-man I-wepned to-for hym was I-seye. Than was fulfylled a prophecy of Merlyn, that thys seyð: "A whyt knyght, syttynges on a whyt hors, berynges fowles yn hys sheld, shal formest assayll 16 Vlnestre." Thys Iþon was a man ful whyt, & rood þan vpon a whyt hors, & bar yn hys sheld, ernes I-peynted. he went hym throgħ Myth & throgħ Vryel thre dayes goynge; & the forth day erlych, come to doune without any lete of any fomañ. 20 Vnwyttynges he come; In he wente. dyuelyn, the kynge, was shorthlych a-fryght of so derne comynge, left the toun & flow; the meygne, that was myssayse & hungry, fond ther mete & drynke Inowe, & pylfre of gold & syluer & clothes, & eke whar-wyth thay 24 war wel arrayed, & har hert wel comforted. Into the toun was

and takes Down. King Mac Donlevy flees.

than I-come a legat of Rome, that hete Vyuyen, & was y-come out of scotland. Thys legat was youre aboute, pees to make betwene the kynge & Iohn: myche he spake & mych he hym profred, & 28 more he behete, & trewage to bereñ euery yer to Englyssh-men, by so that he wold the lond leue, & turne ayeayne. Myche he spake ther-of, & mych hym bysoght; bot noght he wold hym hyr, ffor hys thought was al I-turned, the lond for to wyn, or the lyf to forlese. 32 Donleue saw that he, wyth fayr spech ne fayr behestes, noght ne myght spede; he sent anoon aftyr hys folke, & withyn the viij day he gadered to-gyddyr an hoste of ten thousand men, stalwarth

The Pope's Legate, Vivian, tries to get rid of De Courci,

who means to win or die.



to wyrchyppe, al Hit was in Spynges, felony, and trechery; *ener* Descripcio  
he shed Venym vndyr hony. Tho day he wolde do the wyrchipp; *Willelmi*  
to-morrow he wolde the rew, *and* do shenshipp. the meke and the *Aldelmi.*  
buxum he vndid; the sterne and hawteyn he Plesyd; Softe with  
wylde men, harde with Pees men; of fayre spech, Softe, fals  
trechoure; feynte *and* Envyous, dronklewe *and* lecherere.

## [CHAPTER XLVI.]

A. D. 1177.

**I**ohan de Cursy Saw that al thynges that willam did *Capitulum*  
was couetyse and trecherye, and that he was nothynges *xlvi<sup>m</sup>.*  
trew to ham that vndyr hym were, ne dredfull to his enemys.  
He chose hym of the meny of Deuelyn a few, but thay were good  
*and* bolde, and hardy throgh al thynges, So that he hadd xxij<sup>ti</sup>  
knyghtis, fyfty Squyeres, *and* footmen as myght be by thre hundrid,  
and wente hym to vlyster, whar noone Englysh-man wepenyd for  
hym was seyn. Than was fulfillid a prophesy of merlynge, that  
thus sayd: "a whyte knyght, syttynges on a whyte hors, berrynges  
fowlis on his shelde, shal formyste assaile vlystere." This Ihon  
was a man ful whyte, and rode vpon a whyte hors, and bare in his  
shelde, ernys y-peyntyd. he went throw myth *and* throw Vriel thre  
dayes goynges; and the fourth day Erlych, come to doune, wythout  
any lette of any enemy. Vn-wyttynges he come; In he wente.  
Dunleue, the kynges, was schortlych agaste of so suddeyn comynges,  
leste the toun and flow; the mayny, that was myssaysid and  
hungry, founde ther mette and drynke y-now, and Pylfre of  
golde and Syluyr *and* clothis, *and* also wher-with thay wer wel  
arrayed, and her herte wel confortid. In-to the toun was than  
y-come a legate of Rome that was callid Vyuyen and was come  
out of scotlande. this legate was besy about, Pees to make  
be-twen the kynges *and* Ihoñ. mych he spake, *and* mych he hym  
proferid, *and* more he promysyd, *and* trewage to bere euery yere to  
Englyssh-men, So that he wolde the lond lewe, *and* turne agayn.  
gretly her-of he spoke *and* be-soght; but noght he wolde hym hyre;  
For his thoght was al turned, the londe forto wyne, or his lyfe  
for-sake. Dounleue Saw that he, wyth fayre speche ne fayre  
promes, nothynges myght spede<sup>1</sup>. he send anoone aftyr his Pepill,  
and wyth-in viij<sup>e</sup> dayes he gaddrid to-giddy an hoste of x. M<sup>i</sup>

argent  
iij egles  
displayed  
gules  
crowned  
armed  
and  
beaked  
golde.

Romanæ  
sedis  
legatus.  
multa  
quidem  
verba sua-  
soria nec  
persua-  
soria pro-  
ponebat.

se verbis  
minime  
profectu-  
rum.

Mac Don-  
levy be-  
sieges De  
Courci in  
Down.

to fyght, & besegete staluarthly the Cyte of doun *per* Iohn was In ;  
for yn thys lond, as yn al other, the northeren men ben stordyer &  
smerte to fyght than other. Iohn saw thay hostes comynge to  
hym-ward: thegh he fewe we, natheles thay wa al hardy & stal- 4  
warth he chase; & leuer hym was, out wend, & with streynth

De Courci  
leaves his  
corner of  
the town,  
sallies out,

to assaye the aduenturs of battaylle, than yn the lytel feble fortelet  
that he yn & herne of the toun yn so lytel whyle hadde arerede,  
amyd hys fomen, beseged & hungrod, deye. He went hym out to 8  
hard fyght: & whan thay hadde fyrste, from fer, I-suywed har  
arowes, thay smytten the aftyre hertelych to-gydder, sper ayeyne

fightes  
splendidly,

sper, swerd ayeyne sparth; & many one the lyf ther forlese. Bot  
who hadde y-sey Iohnes dynttes with swerd, how he smote of pat man 12  
pe heed from the scholderes, that man the arme & pe shuldre from  
pe body, that man the heed I-clouen fer doun \* ynto the body, he  
myght wel sygge that hys myght & hys mayn oght wel be I-preysed.

[\*Fol. 22  
b.]

backt well  
by Roger  
le Poer,

Thegh many wa yn thys fyght that stalwarthly dydden, natheles, 16  
Roger the power, that the after was of grete myght yn Osserye &  
yn the Contrey of leghlyn, was the other that best dydde. Aftyr

and at last  
wins.

grete fyght & lange, pat the was of wel vnlyche hostes, at pe laste  
the Iresshe host was ouercome & I-scomfyte; many I-slawe by the 20  
see strond whyder-ward they flowen: than was fulfilled a pro-  
phecye that Colmkylle seyde of thys fyght: he seyde, 'that so many  
men shold be I-slau yn that place, that ha fomen myght waden to

His men  
walk up  
to their  
knees in  
Irish blood  
on the  
slimy  
strand

the knees yn her blode.' & so hyt was than; ffor as thay flowen to-for 24  
ham yn the slyme, thay folweden aftyr & slown ham; & as thay  
dyueden adoun, the blode of ham that waren I-slawe, & fleted  
abouen, toke to pe knee of ham that slown ham. The same  
prophete seyde also, 'that a pouere mane, & as thocht he we flow or 28

[1 dyn..]

banshed out of other landes, with lytel folk shold come ynto doun<sup>1</sup>,  
& the toun wyne, wythout soccoure of any herrer; & other many  
fyghtes & aduentures of thyng that yn that contray shold betyde,

De Courci  
has his  
Victory  
written in  
Irish.

whych al openly we fulfilled yn Iohn de Courcy. That same 32  
boke, Iohn hadde an Iresshe I-wrytte, & was hym ther-aftyr as  
shewer of al hys dedys. In the same boke was eke I-found, that  
a man with folke I-wepned shold, with strenynth, the walles of  
Waterford to-broken; & with grette slaght of pe cytzeynes, the toun 36



men, bolde to fyght / and besegyt boldely the Cite of down ther  
 Ihon was In / For in this lond, as in al othyr, the nordryn men  
 ben sturdier *and* smyrtyr to fyght than othyr. Ihon Saw the  
 hostys comynge to-wardes hym, *and* chose; and lewyr was, out wende,  
*and* wyth streynth to assay the aduentures of battayl, than in the *quam exili*  
 lytel feble fortelet, that he in *and* herne of the toun in so lytel *municipio,*  
 tyme hadd arrerid, amynd his enemys be be-segid, and to dey with *quod in*  
 hungryr. he went out to hard fight. and when thay had fryste, *urbis*  
 frome fer shote her arrowys, thay smytten aftyr hertely to-giddy, *angulo*  
 spere agaynys spere, Swerde agaynys Spare; *tenuiter*  
 lyfe loste. But who had y-sey Ihonys strokys wyth Swerd, how *crexerat.*  
 he smote Of that man the hede frome the sholdris, that man the  
 Arme and the shuldyr \* frome the body, Hee myght wel Sey, that [\*Fol. 22  
 His myght and His mayn oght Wel to be Praysid. Thegh many a.]  
 wer in this fyght that boldely did, Natheles Rohere le Power, that  
 ther-aftyr was of gret myght in Ossory and in the contrey of  
 leghlyn, was the othyr that best did. Aftyr grete *and* lange *1 nimis*  
 fyghtynge of wel vnlych hostis <sup>1</sup>, at the last, the Irysh hoste was *impari*  
 ouercome *and* scomfited, *and* many slayne by the strondis syde *certamine.*  
 whedyr thay flowe / than was fulfillid a prophesy that colmekyl <sup>2</sup> *per mari-*  
 Sayde of this fyght. He sayde, 'that So many men sholde be slayn *namglisim.*  
 in that Place, that har enemys myght wadyn to the knees in her *2 Hibernici*  
 blode' / And so hit was than. For as thay fleddyn to-for ham in *Kolumbae.*  
 the Slyme, thay folwedyn aftyr and kyllid ham; and as thay *Prae glis*  
 dyuedyn done, the blode of ham that weryn slayne, *namque*  
 abow, toke to the knees of them that ham Slayne. The same *mollitie,*  
 Prophet sayde also, 'that a pouere man, and as thegh he were flow *dum ad*  
 or bashed but of othyr landys, with lytel folke sholde come to *ima pene-*  
 doune, and the tounne wyne wyth-out Soccoure of any herrer'; and *traret*  
 othyr many fightes and aduentures of thyng that in that contray *humana*  
 sholde befall, whych al opynly wer fulfillid in Ihon de Cursy. *pondero-*  
 That same boke, ther-aftyr had Ihon de Cursy on Irysh writte, *sitas,*  
*and* was to hym ther-aftyr as merrowre of al his dedys. In pe *terrae*  
 sayde boke is also fovnde, that a man with pepil wepenyd, sholde *lubricae*  
 with streynth the wallis of watyrford breke; *and* with grete slaght *sanguis*  
*profluus*  
*superfi-*  
*ciem*  
*tenens,*  
*genua*  
*cruraque*  
*de foci*  
*perlinge-*  
*bat.*

A. D. 1177. wynd; & fro thennes, by Weysford, wend to dyuelyn without any  
 St. Colum- lette; & þe cytè wyn: & al pis ys found fulfilled of the Erl: he  
 ba's pro- seyde eke 'that the Cytè of lymeryke shold of Englysshe-men shold  
 phesies be twyes I-lefte, & at the thrydde tyme y-hold': & so hyt was, on 4  
 fulfilld by De Courci. tyme of Reymond, another of phylepe de Bruse, as hyt openlyer shal  
 be I-shewed yn hys own place. Ther-of þe propheeye was thys  
 y-seyd, 'þe cytè thrise I-soght, at þe thryd tyme shal be I-hold.'

De Courci Twey grete fyghtes, Iohn ther ledde & wan at doun; that oon aftyr 8  
 had Fights candelmase, as hyt ys I-told, þat other at mydsomyre, wher he, wyth  
 1. and 2. at Down; fewe men, ouercome the battaylle of fyftene thousand, & slow of ham  
 ful many. The þrydde was at ferly at a pray-takynge: thar thay  
 3. at Fir- come throgh a narowe pas, and hadde so styf fyght, & so stronge, that 12  
 lee, where he was beaten; hys meñ was, some y-slawe, & the oper dele so dyscomfyte ynto  
 al þe woddess, that vnneth ther be-left hym wyth aleueth  
 thousande; & he, as man wonderly stalwarth, with so fewe wyth  
 hym, whan thay hadde har hors I-loste, thay went a-fote al 16  
 y-wepned: a xxx<sup>ti</sup> myl weye thay helden the fyght of har fomen; &  
 twey dayes & two nyght thay wañ fastynge, tyl thay come to hys

4. at Uriel; castel. The ferth fyght was yn vryel; ther many of hys weren  
 5. at Newry I-sley, & the oper descomfyte, & put ham to flyght: the fyfte at 20  
 Bridge. yueres brygge, as he come wyth fewe men out of England;  
 natheles, ther he ouercome, & slowe ful many, & come hol & sond to  
 hys owne. Thus yn thre grete fyghtes he wan the ouer-hand;  
 & yn twey, thegh he harme tholled, he dydde hys fomen mych 24  
 more. Iohn was a man whyte & fayre; of lymmes bony & synowy;  
 mych of body; non hardyer than he, stalwarth, & fyghter stronge of  
 yought; yn euery fyght the fyrst, & the meste perrylle he wold

Jn. de Courci described. \* euer be In; he was so coueytouse of fyght, & so bernynge whan he 28  
 hoste lad, & come to fyght, that he neuer wold hym hold as leder,  
 bot wyth the fyrst wold yn smyte, som whyle behynd, ther most  
 perrylle was, that oft al the oste was the vnredye, and thought that  
 they wer ouercome, and al hadden forlore: & thegh he wer yn 32  
 wepne vnmetly stordy, & sterne, out of wepne natheles, he was  
 meke and sobre, & mych wyrshypped god & holy chyrche, & yn al  
 thyng he leuet god and hys seruyce; & al that hym betyd, he  
 thanked god that hym the grace sent. He spoused Godefreys 36



of the Citesseynes, the toun wyn : And al this fund fulfillid of the A. D. 1177.  
 Erle. He sayde also that the Cite of lymerike, of Englysh-men ab Anglo-  
 twyes sholde be lefte, and the thyrde tyme sholde be holde. And rum gente  
 So hit was, on tyme of Reymonde, a-nothyr of Phylip de bruse, bis desc-  
 as hit opynlyer shal be shewid in his owyn Place. Therof the rendam, et  
 prophesy was thus sayde : " The Cite thryse soght, at the thyrde tertio reti-  
 tyme shal be holde," Two grete fyghtis, Ihon ther abode, and ham nendam.  
 ouercomyd at doun / that oone after candylmasse, as hit is tolde /  
 that othyr, after mydsomer, wher he, with few men, did ouercome (June 24.)  
 the battail o xv. M<sup>t</sup>, and Slayne of ham ful many. The thyrd was  
 at ferly, at a pray takyn : thar thay come throw a narrow Paas, and in praedae  
 had so styfe fyght, that his men was, some slayne, and othyr Part so captione.  
 descomfite in-to al the woddys, that vnneth with hym was lefte M<sup>t</sup> ;  
 and he, as man woundyrly bolde, with so few with hym, Whan Ipsæ vero,  
 thay hadd har hors loste, thay went afoote al wepenyd : xxx<sup>ti</sup> myle vir virtutis  
 wey thay heldyn the fyght of har ennemys ; and two dayes and invictæ,  
 two nyghtes thay wer fastynge, til thay come to his castel. the cum tan-  
 iiij<sup>e</sup> fyght was in Vriel, ther many of his were slayn, and the othyr tilla  
 dyscomfite, and Put ham to flyght ; the v. fyght at yuores bryge, as suorum  
 he come with few men out of England. natheles, ther he ouercome, pauçitate.  
 and slayne ful many, and come hole and Sounde to his owyn.  
 Thus in thre grete fyghtis he had the ouer-hande ; and in two, Descriptio  
 thegh he loste the ouer-hand, he did his enemys mych more // Iohann[is]  
 Ihon was a man whyte and fayre ; of lymmes, bony and \* Synowy ; de Curey.  
 myche of Body ; noone Hardier than Hee ; Bolde, and fyghter [\*Fol. 22  
 stronge of youth : in euery fyght the fryst, and the meste peril b.]  
 he wolde euer be In / he was So covetouse of fyght, and So vir fortis  
 beruyng whan he hoste ladd, and come to fyght, that he hym et bellator  
 neuer wolde holde as ledere, but with the fryste wolde smyte, ab adoles-  
 Sumtyme be-hynnde, ther more Peril was, that ofte al the hoste centia.  
 was the vnredyer, and thoght that thay wer ouercome, and al  
 haddyn for-lore. And thegh he were in wepyn vnmetly sturdy ducem  
 and Sterne, Out of wepyn natheles he was meke and sobyr, and exuens, et  
 mych vyrechippid god and holy church, and in al thyng he lowid militem  
 god and his service ; and all that hym befel, he thankyd good that induens.  
 hym the grace sende. He Spousyd Godfredes doghtyr, the kyng

A. D. 1177. doghter, the kynges of Mane; & aftyꝛ many selcouth battaylles that  
 At last, he dydde, nat wythout grete labour & perrylle of lyf & myche  
 De Courci myssayse, at the last he was all aboue, & clenlych hadde ouercomen.  
 all foes. He casteled the lond yn couenable places, & such pes made, that non 4  
 Not one of better ne myght be, ne stedfaster. Bot gret wonder ys, & nat bot  
 the 4 great as god hyt wold, that thay four grete postès of the conquest of  
 Pillars of the Con-quest of Ireland had a child. Irland, namely, Robert steuenes-sonne, heruy of Mountynorthy,  
 Reymon le Gros, and Ihon de Courcy, myhten neuer haue 8  
 children of her spoused wyues. Thus mych we haue shortly I-told  
 of Ihon de Courcy; & the other parte of hys stalwarth gestes,  
 we leueth to wryte to other that ham wrytte wyllen, & turneth  
 ayeine ther we afore lefte.

12

## [CHAPTER XLVII.]

The Legate Vivian holds a Synod at Dublin, March 13, in Henry II's favour, and gives the English leave to take food from churches. Wiuyen, that in-to Irlande was legat I-comen,  
 come to dyuelyn; theder he made come to-for  
 hym al the bysshoppes & the clergie of Irland & held hys sennce.  
 ther he shewed openly the kynges ryght of Engeland to Irland, 16  
 & the popes graunt, & hys confyrmacion; &, vp mansynge, forbed  
 lered & lewed, that non neuere so hardy to ccmen ayeyns the  
 kynges trouthe. &, fore the Iresshe-men wer I-woned to doñ al  
 har vytaylls yn chyrches, he yawe the Englysshe-men leue, that 20  
 whañ me ladde hostes, & myghten nowher elles wytayll fynd,  
 that yn chyrch war I-found, me shold hardyly out take, & yeue  
 the kepers of the chyrch the worth, as ryght wer.

## [CHAPTER XLVIII.]

Miles de Cogan with 500 men, invades Con-naught. Aftyꝛ that, Miles de Cogan, that vnder Aldelinesse- 24  
 sone was keper & conestable of dyuelyn, wyth fowrty  
 knyghtes, of whych Rolf, Robertes sone, fytz-esteuene, was one,  
 I-sette mayster ouer ham vnder Myles, & two hundret other  
 an hors, & thre hundret bowmen, passeden the water of shynnen, 28  
 & wentten ynto Connaght, whar Englesshe-men was neuere er  
 comen. The men of Connaght wer I-ware of har comes; thay  
 drowen ham ynto erth-hous many; & al the vytaylle that thay  
 ne myght nat take wyth ham, thay put yn chyrches; & tounnes & 32  
 chyrches thay setten al afyꝛ & branten. & yn despyte of the En-  
 glesshe-men, & yn hope þat god shold take wrech of ham, thay toke

The Irish take to earth-houses, and burn their buildings.



of man; *and* aftyр many Selchouth battalys that he did, not  
wyth-out grete laboure *and* Peril of lyfe *and* mych myssayse, And  
at the last he was al abow, *and* clenly hadd overcome. He  
castelid the londe in behowabyll Placys; and Suche Pes made,  
that noone bettyr ne myght be, ne stydfastyр. But hit is grete  
wondyr, and not but as god hit wolde, that thay iiij<sup>e</sup> grete Postes  
of the conqueste of Irland, Namely, Robert Stéuenes-sone, heruey  
of Mountmorthy, Reymond le gras / *and* Ihon de Cursy, myghten  
neuer haue childe of her Spousyd wyues / Thus mych we haue  
Shortely tolde of Ihon de Curcy; And the othyr Parte of his  
bolde gestis, we lewyth to write to otheres that ham write wille,  
And turnyth agayñe ther we afore lefte.

## [CHAPTER XLVII.]

Vluyen, that into Irland was legate, come to deuelyn: *Capitulum*  
thedyр he made come to-for hym al the bischopis *xlviij<sup>m</sup>.*  
*convocata*  
the clergy of Irland, *and* helde his Senne. ther he Shewid opynly the *Dubliniae*  
kyngis ryght of England to Irland, and the Popis graunte *episco-*  
*porum*  
his confirmacion; *and*, vpon Payn of Cursynge chargid both lerrid *synodo.*  
*ad ecclesi-*  
and lewyd, that noone neuer so hardy to come agaynys the kyngis *arum*  
trouthe. And, for the Irysh-men wer wonyd to do al har vitalys *refugia*  
in churchis, he yaued the Englysh-men leue, that whan thay ladd *victualia*  
hostis, *and* myght no vytalis ellys fynde, that that in church were *transfer-*  
founde, thay sholde hardely out-take, *and* yeue the keperes of the *rentur.*  
church the worthe, as ryght were.

## [CHAPTER XLVIII.]

Aftyр that, Miles de Cogan, that vndyr aldelines-sone was *Capitulum*  
keper and constabil of Deuelyn, with xl. knyghtes, of wych *xlviij<sup>m</sup>.*  
*1-1 urbilus*  
Rolfе, Robert-es sone, fitz-Steuен, was one, y-sette Maystyr ouer ham *undique et*  
vndyr Milis, and two C an hors, CCC bowmen, Passyd the watyr of *villis igne*  
Shynnyñ, *and* went Into Connaght / wher englysh-men was neuer *proprio*  
ther-to-forne. The men of connaght wer y-ware of har comynge / *combustis;*  
*alimentis*  
<sup>1</sup> thay drew ham into Erthe-hous many; and al þ<sup>e</sup> vytalis that thay *quoque*  
ne myght take with ham, thay Put in churches; *and* touñes *cunctis,*  
churches thay sette asyre and brantyn<sup>1</sup>. and in dyspyte of the *quae*  
englysh-men, *and* in trust that god wold do vengeance on ham, thay *hypogeis*  
*subter-*  
*raneis*  
*abscondere*  
*non pote-*  
*rant, simul*  
*cum eccle-*  
*siis igne*  
*consumptis.*

A. D. 1177. þe rodes crucefyed, & ymages of haloweñ, & kesten to-for ham ynto  
 The English advance to Tuam, but find no food, and retreat safely to Dublin, beating King Roderic of Connaught on the way.  
 al the feldes. The Englesshe meygne wentten tyl thay come to  
 tuen, & ther thay abodde viij dayes yn bare lond & blote. And  
 whan thay myght no mane fynd, ne nothyng wher-by thay myght  
 lyue, thay turned ayeine to the shynnen. ther thay found ayeins  
 ham, Oconghour yn a wodde, wyth thre grete hostes. the Engelesshe  
 boldly smytten vpon ham, & slowe of ham ful many, passeden on,  
 & come to dyuelyn al sound, out-tak þre men, that yn that fyght  
 wereñ I-lefte.

## [CHAPTER XLIX.]

Fitz-Audeline goes back to England. He got Jesus's Crosier to Dublin.  
 [\*Fol. 23 b.]  
 Hugh de Laci and Robert le Poer come to Ireland.  
 Miles de Cogan and Robert Fitz-Stephen get Cork. Philip de Bruse has Limerick.  
 They force peace on Dermot Mac-Carthy, and divide the townlands near Cork.  
 Sone ther aftyr, Aldelinessone was I-sent aftir  
 ynto Engelande, that no good yn Irland dydde  
 bot oon, that, by procuryng of hym, an holy baghell & of  
 grete vertue, that me cleped Ihesus baghel, was I-brought  
 from Ardmagh to dyuelyn, & yet ys at the chyrch of the Try-  
 nyte: & come \* ynto Irland Hugh de Lacy, heye Seneshal of al  
 the lond, & Robert de Power wyth hym, Conestable of Water-  
 ford. Myles de Cogañ & Robert steuenesson wentten also ouer  
 the see ynto Engeland; bot thay comen sone ayeine, & phylepe  
 de Bruse wyth ham; & hadde the kyng I-yeuen ham thre, al  
 the lond of Desmond. Robert & Myles hadden the south Con-  
 trey, that ys to wyttē, from lysmore al aboute Corke vii  
 Cantredes, saue the kyng the Cytē of Corke, wyth þe next  
 cantrede. Phylype de Bruse, the kyng yaf al the Contrey of  
 lymeryke, saue the Cytē & hys next cantred: these thre I-fefed  
 to-gedder, come ouer ynto Irland yn o felewshyppe, & arryueden  
 at Waterford, & fro thennes thay wentten to Corke al harmles.  
 Thay wař thař fayř receyued of þe Cytteyns, & of a knyght that  
 was keper of the Cytē, that hete Rychard of Londone. Whañ  
 thay hadde I-brought to pees Demot Mac charthy, prynce of  
 desmone, & other many of the contrey of moche power, Robert and  
 myles deled betwen ham the vij cantredes next the Cytē; & felle  
 by lot<sup>1</sup> to Robert, thre on the eeste syde; Myles, four yn the weste;  
 mo to the on than to the other, for the lond was wors; the kepyng  
 of the Cytē comune to ham bothe; the renth & the trywage

<sup>1</sup> MS. bot.



toke the roodys crucefied, and ymagis of Sayntis, and kesten to-for A. D. 1177.  
 ham into al the feldys. The Englis-men wentyn tyl thay come to <sup>1</sup> in hostili  
 tuem, And ther abode viij dayes in bare \* Londe ande Blote <sup>1</sup>. And <sup>terra.</sup>  
 When thay myght no man fynde, ne nothyng Wherby thay myght <sup>[\*Fol. 23</sup>  
 lyue, thay turned agayn to the Shynnyn. ther thay found agaynys <sup>a.]</sup>  
 ham / Oconghoure in a wodde, with thre grete hostis. The <sup>terram</sup>  
 englysh boldely smytten vpon ham, and Slow of ham ful many, <sup>alimentis</sup>  
 Passyd ouer, and come to Deuelyn al sounde, out-take thre men <sup>vacuam</sup>  
 that in that fyght weryn lefte. / <sup>inueniens.</sup>  
<sup>tribus</sup>  
<sup>tantum</sup>  
<sup>arcariis</sup>  
<sup>amissis.</sup>

## [CHAPTER XLIX.]

**S**One therafter, aldelines Sone was sende after in-to <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
 England, that no good in Irland didde but oone, <sup>xlix<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
 that, by procuryng of hym, an holy baghel and of grete Vertu, that <sup>baculum</sup>  
 is callid Iesus <sup>2</sup> baghel, was broght frome Ardmagh to Deuelyn, and <sup>virtuosissi-</sup>  
 yet is at the Trynyte church // And come Into Irland Hugh de <sup>mum, quem</sup>  
 lacy, hey Seneschal of al the londe <sup>3</sup>, And Robert de Power with hym <sup>baculum</sup>  
 Constable of watyrford, Miles de Cogan and Robert S[t]euenes-Sone <sup>Jesu</sup>  
 wentyn ouer the See also in-to England; but thay comyn Sone <sup>vocant.</sup>  
 agayn, and Philip de bruse with hame, and the kyng yeaued ham <sup>generalem</sup>  
 thre al the londe of Desmonde. Robert and Miles haddyn the <sup>Hiberniae</sup>  
 South contrey, that is to Say, from lysmore al aboute Corke, vije <sup>procura-</sup>  
 candredes, Saue the kyng the Cite of Corke, with the nexte <sup>torem.</sup>  
 candrede; Philip de Bruse the kyng yeaued al þe contrey of  
 lymerik, Saue the Cite and his nexte Candrede: thes thre, feffyd  
 to-giddy, come ouer Into Irland in oo fellochipp, and londyn at  
 Watyrford, and fro thens thay wenten to Corke al harmeles. Thay  
 wer thar fayre rescueyd of the Citteseyns, and of a knyght that  
 was keper of the citte, that was callid Richarde of london. Whan  
 thay hadd broght to pees Dermot Maccarthy, Prince of Desmon, and  
 othyr many of the contrey of mych Powere, Robert and Miles delid  
 betwen ham the vij Candredes nexte the Cite; and fell by lotte to  
 Robert, thre on the Este syde; Miles foure in the weste: mo to the  
 on than to the othyr, for the londe was wors; the kepyng of the  
 Cite comyn to ham both. the rent and the triwage of the othyr

*Trans-*  
*euntes*  
*igitur in*  
*Hiberniam*  
*menſe*  
*Novembri,*  
*cum tri-*  
*plici fa-*  
*milia, tres*  
*viri con-*  
*ſeolati*  
*ſimul et*  
*conſoe-*  
*derati.*

<sup>2</sup> Ihc, MS.

A Cantred of the other fouȝ & xx cantredes, as hyt wold falle, euyn to dele  
 is 100 between ham: & ys a cantrede to sygge, an hundret toȝ lond.  
 townlands. Whaȝn thys was I-doȝn, thay wentten wyth Phelype to lymeryke.  
 Robert Fitz- Stephen, Robert hadde wyth hym xxx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes & lx<sup>ti</sup> sweynes; Myles, xx<sup>ti</sup> 4  
 Miles de knyghtes & fyfty squyers; Phelype, xx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes & xl<sup>ti</sup> squyers;  
 Cogan, and & fotmen wyth euery of ham ful many: they came to the Cytè,  
 Philip de Bruse go to & noght was betweȝn ham bot the watyre of the shynneȝ;  
 Limerick. & Robert & Myles baden Phylepe to wend ouer & assaylle the 8  
 Philip ought to toun; othyr, yf hym leuer weȝ, to reȝ hym a castele vpon the  
 attack Limerick, same watyre afor the toun. Phelype, theghȝ he knyght wer  
 but funks it, and stalwarth & hardy yn hym selue, natheles, throgȝ feble consaylle  
 retreats: of ham that wyth hym, weȝ he chase; & mych leuer hym was, leue 12  
 he has much a set of the Contrey, & harmles turne ayeyne to hys owȝn, Than amonge  
 scamps in so many fomenȝ & so fer londes, yn so grete perrylle to abydde;  
 his force. & that no wonderȝ nas, theghȝ hym yn thyke vyage mys byfelle,  
 that so many lydderȝ men, theues, & manslaghtres of the marche 16  
 of Wales—and thay to-fore al other—hadde I-chose & I-draw to  
 hys felewshyppe. Noght lange ther-aftyr, Meredus, Robertes sone,  
 yonge knyght & stalwarth, nat wyth-out myche wepynge & sorow  
 of many, deyed yn the Cytè of Corke. That whylle, was I-hold 20  
 The Council of Lateran, March 1179, 3 eclipses in 3 years  
 at Rome the consaylle of latran, that meȝn so moche speketȝ of,  
 vonder the pope Alyxsandyȝ the thyrdde. & was wyth-yn thre  
 yerȝ, thre eclipses of the sone. ¶ Whaȝn Robert steuenessoȝ &  
 Myles of Cogane, wel fyfe yeyr, al desmone yn good pees haddeȝ 24  
 Miles de to-gyddȝ I-holde, Myles & hys Othome Rauf, Robertes soȝn,  
 Cogan and his son-in-law go to Lismore,  
 that a lytyll ther-to-fore hadde hys doghterȝ I-spoused, wentten  
 to the contrey of lysmor, to hold parlement wyth ham of  
 Waterford. & as thay sateȝ yn the feldes abydyngȝ aftyr ham, 28  
 Mactyr, that theder was wyth ham I-come, & wyth whom thay  
 sholdeȝ that nyght<sup>1</sup> be I-herbrowed, vnwyttynghly smot vpon  
 ham behynd, & ham both, wyth fyue otherȝ knyghtes, therȝ slown  
 and are treacherously slain, by Mac Tire.  
 wyth sparthes; & otherȝ fewe that wer wyth ham vnneth escaped. 32  
 Throgȝ that thyngȝ, al the contrey forth ther-aftȝrȝ worth so  
 The Irish [\* Fol. 24 a.]  
 I-storbet, that Demot Maccarthy & al the hegh men of \* the  
 then rebel. contray, forth wyth Mactyre, ayeyne har trouth, wyth-drowenȝ ham

<sup>1</sup> MS. myght.



foure and xx<sup>ti</sup> candredes, as hit wolde falle, euen to dele be-twen  
 ham // And a Candrede is as myche to Say as, an hundrid toun- Quid est  
 londe // Whan this was don, thay wentyn with Philip to Lymerike. candreda.  
 Robert had wyth hym xxx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes and xl. Squyeres; Miles, xx<sup>ti</sup> terrae  
 knyghtes, l. Squyeres; and Philip, xx. knyghtys and xl. Squyeres; and quanta  
 footmen with euery of ham ful many. Thay came to the Cite, and villas  
 noght was betwen ham but the watyr of the Shynnyn. And Robert continere  
 and Miles badyn Philip wende ouer, and assaile the toun; Othyr, solet.  
 yf hym leuer were, to rere hym a castel vpon the same watyr afor 1-1 pusilla-  
 the toun. Philip, thegh he was knyght bolde and hardy in hym-Selfe, nimi tamen  
 natheles, <sup>1</sup>through febil consail of them that wyth hym, were he chose; consilio.  
 and myche leuer hym was, leue the contrey, and harmeles turne potius  
 agayn to his owyn, Then amonge so many enemys, and in so fere indemnis  
 londys, in So grete Peril to abyde <sup>1</sup>. and that no wondyr nas, thegh ad sua  
 hym in thylke vyage mys-be-felle, that <sup>2</sup> So many wyckyd men, con- reverti,  
 dicones and manequellers of the marche of Walis (and thay to-for quam in  
 al othir) hadd y-chose and y-draw to his fellochipp. Not longe terra tum  
 theraftr, Meredus, Rober[t]es-sone, yonge \* Knyght and Bolde, not hostili  
 with-out mych wepyng and Sorrow of many, Dyed in the Cite of tamque  
 Corke. That tyme, was holde at Rome <sup>3</sup> the consail of latran, that remota  
 men of mych Spekyth, vndyr the Pope Alysandyr the thyrde. and fortunae  
 was within iije yere, iije Eclipsis of the Sonne <sup>4</sup>. Whan Robert tentare  
 Steuenes-Sone and Miles de Cogan, wel v<sup>o</sup> yere al Desmond in good pericula  
 pees hadden to-gaddyr holde, Miles, and his Sone-in-law, Raufe, praelegit.  
 Robert-es Sone, that a lytel thertofore to his doghtyr had spousid, [\* Fol. 23  
 wenten to the contrey of lysmore, to holde Parlement with ham of b.]  
 watyrforde. and as thay Satyn in the feldys abydyng after ham, Mac- 2 viros  
 tyre, that thedyr with hame was come, and with whome thay sholde homicidas,  
 be that nyght logide, Vnwyttyngly Smote vpon ham; and ham both, seditiosos  
 wyth v. othyr knyghtes, thay Slayn wyth Sparres; and othyr few that ac flagi-  
 were with ham, vnneth escapid. Throught that thyng, al the contrey tiosos.  
 was in were, So that Dermot Maccarthy and al the hey men of the 3 sedit  
 Contrey forth with Mactyre, agayne har trouth, withdrawen al frome Romae.  
 4 non

A. D. 1182.

improvisis  
 a tergo  
 securium  
 ictibus sunt  
 interempti.

A. D. 1182. al from the Englysshemeñ, & turned vpon Robert steuenes-son, Robert Fitz-Stephen is attackt by Irish rebels. (The North Irish are true, and fight; the South are false, and trick.) As the northren me[n] loueth fyght, also the southren, falsness; they trusteth to streynth, these to sleghtes; thay to staluarthnesse, these to traysoune. Whan Reymond herd that Robert was so narow byladde yn the toun of Corke, wyth hys fomen al about beseget, he put hym to shyppe yn the hauen of Watyrford, wyth xxi<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes & squyers, & bowmeñ, wel ccc; leftene the lond al oñ the ryght hond, & wentten about by the see, fort he come to Cork, to gaddre hele to hys frendes, & vnhele to hys fomen. Aftyr many & selcouth camplynges, many of hañ fomeñ thay slow, & many out of contray thay dryueñ, & the moste parte & the beste come to pees; & so the grete tempeste of that weddyñ hape, yn lytel whyle was I-queynt & I-styled.

They put down the rebellion.

A. D.  
1182-3.

[CHAPTER L.]

There come to Ireland, Richard de Cogan in 1182; and in 1183, Philip de Barry, and Giraldus Cambrensis, who wrote 3 books on Ireland.

Hervey of Mountmaurice turns monk.

Nat longe theñ aftyñ, come into Irland Richard de Cogan, Miles brother, wyth fair meygne from the kynge I-sent; & theñ-aftyñ, yn the begynnyge of Marce, come Phylpe de barry, a mañ slegñ & staluarth, wyth moch folk & fayñ, both for to help Robert & Reymond, & for to castely hys lond of Olethane, whych Robert hym hadde I-yeue; and yn the same flot come Maystyñ Geraud, that phelypees brother & Robertes neuu, ful good clerk, & a mañ that al the conqueste, & pe state, & pe wondres of Irland, & the kyndes of pepel from the begynnyge, ful Inly soght & oft greped, & thre bokes theñ-of maked wyth grete trauayl, fywe yeñ that he was theñ. about that tyme, heruy of Mountnorthy yeldet hym monke at crystes chyrch yn cantyrbery, to whych he hadde thar-to-forne I-yeue hys chyrches of hys lond be Waterford & Weysford. Wold god that he hadde I-chaunget hys culuertnesse, and he dydde hys knyghthode, and trecherye as he dydde hys clothynge<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Qui utinam sicut habitum, sic et animum, sicut militiam sic et malitiam deposuisset.—Gir. Camb. *Op.* v. 352.



the Englysh-men, and turned vpon Robert Steuenes-Sone, that ofte had harde Aduenturis assayed ; and neuer este, til Reymond to hym come *and* helpyd hym forto wyn the londe *and* broght to heritage ; For Robert ne myght not pees haue, as he radyr hadd. As the northeryn men lowyth fyght, also the Southeryn, falsnys : <sup>1</sup> thay trustyth to Streynth, thes to sleghtes ; thay to boldnys, thes to traysone <sup>1</sup> // When Reymonde herd that Robert was So narrow by-ladde in the toun of corke, wyth his Ennemys al about besegid, he Put hym to shipp in the hawyn of watyrword *with* xx. knyghtes and Squyeris *and* bow-men wel CCC, leften the londe al on the ryght hande *and* wentyn aboute by the See, fort he come to corke, to grette gladnys to his frendis, *and* Sorrow to his ennemys. After many *and* selcouth Camplyngys, many of har ennemys thay haue Slayne, *and* many out of contray thay dryuen ; and the meste Parte *and* the beste come to Pees ; and So the grete tempeste of that weddyr hapid, in lytil whyle was broght to an <sup>2</sup> ende. /

## [CHAPTER L.]

Not longe ther-aftyr, come Into Irland Richard de Cogan, Miles-is brothyr, *with* fayre maynyny frome the kynge y-Sende, and ther-aftyr, in the begynnynge of Marce, come Philip de barry, a man sley and bolde, wyth mych pepill *and* fayre, forto helpe both Robert *and* Reymond, and forto castel his londe of olethane, whych Robert hym hade yeue. And in the same flytte come Maystyr Geraude, that Philippes brodyr and Robert-is Eme, ful good clerke, *and* a man that al the conquest *and* the state and the wondris of Irland, and the kynde of Pepill from the begynnynge, ful Inwardly soght, and thre bokys therof makyd wyth grette trauayll, v. yere that he was ther-about *//* About that tyme, Heruey of Montmorthy yeldyd hym monke at crystes church in cantyr-berry, to whych he had therto-forne yeue his churchis of his lond betwen Watyrforde \* And Weysforde. Wolde god that he hadd y-chaunged His culuertnesse as he didd his knyghthode, and his trayson as he didd his clothynge //

<sup>1-1</sup> Illa laudis, haec fraudis cupida ; illa Martis, haec artis ope confisa ; illa viribus nititur, haec versutiis ; illa praeliis, haec proditiionibus.—Op. v. 350.

<sup>2</sup> and, MS.

A. D. 1182.  
*donec Reimundus, in hereditatem patruo Stephanidae succedens, urbis custodiam solus obtinuit, [nec tunc plene] pristinam pacem recuperavit.*

A. D. 1182.

Capitulum 1.

A. D. 1183.

*et alius Stephanidae nepos Philip-pique frater, tam avunculum quam fratrem plurimum consilio iuvans.*

[\*Fol. 24 a.]

A. D. 1177.  
Hugh de  
Laci castles  
Leinster  
and Meath,

and makes  
such peace  
that men  
till their  
land.

He so  
attracts  
the Irish,  
that he is  
suspected  
of aiming  
to be their  
King.

A. D. 1181.

John,  
Constable  
of Chester,  
and  
Richard de  
Pec arrive.  
[\* Fol. 42  
b.]

Many  
castles  
are built.

Meiler  
Fitz-Henry  
gets Kil-  
dare, but  
changes it  
for Leix.

The while that this was thus in Desmone I-done,  
Hugh de Lassy, as man that queynth was &  
staluarth, both leynester & meth<sup>1</sup> nobely casteled, & yn many  
places ther other faylled to-fõr hym; & fayn was about, to setten 4  
yn hãr londres, Thay that wyth streynth & vnryghtly weren out  
I-dryue, both englysshe & Iresshe; so that, yn lytyll stond, was  
so good pees that men arreden & tylleden hãr londres, and the  
lond ynto al wel I-stored wyth corne. he drogh to hym 8  
sleghtlych, wyth wyrsshye doynge, & stydfaste forward makynge,  
the heghest of the lond folk; from place to place byled the  
lond wyth castel; & yn lytyll whyll, so good pees made, toke  
of othẽr, & auauuced hys owne ryuely, & rych ham maked. 12  
The folk of Irland, wyth frenesse & sleghtes, drogh so, & allyed  
to hym, that men hadden grete ortrow vpon hym, that he, ayeyne  
the kyng & hys owne trouth, wold make hym self kyng I-crouned  
of the lond. As thys was, & mych spech yn [ ]<sup>2</sup> of thys 16  
thynge, comon ynto Irland twey knyghtes from the kyng I-sent,—  
that oon heet Ihon, the conestabel of chestre, & that othẽr,  
Rychard of the pek,—for to receyue the kepyng of Irland, & that  
hugh shold wend ouer ynto Englund to the kyng; both hãr<sup>3</sup> he 20  
ouer went, by comyn red of ham al, thay arrereden yn that  
somỹr many castells yn leynester; ffor ãr that, Myth \* was wel  
castelled, & leynestre bot lytyl. Thãr pay rereden a castel to  
Reymond, yn forthred Onolan; Another to Gryffyne hys brother; 24  
the thyrd, yn Omurthy, to Water de rydlesford a kylka; the ferth,  
to Iohn the herford, at Tyllagh yn felmeth, & other many.  
Meyller hadde that tyme kyldãr of the erles yifte, & the contrey  
about; bot that me toke of hym for oo coste, & yaf hym pe 28  
contray of leys as yn chaunge. for hyt was smert lond, woddy,  
& of Marche, & ferr, me sette hym thãr as man of marche,  
that I-nowe couth theron.

<sup>1</sup> MS. moch.

<sup>2</sup> Space left for a word. A later hand has written something which is illegible. The Latin has only 'fama': see opp. and Gir. Camb. *Op.* v. 355.

<sup>3</sup> but ere: Sed antequam.



## [CHAPTER LI.]

The Whyle that this was thus done in desmond, *Capitulum ljm.*  
 Hugh de Lacy, as man that sly was and bolde, *Hugo vero de Laci, summa sollicitudine, victos ab aliis, et violenter a finibus ejectos, ad pacem revocans, eidem olim deserta tam armentis pascua, quam ruricolis rura restituit.*  
 both leynyster and myth nobely he castelid, and in many Places  
 ther othyr falid to-for hym; and fayne was aboute to Settyn in har  
 londes, Thay that wyth Streynth and vnryght / were out-drywe,  
 both Englysh and Irysh, So that, in lytel whyle, was So good Pees  
 that men Erredyn and tilledyn har landys, and the lond Into al  
 wel Storid with corne. he drew to hym Slyly, with wyrchipp  
 doynge and Stidfast forward makynge, the heghest of the lond-  
 Pepyll; and frome Place to Place byled the lound with castelis;  
 and in lytyll Whyle, so good Pees made, toke of othyr, and  
 auauunced his owyn ryuely, and ryche ham made. The Pepill of  
 Irland, wyth frenes and sleghtes, drow So, and allied to hym, that  
 men haddyn grete exstymacion vpon hym, that he, agayn the kynge  
 and his owyn trouth, wolde make hym-Selfe kynge y-crouned of the  
 londe. As this was, and mych Spech in taale of thys thyng, comen  
 Into Irland, two knyghtes from the kynge y-sende: that oone was  
 callid Ihon, the Constabill Of cestre, and that othyr, Richarde of the  
 Peke, forto rescue the kepyng of Irland; and that hugh Sholde  
 wend ouer Into Englande, to the kynge. but ar he ouer wente, by  
 comyn assente of ham all, thay arreredyn in that Somer many  
 castelys in leynyster; For ar that, Mythe was well castelid, and  
 leynyster but lytell. Thar thay reredyn a castell to Reymond in  
 fothred o nolan<sup>1</sup>; Anothyr to gryffyn his brodyr; the thyrd in<sup>2</sup>  
 Omurthy, to water de redelesford at kylka; the iiije. to Ihon the  
 herford, at Tillagh in felmeth, and othyr many. Meylere hadd that  
 tyme kyldare of the Erlis yfte, and the contrey about; but that thay  
 toke of hym for oo Purpos, and yaue hym the contray of leys in  
 chaunge. for hit was wille londe and woddy, and of Marche, and  
 ferre, thay sette hym there as man of Marche, pat y-now kouth  
 theron.

<sup>1</sup> MS to. Lat.: tertium in Omurethi, Gualtero de Ridenesfordia, apud Tristerdermoth; quartum Johanni de Clahulla super aquam Bervae, non procul a Lechlinia: quintum Johanni Herefordensi apud Collacht.—Op. v. 355.

## [CHAPTER LII.]

A. D.  
1181-2.

Hugh de Lacy is sent back to rule Ireland; and John of Salisbury with him. He builds Castles.

When this was I-donð, in the somyr Hugh wente owr in-to Engelande. Ayeine the wyntter the kyng toke of hym sykernesse, & sent hym sone ayeine keper of Irland, as he rather was sette; wyth hym a clerk, Robert of 4 slepsbery<sup>1</sup>, that shold hym be an help & consaylle, & wytnes of hys deddes. At thys comynge, hugh arered manye castells: On to Meyller at tachmeho, & than he yaue hym hys nece to wyue; another thã negh, yn Oboy, to Robert de Bygaz; & 8 other many, both yn leynestre & yn Myth, that longe hyt war to namy al by name.

## [CHAPTER LIII.]

Nota de lupo confitente.

A priest is askt to shrive a sick woman.

He finds a sick wolf,

who talks to him:

he shrives her.

For the sins of the Irish, God turnd her into a wolf.

About that tyme, befel a wonder aduentur yn a wodde of Myth, of a preste that yede by weyes; 12 & as he come throgth that wodde, come a man ayeins hym, & badde hym, for goddys loue, that he shold wend wyth hym for to shryue hys wyf, that lay seke per negh. The preste turned wyth hym; & whan he come somdel negh, he herd gronyng 16 and wonyng, as thegh hyt wẽ of a womã; & whan he come ryght to, than was hyt a wolf that lay ther & groned. Þe preste that saw, & was wel sore aferd, & turned hym awayward: the man and the wolf both spake to hym, & bad hym that he ne 20 shold nat be adredde, & that he shold turne to shryue hyr. The preste than toke herth to hym, & blessyt hym, & yede sytte besyde hyr: & the wolf spake to hym, & shroue to þe preste. & whan thay hadde þat I-donð, þe preste bethoght hym, and thoght that 24 thyng that was forshape, & hade gras to spek, that hyt myght also wel haue grace & ynsyght of other thyng. he sette to, & asked of the out-comẽ men that ynto the lond wẽ comen, howe hyt shold be of ham. The wolf answard & seyð, that 'for the sỹ 28 of þe lond-folke, almyghty gode tok wreche of ham, & sent that folk for to bryng ham yn thraldome; & so thay shold be tyl the same folk war este encombret whyth<sup>2</sup> sỹ; & than thay shold haue power for to done ham the same wrech, for hã 32 synnes.'

<sup>1</sup> I. e. salopsbery, Salisbury.

<sup>2</sup> MS. whych.



## [CHAPTER LII.]

WHan this was done, In the Somer Hugh went Capitulum  
liij<sup>m</sup>.  
 ouer Into England. agayn the Wyntyre, the A. D.  
1181-2.  
 kyng toke of hym Surte, and sende hym Sone agayn kepere of  
 Irland, as he to-for was. Sende with hym a clerke, Robert of Roberto...  
Salopes-  
buriensi  
 Slepsbery, that to hym sholde be helpe and consayl, and wytnes of  
 his dedis. At this comynge, Hugh lette make many castelis. On  
 to Meyler at tachmeho, and than he yaued hym his deth to rescue [!] cui et  
neptem  
suam tunc  
dedit  
uxorem.  
 Anothyr thar ney, in Oboy, to Robert de Bigaz; and Othyr many,  
 both in leynystere and in Myth, that longe hit were to reherse ham  
 al by name.

## [CHAPTER LIII.]

ABOUT that tyme, befel a merwelos aduenture in Capitulum  
liij<sup>m</sup>.  
 a wodd of Myth, of a Preste that went by weyes. Nota de  
lupo con-  
fite.  
 And as he came throw that wodd, came a man agaynes hym<sup>1</sup>, and  
 Prayed hym for the lowe of god, that \* He sholde go wyth Hym [\*Fol. 24  
b.]  
 forto shrywe Hys wyfe, that Lay seke ther-By. The prest turned [See Gir.  
Camb.'s  
Topo-  
graphia,  
ch. 19, Op.  
v. 101: it  
gives the  
story, with  
different  
details.]  
 wyth hym; and whan he came Somdel ney, he herde gronyng  
 and con-Playnyng, as hit were of a woman; and whan he came  
 there wher she lay, than was hit a wolfe, that lay there and  
 gronyd. the prest that Saw, and was sore aferde, and turnyd hym  
 to goo / the man and the wolfe both spake wyth hym, and bade  
 hym that he sholde not be afferde, and that he sholde turne to  
 shryw hyre. The Prest toke herte to hym, and blessid hym, and  
 wente and satte be-syde hyre. And the Wolfe spake to hym, and  
 confeste hyr to the preste. and whan thay hadd that done, the preste  
 bethoght hym, and thoght that thyng that was in myse-lyckenys,  
 And hadd grace to speke, that hit mygh[t] also wel haue grace and  
 Insyght in othyr thyng. He enquerid of the strangeres that were  
 come Into londe, how hit sholde be of ham? The wolfe answerid  
 and sayde, that 'for the synne of the londe-pepil, almyghty god was  
 displeyd wyth ham, and sende that Pepill to bryng ham in  
 thraldome; and So thay sholde be, thil the Same Pepill were aftyr  
 encombrid wyth Synne<sup>2</sup>. And then thay sholde haue Power to do  
 to ham the Same Wrechydnys, for har Synnes.'

<sup>1</sup> ecce lupus ad eos accedens. Gir. Camb. Op. v. 101.

## [CHAPTER LIV.]

A. D.  
1180-6.  
Henry II's  
sons again  
rebel.

Prince  
Henry  
dies,  
11 June  
1183:  
Geoffrey  
dies  
19 Aug.  
1186.

St. Laur-  
ence,  
Archbp. of  
Dublin,

dies at Eu  
14 Nov.  
1180,  
[\*Fol. 25  
a.]

after  
having  
prophesied  
his death  
there.

John  
Comin is  
next Arch-  
bishop,  
A. D. 1181.  
He is con-  
secrated at  
Velletri,  
A. D. 1182.

Henry II  
gives  
Ireland to  
his son  
John.

**N**at longe ther-aftyꝛ, þe yonge kyng henry, the  
old kyng henryes sone, & his brother Geffrey, the  
Erl of bretaynge, wyth-out many hegh men of thys half þe see, and  
yen half that ham weren an help & consaylle, the thyꝛde tyme  
ayeyne hys fader begaṇ to aryse; bōt sone ther-aftyꝛ, as thegh  
hyt weꝛ thꝛogh wrech of god, thay bothe deyeden, the on aboūt  
mydsomyꝛ at Marcelle—& þat was the yonge kyng,—& þe erl  
sone ther-aftyꝛ deyed eke at parys: and thys þe kynges werē 8  
ayeynes his<sup>1</sup> sones was y-endet.

## [CHAPTER LV.]

**W**Nder this, laurence, Erchebisshope of Dyuelyne,  
(that at the consaylle of the latran hadde  
I-be, & as me seyde, ther he hadde purchased ayenys the 12  
kyng for loue of hys lond-folke, whar-of the kyng hadde grete  
ortrow vp-oṇ hym, wheꝛ-foꝛ he lete hym of hys passage ynto  
Ireland,) the xviij kalends of december, deyed at Oye yn nor-  
mandye; a good mane and holy; & þat, gode almyghty sheweth, 16  
by many myꝛacles þat he openly doth for hym. Me \*rede  
eke of hym, that he was seke thre dayes ar he thader come;  
and whan he sawe ouꝛ lady-chyrch, that ys the modyꝛ-chyrch of  
the toun, he seyde thys vers of the psauter, as prophecye, thꝛogh 20  
þe holy goste: 'Hec Requies mea in *seculum seculi*' et cetera:  
& ys thus mych to sygge an-englysshe, 'Thys ys my reste, world  
wyth-out end; her I wyll wonne, for I hyt haue I-chose.'

**A**ftyꝛ hym, was Erchebysshop of dyuelyne, Ihon comyn, a 24  
maṇ of England borne; & yn England, at euesham, of the clergie  
of dyuelyn (by queyntyse and procurment of the kyng), by on  
accorde I-chose; & of the pope lucye, at the Cyte of Wellet, ther-  
aftyꝛ I-hodet & I-sacred; a man, good clerke & ryghtful; & by 28  
hys myght, mych ryght laked þe stat of holy chyrch yn Irland.

## [CHAPTER LVI.]

**T**he kyng henry, as he there-to-fore hadde  
I-thoght, yaue the Lond of Irland to hys  
yongeste sone, Iohn by name; & whaṇ he hyt hadde hym I-yeuc, 32

<sup>1</sup> overlined later.



## [CHAPTER LIV.]

Not longe ther-aftyr, the yonge kyng Henry, the olde kyng Henryes Sone, and his brodyr Geffery, the Erle of brytayne, with othyr many hey men of this halfe the see, and yen half that ham weryn an helpe and consayl, the thyrde tyme agayn his fadyr be-gan to arryse; but Sone ther-aftyr, as hit were through Sentence of god, thay both died, the one aboute Midsomyre at Marcelle, and that was the yonge kyng; and the Erle Sone ther-aftyr diede also at Paris: and thus the kynges werre agaynes his Sonnes was Endyd.

Capitulum  
liij<sup>m</sup>.

A.D.

1180-6.

prae-  
potentes  
Pictaviae  
procerae,  
cum electa  
Gallicae  
militiae  
juventute.

## [CHAPTER LV.]

Vndyr this laurance, Archebyschope of Deuelyn, (that at the consail of the Latran hadd I-be, and as thay Sayde, ther he had Purchasid agaynes the kyng for loue of his londe-Pepill, wharof the kyng had grette artrow vpon hym, Wherfor he lette hym of his passage in-to Irland,) the xviij kalends of Decembyr died at Oye in Normandy, a good man and holy, and that god almyghty Shewid many Miraclis for / that he opynly doth for hym. We rede also of hym, that he was seke iij<sup>e</sup> dayes ar he thadyr came; and whan he Saw our Ladyes church, that is the modyr church of the toun, he sayde this vers of the Sawter, as prophesy throw the holy goste: "Hec requies mea in seculum seculi: Hic habitabo<sup>1</sup>, quoniam elegi eam." And is thus mych to Say in Englysh, "This is my reste, worlde wythout Ende. Her y wyl dwele, for y hit haue chose" // Aftyr hym, was Archebyschope of Deuelyn, Ihon Comyn, a man of England borne; and in England, at euesham, of the clergi of deuelyn (by queyntyse and procurment of the kyng), by oone acorde chose; and of the Pope Lucie, at the Cite of wellet, ther-aftyr y-hodet and y-Sacrid; a man, god clerke, and ryghtful, and by his myght / mych ryght lakyd the state of holy church In Irland<sup>2</sup>.

Capitulum  
lv<sup>m</sup>.14 Nov.  
1180.

A.D. 1181.

<sup>2</sup> ecclesiae  
Hibernicae  
statum  
egregie  
subli-  
masset.

## [CHAPTER LVI.]

The kyng Henry, as he there-tofor hadd thoght, yaue the londe of Irland to his yongest Sone, Ihon by Name. And whan he hit hadde hym yeue, he Sende the Arche-

Capitulum  
lvj<sup>m</sup>.[Fol. 25  
a.]<sup>1</sup> habitabo, MS.

A. D. 1184. he sent þe Erchebysshope of dyuelyn ouer þe see, to ordeyn ayeayne Archbp. Comin is sent to Ireland; Hugh de Lacy is recald, and Philip of Worcester takes his place. He took tallage of all, and curses with it. hys sones comynge. & sone aftyr þat, hugh de lassy was I-sent aftyr ynto Englonð; and come ynto Irland, Phelype of Wyrcestre, procurato[ur] of þe lond, wyth fourty knyghtes; a man that was 4 good knyght, curteys, & good mete-yeuer; bot oper good ne dydde he noon, saue þat he went from contray to contray, & asked, & wyth streynth toke, both of letred & of lewed, þe cursed tallages of gold & of syluer. & I wnderstond that he neuer good 8 dydde perwyth; ne neuer mane shalle, that so catell gadereth; for many crystes curs, & trew mannys & womannes, pouer & ryche, thay gadereth eke per-wyth: & wel vnsyker may mañ be, to do hys lyf yn aduentur wyth ham that catel so wynnethe.

12

## [CHAPTER LVII.]

The fyrst comynge of kynge Iohn ynto Irland.

He lands at Waterford 25 April,

1185.

Those who conquer the land before him deserve all praise.

Nota the kyng his tytyle to Irland.

Fitz-Stephen and Striguil had good right to come to Ireland.

Whan the kynges sone hadde arayed al dyngge that nede was, for to come yn-to Irland, he put hym to saylle at Melyford, a ferth estre day. he hadde good wynd, & a-morow arryued at Waterford, wyth thre hun- 16 dret knyghtys, & other an-hors, & a-fote ful many. he arryued, the yer of hys old .xxij.; of hys faderes comynge ynto Irland .xij.; of the Erles comynge .xiiij.; of Robertes comynge, fytz-steuenes .xv.; the yee of owr lordes Incarnacion .M. C. lxxxv. 20 Steuenes-sone was forman, & opened the way to þe Erl; the Erl to þe kynge; the kynge to hys sone; & mych hyt ys to preyse, & grete thyng he began, that fyrste ynto Irland so boldly come, the thyng to begyn. Moch also to preysene, he, that 24 aftyr the begynnynge, so nobely come for to eche thyng that was begon; & most of al to preysen, he that al thyng fulle endet, & the lordshype clenlych wan ouer al other [Hy. II]. He, men mowen well vndrestond, that the Englesshy-meñ ne came nat 28 wyth so mych vnryght yn-to Irland as many folk weneth; for Robert, steuenes-sone, & þe Erl, wyth good ryght come to Macmorgñ ynto leynester; the on, hys trouth for to hold, & hym for to helpe; that other, for loue of hys doghtre; nathles, of 32 Waterford, ne of Myth, ne of Desmoñ, whych the Erl at the begynnynge name to hym, & conquered out of leynestre, ne sey I noght that he hadde al fully ryght ther-to. Bot of the fyft



bischope of Deuelyn ouer the see, to ordeyn agayn his comynge. A.D. 1184. And Sone aftyr that, hugh de Lacy was Sende<sup>1</sup> into England; And come Into Irland, Philipp of Wircestre, procuratour of the londe, [Philip, with fourty knyghtes; a man that was good knyght / curteys, and goode mete-yeuer; but othyr good ne did he noone; Saue that he went from contray to contray, and askyd, and wyth streynth toke, both of lerid and lewid, the cursid tollagis of golde and Syluer. And I vndyrstonde that he neuer good did ther-with; ne neuer man shall, that So good gadderid; for many crystis curs, and trew manys and womannys, Pouer and rych, thay gadderid also ther-wyth: and wel vnsure may a man to be, to do his lyfe in aduenture wyth them that So goode doth gette.] in his expedition to Armagh,] a clero sacro auri tributum execrabile tam exigens quam extorquens. —Op. v. 360.

## [CHAPTER LVII.]

Whan the kynges Sone hadd arrayed al thyng that nede was forto come Into Irland, he Putt hym to Sayl at Milleford the iiij<sup>e</sup> day aftyr Estyr. He had good wynde, and amorrow londid at Watyrforde, wyth CCC knyghtes, and othyr an-hors and a-foote ful many. he londyd, the yere of his age xxij, Of his faderis comynge Into Irlande xiiij, Of the Erlis comynge xiiij, of Roberes comynge fitz Steuyn xv, the yere of Oure lordys Incarnacion M<sup>r</sup>. Clxxxv. Steuenes Sone was the fryst man, And oppenyd the wey to the Erle: the Erle to the kyng; the kyng to his Sone; and gretly he is to Preyse, and grete thyng he began, that fryst in-to Irland So boldely come, the thyng to begyn; gretly also he is to Preyse, that, aftyr the begynnyng, so nobely come forto execute the thyng that was begon; And moste of al he is to Preyse, that al thyng full Endyd, and the lorehip clenly conquestyd ouer al othyr // Here men mowen wel vndyrstond, that the Englysh-men came not wyth so mych vnryght into Irland as many pepill wenyth. For Robert Steuenes-Sone and the Erle come to Macmurgħ into leynystre; that oon, on his throuth forto holde, and hym forto helpe, / that othyr, for loue of his doghtyr. Natheles, of Watyrford, ne of Mythe, nethyr of Desmon, wych the Erle at the begynnyng toke to hym and conquerid out of leynystre, I Sey not that he hadd ful ryght therto. But of the fryst Parte of the londe

Capitulum lvij<sup>m</sup>.

The fryst comyng of kyng Ihoñ Into Irlande.

[Op. v. 382]

Multum ergo contulit qui ausu nobili principum dedit.

Nota the kyngys titil to Irlande.

2 quintae portionis insulae.

<sup>1</sup> Sende aftyr, MS.

Henry II's  
fivefold  
right to  
Ireland:

1. All the  
Irish  
Princes  
yielded to  
him.

[\*Fol. 25  
b.]

2. The  
Pope of  
Rome  
granted  
Ireland to  
him.

3. Gur-  
guntius  
won  
Ireland.

4. Arthur  
had truage  
from  
Ireland.

5. The  
Irish came  
from  
Bayonne,  
subject to  
England.  
English  
kings are,  
of right,  
Lords of  
Ireland.

Nota that  
Iresshemena  
bene false  
of kynd.

parte of the lond that was the Erles throgħ hys wyf, The  
lordshype clenly þe erl yaf the kyng; & al þe prynces of the  
lond ther-aftyr, by har good wyll, yolden ham to the kyng, to  
be euermoʀ sugget to hym & to hys. Vp\*-on al thys, þe pope of 4  
Rome, that ys heede of al crystendome, and that hath a specyall  
ryght of al the Ilondes of crystendome as wyde as the world  
ys, he yaf plenerly, and confermed to the kyng, the lordshyp  
of the lond, as hyt ys to-fore I-told. and of eldre ryght we 8  
fyndeth eke I-wrytte, that the kynges of England haue to Irland  
of Germonð, Belynes sone, kyng of Brytaygne, that ys nowē  
Englond, he come ynto Irland, & whan the lond; & many yeʀ  
me baʀ hym truage, and other aftyʀ hym, ynto brytaygne. 12  
Ther-aftyʀ the kyng Arthuʀ hadde truage eke out of Irland;  
& Gylmory the kyng, that thañ was wyth other kyng of the  
Ilondes, was wyth hym at the grete feste that he held at karlyonð.  
Oñ other halue, the folk of Irland come formeste out of bastles 16  
& out of Bayonð, that longeth now to gascoyne, wherof the kynges  
of england ben lordes. And thys me may wel vnderstond, that  
both by old ryght & by newe, the kynges of Englond owen wel  
to haue the lordshyp of Irland. And thegh the folk of the lond 20  
neuer ne hadde be subyet ther-byfore, hyt oght be I-noght, þat  
thay al by good wylle yold ham to kyng henry, by othes & by  
ostages, & al sykernesse that hymself lyked; & þe popes that  
þer-aftyʀ hym graunted & confermed the lordshyp of the lond, 24  
& accorsed al ham that yñ any tyme thar-ayeyn come. And  
thegh thay, throgħ kynd falsnesse & vnstabilnesse that yn ham  
ys, lytyl tel of othes & of mansynge, natheles, thay wer neuer,  
throgħ no man that power hadde, ther-of assoylled ne vnbound. 28  
Bot man may bynd hymself wyth such thyng, bot nat so lyghly  
vnbynd.

#### [CHAPTER LVIII.]

Giraldus  
says no  
more of  
the Con-  
quest, but  
explains  
why it was  
never com-  
pleted.

Maystir Geraud ne telleth no forther of the  
conquest; bot of þe lette where-throgħ the lond 32  
was [not] clenlych I-conquered, ne the folk fully I-brought yn thedone,  
he telleth such resons:—Thay that fyrst comenð, hadden ful wel  
I-spedde wyth-out any lette, yif þe kyng ne hadd so astyly



that was the Erlis by hys wyfe, The lorchipp clenly the Erle yaue to the kyng; and al the Pryneys of the londe ther-aftyr, by har good-will, yoldyn ham to the kyng to be euer-more subiecte to hym and to hys. Vpon al this, the pope of Rome, that is hede of al crystyndome, *and* that hath a Special ryght of al the Ilondys of *qui insulas omnes sibi specinli* crystyndome, as wid as the worlde is, he yaue Plenerly, *and* con- *quodam jure re-*fermyd to the kyng, the lorchipp of the lond, as hit is to-fore tolde. *spiciunt.* And of eldyre ryght we fyndyth also y-writte, that the kyng of Englande haue to Irland \* of Gormon, Belynes Sone, Kyng of *[\*Fol. 25 b.]* Brytaigne<sup>1</sup>, that is now England, he come Into Irland, and toke the londe; *and* many a yere thay bare hym truage, *and* othyr aftyr hym, Into brytaigne. Ther-aftyr also, kyng Artoure hadd truage out of Irland<sup>2</sup>; and Gylmory the kyng, that that tyme was wyth othyr kynges of the Ilandis, was *with* hym at the grete feste that he helde at karliōn. On othyr halue, the Pepil of Irland come fryste out of Bascles *and* out of Bayon, that longyth now to gas- *Practerea urbs Baonensis, quam hodie nostra continet Gasconia, Blasconiae caput est, unde Hibernenses pro-*coyne, Wherof the kynges of Englande ben lordys. And thus ye may wel vndyrstonde that, both by olde ryght and by new, the kynges of England owen well to haue the lorchipp of Irland. And thegh the folke of the londe neuer hadd be Subiecte ther-by-fore, hit oght be y-now, that thay al, by good-will, yaue ham to the kyng henry by othys and hostages, *and* by al maner Surte that he desyrid<sup>3</sup>; and the Popis that ther-aftyr hym graunted *and* confermyd the lorchipp of the londe, and acorsyd al them that in any tyme ther-agayn come. ¶ And thegh thay, by kynde falsnes and *Nota that Irysh-men bene fals of kynde.* vnstabilnes that in ham is, lytel tell of othys *and* of mansynge, natheles, thay were neuer, by noo man that Power hadd, therof assoilled ne vnbound. But a man may bynde hym-Selfe *with* Such thyng, but noght So lyght vn-bynde.

## [CHAPTER LVIII.]

**M**aister geraud ne tellyth no ferdyr the conquest; *Capitulum lvijm.* but of the lette wherfor the londe was [not] clenlych I-conquerid, ne the Pepil fully y-broght in theudom, he tellyth Such resonys:—Thay that fryst comen, haddyn full well y-Spede

<sup>1</sup> Brytayne, MS.<sup>2</sup> firmis fidei sacramentique vinculis: v. 320.

1. Henry II's stop-  
ping the  
coming  
of the  
English. I-sent, & forboden that no man ne shold to ham come; &  
thay that wer̃ ynto þe lond I-come, shold the lond leue, &  
turne ayeine, otheṛ forlese al that thay helden of the kyng  
yn otheṛ londes. And whaṇ the kyng was ynto the lond 4

2. His going home  
so soon  
after his  
Invasion of  
Ireland. hymself I-come wyth so moch power, hyt had he wel ynoght,  
naṛ that he hadd so sone turned ayeine, thogh the popes heste  
& þe cardynals, & eke the lyddernesse that hys sones hadden  
I-purueyed to do hym, the whyll that he was out of lond. ffor 8  
the folk that, at the begynnyng of so sodeyne comyng, was so  
swyth amayed, & aferd & agrysed of the wepned men stalwarth-  
nesse, and of the derne wondyng of arwes, thogh lange abydyng  
& sleuyth of Maystres that no stalwarthnesse ne sykernesse was 12  
wyth, by lytyll & lytel lerned, wepne to ber̃, arwes to shote;  
& so wel woned ham ther-to, that oft ham byfelle wonderly goode  
happes yn fyght vpon englysshe-men; & on thys maner, that at  
the begynnyng lyghly myght be I-shent & I-brought vnder fote, 16  
wortheṇ bold & staluarth to wythstond, & defend ham-self. Me  
may rede & ouerseche the boke of kynges, þe prophetes, al the  
old rede fro end to otheṛ, & other tymes that afoor haue I-be;  
me shal neuer fynd that wer̃ & hate came vpon folk, bot for 20  
haṛ synnes; & so hyt may wel be of the folk of Irland, that oft  
serued wel, for haṛ synnes, to haue werre & wrak of otheṛ out-  
londes men; natheles, god almyghty was nat ham so wengeable  
wrot, that he tholled ham fully, nether al to be vndone, ne fully 24

[\*Fol. 26  
a.] I-brought yn-to theudome, nether \*thay clenly forelore grace; ne  
the other clenlych hadden grace, the Maystrye to hawe, ham fully  
& preysebly yn theudome for to hold. Me fynt that þe Iresshe-  
men hadden four prophetes, euery yn hys tyme, Patryk, Molyng, 28  
Braken, & Colmkylly, whos bokes ben wyth ham an Iresshe  
I-wrytte; euery of ham spekeṇ of the fyght of thys conqueste,  
& seyne that 'lange stryf & oft fyghtyng shal be for thys lond;  
& oft the lond shal be I-horyed & I-steined wyth grete slacht of 32  
men.' Bot vnnethe thay beheteth the Englyssh peple fully þe  
maystrye a lytell aṛ domesday, & that the lond shal from see to see  
be I-castelled & fully I-won. Bot the englysshe-men shollen, ar  
that, oft wel feble be, & myche desayse yn the lond so [? se]. Barcan 36

The Irish,  
at first  
frightend,  
learnt to  
fight and  
shoot,  
  
and often  
beat the  
English.  
  
War comes  
on folk  
only for  
their sins.  
The Irish  
sind, but  
God gave  
  
[\*Fol. 26  
a.]  
  
no one  
grace to  
enslave  
them.  
The four  
chief Irish  
Prophets  
say that  
the  
  
English  
shan't fully  
conquer  
Ireland till  
Doomsday;



with-out any lette, yf the kynge ne hadd So hastely y-sende *and* *si non primis*  
 comandid that no man ne sholde to ham come; and thay that were *prae-cur-*  
 Into the londe y-come, sholde the londe lewe, *and* turne ayeyn, *sorum*  
 othyr to lese al that thay heldyn of the kynge in othyr londys. *regio*  
 And whan the kynge was Into the land hym-Selfe y-come with So *fuisse*  
 mych Power, hit hadd y-be wel y-now, ' nar that he hadd So Sone *edicto*  
 turned agayn, throug the Popis comandment and the cardynalis. *prae-cisa*  
 And also the wickydnys that his Sones haddyn y-Purueyed to done *sequela.*  
 hym, the whyle that he was out of londe. For the Pepil that, at *si ab*  
 the begynnyng of So Sodeyn comynge, was So gretly aferde *ausu nobili*  
 agrisid the wepynnyd-men boldenys, *and* of the cruel woundynge of *tum prae-*  
 arowes, throw longe abydyng and Sleuth of Maysters, that no *mature*  
 boldnys ne Sickyrnys was wyth, by lytell and lytell lernyd wepyd *intestina*  
 to berre, Arrowes to shote; *and* So wel vsyd ham therto, that *conspi-*  
 many tymys ham by-fell wondyrly good happys in fyght vpon *ratio non*  
 englysh-men; and on this manere, that at the begynnyng lygh[t]ly *retocasset.*  
 myght be shente *and* broght vndyrfoote, Weryn bolde and hardy *confundi*  
 to Wythstonde *and* defende ham-Selfe / We may rede and ouer- *poterat.*  
 seche the boke of kynges, the prophetis, al the olde rede fro ende to *totam . .*  
 oper, *and* othyr tymys that to-for haue y-be, We shal neuer *Veteris*  
 fynde that were ne hate came vpon Pepill, but for har Synnes. *Testamenti*  
 And So hit may wel be of the Pepil of Irland, that ofte serued *seriem.*  
 wel, for har Synnes, to haue werre \* and wrake of othyr strange [\*Fol. 26  
 comen men. Natheles, god almyghty was not ham so wengeabil *a.]*  
 wroth that he wolde fully ham Putte out of londe, nethyre al to be *vel omnino*  
 vndone, ne fully broght Into traldome, nethyr thay clenly forlorne *subjici*  
 grace. Nethyr ne othyr hadd not fully grace, the Maystry to haue, *meruit vel*  
*and* ham fully *and* Pesabilly in thraldome to holde / ¶ We *deleri.*  
 fyndyth that the Irysh-men haddyn iiij<sup>e</sup> prophetis euery in his *Nota de*  
 tyme, Patrike, Molyng, Brakan and Colmkylle, Whos bokis ben *prophetis*  
 wyth ham in Irysh writte. Euery of ham Spekyth of the fyght of *Hibernie.*  
 this conqeste, And Sayne that 'lange stryfe *and* of fyghtynge shal  
 be for this londe; *and* ofte the lond shal be defowlid *and* y-steynynd  
 wyth grete Slaght of men.' But vnnethe thay grauntyth that the  
 Englysh pepil fully the maystry, a lytel ar the day of Dome, *and* that <sup>2</sup> *ex tofo*  
 the lond shal from See to See / be castelid *and* fully Enhabited <sup>2</sup> *subacta et*  
 But þ<sup>e</sup> Englysh-men shal, ar that, ofte wel febil be, *and* mych *incas-*  
*tellata.*

but they  
shall be  
troubled  
by a King  
from St.  
Patrick's  
Moun-  
tains.

seyth, that 'throgħ a kyng that shal come out of the wyl mon-  
tayngnes of seynt patrykes þat me cleppeth slesto (slesco?),  
& on a soneday-nyght<sup>1</sup>, a castel yn the wodd contreys of Offalye  
shal to-brek, most what al the Englysshe-men of Irland shullen 4  
be 'I-stourbet' //

## [CHAPTER LIX.]

I'll tell you  
why Prince  
John  
didn't  
succeed in  
Ireland.

Now and for whych thyng hit was, that the  
kynges sonnes trauaille, and bar mochel costes,  
at thys tyme ne sped nat as tham ogh, hyt ys noñ harme 8  
thegh me heṛ sette; for thegh of thyng that ys I-past ne be no  
remedy, natheles, of thyng that ys to come, me may be waṛ  
by ensample of haṛ dede. Whan the kynges sone was Icome  
to lond at Waterford, thedeṛ come to hym Iresshe-meñ of the 12  
contray, ryeh meñ, and of pees trew hym besoght, & made hym  
grete gladnesshe as hare lord, & profred hym to kysseñ. Thay  
anoon ryght of tho new meñ, & namely of the Normannes, wereñ  
shame-fully receyued, & lothly I-hokred, & by the berdes—whych, 16  
yn the maner of the contrey, they haddeñ grete & long—some of  
ham shamly wereñ I-shakeñ & I-draw. As sone as thay comen to  
haṛ owne, wyth al that thay hadden thay wyth-drowen ham, & left  
the contrey & wenten to the kyng of Thomoñ, and hym [told], & 20  
also the kyng of desmoñ & the kyng of Connaght, what thay  
hadd receyued & found wyth the kynges sone. ¶ A yonglyng al  
wyth yonglynges gouerned; & by yonge meñ rede, al he wroght; no  
wytte ne no staluarthnesse wyth hym was found; no sekernese ne 24

When he  
landed,  
rich men  
welcomd  
him, but  
had their  
beards  
pull'd by  
his young  
Normans.

The Irish  
went off  
disgusted,  
and told  
their  
country-  
men.

The three  
chiefs of  
Ireland (of  
Limerick,  
Con-  
naught,  
and Cork,)

swore  
they'd fight  
for their  
freedom  
to the  
death.

trouth to Iresshemen, thayr south nat behete. Whaṛ tythynges  
heṛ-of was I-spronge, thay thre cheftayns of Irland that weṛ theṛ  
redy to come to the kynges sone, & ham to hym, & do hym homage,  
thay thoghtten that, aftyṛ thay smal harmes, woldeñ come more; & 28  
whaṛ me such thyng dydde to good meñ & meke, wel wors  
me wold do the prouth & the vnbuxum. Thay toke ham to  
rede, & sworñ to-gedder that thay woldeñ vpon haṛ lyues wythstond  
the ryghtes of haṛ old fredomes, & defende, for to be al to-heweñ. 32  
And for that thay shold<sup>2</sup> th[is] th[ing] the better to end brynge, thay

<sup>1</sup> MS. sone myght.<sup>2</sup> From this line to the end of the page, the ends of the lines are missing, the corner of the page being torn off.



myssayse haue in the londe. So Brakan Seyth, that 'through' a kynge that shal come of the wylde Montaignes of Seynte Patrickes, that is callid Selfco, and on a soneday-nyght<sup>2</sup>, a castel in the wode Sleto, alias Ofaley. contreies of Ofelanye shal breke, most what al the Englysh-men of Irland shal be strobyd.'

## [CHAPTER LIX.]

**N**OW and for wyche thyng hit was, that the kynges <sup>Capitulum lix.</sup> Sones travayll, and his grete costes, at this tyme sped <sup>3 viri non</sup> noght as tham oght, Hit is none harme thegh I her reherse. Forto <sup>infirmi, fideles</sup> speke of thyng that is Paste, is no remedy; Nevyrthelasse, of thyng <sup>hactenus</sup> that is to come, we may be-ware by ensampil of har dedes // <sup>Anglia, et pacifici, tanquam</sup> ¶ Whan the kynges Sone was come to londe at Watyrforde, thedyr come to hym Irysh-men of the contray, rych men<sup>3</sup>, and of trew Pees hym be-soght / and made hym grete gladnys as har lorde, and <sup>domino congratulantes, et eum in osculo</sup> proferid to kysse hym. Than anoone ryght / of two new men, and <sup>pacia suscipientes. a novis nostris et Normannis.</sup> namely of the Normanes, waryn shamefully rescewid, and lewidly Pullid ham by the Berdys, whych, in the maner of the contrey, thay haddyū grete and longe. Some of them wer Shamefully shaken and ydrawen. As Sone as thay comen to har owyn, wyth all that <sup>6 nullam Hibernicis securitatem promittentes.</sup> thay hadde, thay wythdrawen ham and lefte the contrey, and wente to the kynge of Thomonde, and tolde hym, and also the kynge of Desmonde and the kynge of Connaght, what thay hadd rescewyd and found with the kynges sone. ¶ A yonglynge al wyth yonglynges gouernyd, and by yonge men consayl al didd; And no witte ne boldnys wyth hym was founde; ne Surte, ne trouth, to yrysh-men thay couth not promyse<sup>5</sup>. ¶ Whan tythyngys herof was spronge, thay iij<sup>6</sup> captaynys of Irland<sup>6</sup> that was that tyme redy to come to the kynges sone, and yelde ham to hym, and to do hym homage, thay thoghten, that after thay smale harmys, wolde come more; and whan thay Such thyng did to good men and meke, Wel wors thay wolde do to the Prute Ihesus. and the vnboxum. Thay toke hame to \*consail, and Sware <sup>[\*Fol. 26 b.]</sup> to-gadderes that thay woldyn vpon Har Lywes wythstond the ryghtes of har olde fredomys, and defende til thay were al hewyde. And for thay sholde this thyng the bettyr brynge to

<sup>1</sup> per quemdam regem, de desertis Patricii montibus ventrum, et nocte Dominica, castrum quoddam in nemorosis Ophelanie partibus irrupturum, jura omnes fere Anglici ab Hibernia turbabuntur.—Op. v. 385.

<sup>2</sup> MS. sone myght (the same mistake, as before, in both MSS.).

<sup>antiquae libertatis sub capitum discrimine jura tuendum.</sup>

The Irish  
rebels  
make  
friends  
with their  
foes.

Tho' -  
false them-  
selves, they  
object to  
others  
being false  
to them.

[\*Fol. 26  
b.]

John's  
failure is  
explaind  
by Re-  
hoboam's,  
whose  
following  
of young  
men's  
advice,  
lost him  
ten Tribes  
of Israel.

John gave  
the lands  
of faithful  
Irish, to  
new men.

So these  
Irish  
turnd  
against  
him.

The coast  
towns and  
castles  
were given  
to rebels,  
who only  
gatherd  
gold, and  
did harm  
to peace-  
men, not  
to foes.

senttēd about ynto al the lond, & allyed h . . . & maden frendes of  
ham that wē byfore fome[n], & thus thogh ham that th . . . -nyge  
putte (progh pryde) from ham, both thaye & al other most dele  
were . . . . pys folke, as euery otheṛ wyld folk, thegh thay no 4  
wyrshype ne couthe . . . . me shold do ham wyrshype &  
manshype. And thegh thay nat be . . . . . wyth falsnesse,  
natheles thay shonneth that otheṛ do ham [any falskede;] & thus  
the good that thay loueth yn otheṛ, thay rech. . . . . ham 8  
to-gydder thay . . . . . \*Euery wysman vnderstond hym  
by Roboam, Salomones sone, how mych harme falleth of pryde &  
ouerthrowshype. whan he, aftyr hys fadyr, was made kynge of Israel,  
pe folk come to hym, & bysoght hym that he shold ham somewhat 12  
allegge of pe seruyces that thay wē I-woned to do hys fadyr. He  
was yonge; and by yonge meīd consaylle, answard & seyde, 'My  
fyngyr ys gretter than was my faders ryggebone; & yf he yow  
bette wyth yardes, y wyl yow bette wyth breres.' ¶ Thogh that 16  
answar, the ten kynredes hym lesteīd, & maden ham kynge of  
Ieroboam, & neuer aftyr weren vnder hym ne noon of hys: of al  
pe folk of Israel, non wyth hym abode, bot twey kynredes. Vpon  
thys, pe Iresshe-men londes, that, fro the tyme that Robert steuenes- 20  
sone fyrst come ynto pe lond, trewly wyth englysshe-men haddeīd  
I-be, wē I-take fro ham, & yeuen to the newe meīd. And thay  
anoon turned to the Iresshe-men, & aspyed al the harme that thay  
myght do to pe Englysshe; & werē, so mych the more harme dydde, 24  
that thay so pryue werē wyth ham ther-byfore

#### [CHAPTER LX.]

The tounes vp-on the see, and the castels, wyth  
the londes that to ham belonget, & the truages  
& the rentes that shold be I-spende yn comyn nede of the 28  
lond, & to ham, of rebelles thay wā I-sette to such that wel  
fayne gadered gold & syluer wyth-yn wowes, eten wel & drynkeīd,  
and ladden Idel lyf, & al thyng vnprofytably wastedēd, to harme  
of pees-meīd, & nat of fomeīd. Amonge otheṛ harmes betydde yit 32  
more, that yn lond so smert & so kene, & folk so weyward & so  
vnredy, & so mych harme doynge, The kepyng & the maystry toke



Ende, thay Sende about into al the londe, and allied ham togaderis, and madyn frendys of tham that were enemys. And thus throw ham, that thay at the begynnyng Putte (throw Pryde) from them, both thay and al otheres for the more parte was fro them stirrid. ¶ This Pepyll, as euery othyr wyldy Pepill, thegh thay no wyrchipp kowth not, Natheles thay wolde that hy sholde do ham wyrchippe and manshippe. And thegh thay be not aferde ne ashamyd to be founde wyth falsnesse, Natheles, thay Shonnyth that any othyr sholde do ham any falshede: and thay lowyth trouthe; and thus good that thay lowyth in otheres, thay thynke no fors whow lytill be found in ham-Selfe therof. Euery vysman vnderstond hym by Roboam, Salomones Sone, how mych harym fallyth of Pryde. Whan he, after his fadyr, was made kyng of Israel, the Pepil come to hym, and besoght hym that he sholde ham Somewhate allegge of the Seruyces that thay were wonyd to do to his fadyr. He was yonge; and, by yonge men consayl, answerid and Sayde, ¶ "My fyngyr is more and grettyr then was my Fadyris bake-bone; And yf he bette yow wyth yarde, y will bette you with breris" / ¶ And for that answey, al the tene kynredes leste hym / and made ham a kyng of Ieroboam; and neuer after weryn vnder hym, ne noone of his. Of al the Pepil of Israel, none with hym abode, but two kynredis. Vpon this, the Irysh-men londes that fro the tyme that Robert Steuenes Sone fyrste come Into the londe, trewely wyth englysh-men haddyn, wer take fro ham, and yewyn to two new men<sup>1</sup>. And thay anoone turnyd to the Irysh-men, and aspiid al the harme that thay myght do to be Englysh; and werre, so mych the more harme didde, that thay were so Pryue wyth ham therto-fore<sup>2</sup>.

## [CHAPTER LX.]

The tounes vpon the See, and the castelis, wyth the londys that to ham Partenyd, and the truages and the rentes that sholde be I-Spend in the comyn Profite of the londe, and yaue hit to Rebellys<sup>3</sup>, and to suche that well fayne gaderid golde and Syluer wyth-In woves, etten wel, and drounken, and laddyn ydill lyfe, and al thyng vnprofytably wastyne, to grete harme of Pees men, and noght to enemys. Amonge al othyr harmys befell yit more, that in the londe So Smyrte and So kene, and Pepil So weyward and So vnredy, and So mych harme doynge,

*Quia  
primos a  
nobis inso-  
lenter re-  
pulumus...  
tam illos*

*quam  
maiores  
universos  
eo exemplo  
procul  
absterrui-  
mus bonum  
quod in  
aliis  
diligunt,  
minus in  
se reperiri  
non  
erubescunt.*

*ego vos  
caedam  
scorpio-  
nibus.*

*novis  
nostris,  
contra  
promissa  
contu-  
linus.*

*tanto  
quidem ad  
nocendum  
efficaciores,  
quanto  
prius  
fuerant  
famili-  
ariiores.*

*talibus  
est  
assignata,  
qui aurum  
Capitulum  
lx<sup>m</sup>.*

*assidue  
intra  
muros  
aucupantes  
... cum  
civium, non  
hostium  
damno  
cuncta in-  
utiliter con-  
sumebant.*

The Eng-  
lish  
Governors  
were  
cowards,  
and liked  
women  
better than  
war.

The Irish  
now burnt,  
slew, and  
stole.  
The Eng-  
lish of the  
coast stuck  
to wine  
and  
women.  
The inland  
was plun-  
dered by  
the Irish.

Every-  
where was  
wailing ;  
every day  
fresh news  
of fire and  
slaughter.

Judges

ruind  
good men  
and true,  
[\*Fol. 27  
a.]  
worse than  
Irish foes  
did.

an hand, that leuer<sup>1</sup> hadde har ryche robes, than ham to wepne ;  
leuer to sytte at borde, þan hoste to lede ; redyeþ to fle þan to  
fyght ; leuer to hold a fayr mayd by the womb, thañ speþ & sheld  
to beþ an hand ; nether trewe to haþ vnderlynges, ne dredful to haþ 4  
enemyes. Thay had nat that good herte, ne of ky[nde] yt com to  
hañ, for to spaþ the meke, & wreke ham on the prout ; bot al ayeine  
that, thay sp[arid & <sup>2</sup>] lykled wyth the sterne, & pulled & strope  
ham that non harme dydde. Vnder whych gouernours, the 8  
Iresshe-men begon to pryde & take ouer-hand of the englysshe,  
branten and slowen, robbeden And stellen ; for the maystres wyth  
haþ meygne, helden ham alwey yn the cytees vpon the see, þer  
plente was of wynd & of women, to whych they weren al clenlych 12  
I-yeue to. Bot the lond wyth-In, & the marches next haþ enemyes,  
& the castles & the tounes that weren amynd, weren I-lefte &  
I-brant, the men I-robbed & I-sleyn, wyth-out any lette. The  
good knyghtes & the eldre folk of the lond, as men that me 16  
nought told-by that whyle, wyth-drow ham al sleightly, & held ham  
al styll, for to awayty al soft, what endynge such hyddous stormes  
wold ham. That whyle, þe state of the lond was such, In al places  
was weylynge & wonynge, yollynge & crynge ; Al þe weyes forlete ; 20  
no man ne trust to mete wyth other ; euery day come newe  
tythynges of bernynge & sleynge, robberyng & reuyng<sup>3</sup> yn the out  
londes : vnneth a lytel shadow of pees was yn þe bourgh tounes, þer  
the wyn quenched al þe sorowe ; the gold & the syluer, al oper 24  
harmes ; thaþ me shold yn so lydder world wend from contray to  
contray wyth folk I-wepned, and chasty ham that mysdeden. Thay  
setten Iustices of bench yn haþ robes of scarlet & menyuer : men  
wyth swerdes & battes ham for to kepe, ther no nede was. Than 28  
was þe motynge, the pedyng and reynnyng of good men and  
trewe that \* non harme dydden : wors ham dydde the harme & the  
ten that pay ther-throgh hadden, þaþ the robberyng & reuyng that  
thaþ enemyes ham dydde. ¶ Another thyng that mych was to 32

<sup>1</sup> MS. louer.<sup>2</sup> Torn out.<sup>3</sup> The corner of p. 26 b was torn off before being written upon, so that there are no words missing, and the lines follow each other as usual.



The keypyng<sup>1</sup>, and the men that was Maysteres to kepe the lande, he had lewer his rych clothis to were, than wepyn to berre; and lowid bettyr to sitte at borde, than hoste to lede; and more redyer to fle than to fyght; leuer to holde a fayre mayde by the wombe, than spere and Shelde to ber an honde. And also they wer not trewe to har Subiectis, ne dredfull to har enemys. They had not that \* good Herte, ne of good Kynde Hit come to Ham, forto Spare the meke, and wreke Ham on the Prowte; but al the contrary thay did. Thay Sparid and fikyllid wyth the sterne, and toke and Pullid the meke, and them that noone harme did // Vndyr whych gouernors, the Irysh-men begon to be Prowde, and to haue the Maystry of the Englysh-men, and branten, and Slayne, and Stellen / For thay Maysteris, wyth har meny, heldyn<sup>2</sup> ham at al tymys in the Citteis vpon the see-syde, ther Plente was of wyne and of women, to the wyche thay yaue ham clenly to. But the lond wyth-In, and the marchis nexte har enemys, and the castelis and the tounes that weryn a-myde, weryn lefte and brante, the men robyd and Slayn, wyth-out any resistence. The good knyghtes and the eldyr Pepill of the londe, as men that noght is tolde by, that tyme wythdrow ham al Slyly, and held ham al styлле, for-to witte al Softe what Ende Suche grete Stormys sholde haue. That tyme, the state of the londe was Suche, In al Placis was wepyng and cryenge, and myche Sorrow. All the weyes was lefte, that no man trustid not to mete with anothyr; euery day come newe tythyngis of brennyng and Sleyng, robberyng and rewyng in the out-landis. Vnneth a lytyll Sadow of Pees was in the burgage tounes<sup>3</sup>, ther the wyne quenchild al the Sorrow; the golde and the syluere, al the harmys. Thar thay Sholde, in so wyckyd a tyme, goo from contray to contray wyth Pepill y-wepenyd, and correcte ham that did amys; Thay Syttyn Iustices of benche in hare Roobis of Scarlete and menywere; men with Swerdis and battis forto kepe ham, ther no nede was. Than was the motyng, the pledyng, and reuyng of goode men and trew, that noone harme didde. Wors hame didd the harme and the angyr that thay ther throggh haddyn / than the robberyng and reuyng that har enemys ham dide // Anothyr thyng that gretly is to mowrne, be-felle also, wher-of god was

A. D. 1185.

*1 Stipendiaria quippe familia, suos imitata magistros, suisque maioribus morem gerens.*

[\*Fol. 27 a.]

*2 [heldym MS.] vino cenerique data, maritimis in urbibus moram assidue faciebat. Antiqua vero militia novorum ingruente malitia, tanquam vilis et reprobata, latuit interim et siluit.*

*3 sed solum in urbibus pacis ut cumque seruari umbra videbatur.*

[See the Latin below, p. 152.]

A. D. 1185. rewe byfelle also, whaſ-of gode was worſte I-quemed: Ther prince cometh newly to lond hyt becometh welle that he wyrshype god & holy chyrch, mayntenynge the ryghtes, & yeue more there-to. Bot þe newe prynce nat only held hym from that for to eche the 4 good of holy chyrch, bot londes & rentes & pryuyleges that thay of old world hadde & vsed, at hys fyrst comynge yn many places he bename al clene; ynd other places he chaunged, & yaue wors & lasse thaſ for; & hyt may wel be, þat hys spede yn othere thynges was 8 euer the wors & noght þe bettyr. On thys maner the englysshe weren both argh & woke to assayllen and to fyght, þe Iresshe stronge & bold to wythstonde, tyl that þe new prynce saue openly that al thyng vnder hys newe men yede to loste; he chaunget 12 ham & renued, as men that nothyng couth, & drogh to hym the old knyghtes & the good men that waren ther-to-for Ivsed to fyght yn the maner of þe lond, & sette Ioſn de Curcy maystre & chefteyne of al thyng that was to done; vnder whom þe state & 16 þe pees of the lond, by as mych began anoon ryght to amend, as Ioſn, of hert & of staluarthnesshe, passed al other, passynge & throggh sechyng the Inlondes, as Desmone, Thomone, Mounester, Connaght; & let nat the meygne vndo hamself wyth oft harme & 20 lostes, doynge to hys fomen, & oft to hym-self & to hys, as he that noght was adredde to assaye þe vnsyker aduentures of fyght & of baret.

## [CHAPTER LXI.]

Prince John had three sets of men: 1. Normans, the worst, whom he trusted most; 2. the English he brought with him; 3. the English in Ireland, the best, whom he trusted least.

<sup>1</sup> The yonge prynce at the begynnynge hadde wyth 24 hym thre manere of meygne, Normannes, Englysshe, & þe Englysshe that he found yn the lond. In wyrshype, gret frenshype, & loue, he hold the fyrst & the worst; In lasse, the mydmest & the better; In allerleste, the latest & þe 28 beste. The fyrst ne myght nat lyue wyth-out wyn, yn whyche thay weren fostred; & for-thy thay forsoken on al wyse to beyn yn marches & yn castels fer from the see I-sette; no-wheſ bot about the kynges sone & hys body, kepe thay myght nat be, & hym folwen, 32 & negh hym be, wyth-out any departynge. fer from the weste &

<sup>1</sup> The usual large initial letter is omitted here, a space being left for it in which a small t is put.



moste dysplesyd. Ther Prynce comyth newly to londe, hit becomyth that he wirchippe god and holy church, mayntenynge the ryghtes, *and* yeue more therto. But the new Prynce, not oonly helde hym frome that, forto eche the good of hooly church; but londis and rentis *and* Pryuilegis that thay of olde Worlde hadde *and* vsyd / At his fryst comynge, in many Placis he toke al clene, and in othyr Placis he chaungid, *and* yaue Wors and lasse therfor. And hit may wel be, that his Spede in othyr thyngis was euer the wors, *and* noght the bettyr. On this maner the Englysh-men wer both febill and feynte to assaylen and to fyght, and the Irysh-men bolde *and* stronge to wythsonde, till that the new Prynce opynly Saw that al thyng vndyr his new men yede to loste. he chaunged ham, *and* remewid as men that nothyng kowth, *and* drewe to hym the olde knyghtes, and the good men that weryn therto-for y-vsyd to fyght in the maner of the londe, And Sette Ihon de Curcy, Maystyr and captayn of al thyng that was to doun, Vndyr Whom the State and the Pees of the londe, by as-mych began anoone ryght to amende, as Ihon, of herte \* *and* of Boldnys, Passid all othyr, Passynge *and* throw shechyng the In-Londys, As Desmonde, Thomon, Mownyster, Connaght, *and* lette not the meny Vndo ham-Selfe wyth ofte harme *and* lostis, doynge to his ennemys *and* ofte to hym-Selfe *and* to his, as he that noght was adrede to assay the vnsure aduentures of fyght And of battaylle.

## [CHAPTER LXI.]

The yonge Prynce at the begynnyng hadd with hym thre maner of menny, Normanes, Englyssh, and the Englyssh that he founde in the londe / In grete wyrchipp, frendshipp and loue, he helde the fryste *and* the worste. In lasse, the Secounde *and* the bettyr. And in alltherleste, the latyste *and* the beste. The fryste myght not lyue wyth-out wyn, in whych they weryn fosterid; And therfor thay forsoke to be in marchis and in castelis ferre frome the See ysette <sup>1</sup> / *and* <sup>2</sup> myght not be in no Place but aboute the kyngis Sone, (*and* [from] his body, kepe thay myght not be,) *and* hym followyn, *and* ney to hym be, with-out any departyng. ferre from the Weste, *and* ney to the Eeste; Fer from

<sup>1</sup> Primi vino, quo nutriti fuerant, carere non volentes, in remotis marchis, et castris procul a mari constructis, moram facere modis omnibus recusabant.—  
Op. v. 394-5.

A. D. 1185. negh al eeste; fer from myssayse, & negh ayse, thay wyll et euer to be sette. ¶ Ianglers & bosters, & of grette othes, and stronge lyers, foderes, whybelers, Moch told by ham-self throggh pryde, & lytel by other; yiftes & wyrshype to receyue, thay wer the fyrst; 4  
John's young men were boasters, liars, bribe-takers.

He forsook And for the good knyghtes & the men throggh whych the wey ynto the lond was fyrst I-opened, wef wyth ham bot as forsaken & forlete; non I-cleppeth to conssaylle bot the newe; to non trusted he bot to the newe; to non was wyrshype I-do bot to the newe. 12  
the wise whom the rebels needed. Hyt byfelle, that whan thay other wythdrowe ham for such thyng, & lete ham I-worth, yn al thyng that thay dydde, lytel or noght thay sp[ed]de. Such gyltes & so many, thegh thay both wef myche to wite, yong old & yonge rede, natheles þe yonge lydder rede was 16  
more gilty; ffore boustyous lond and vnredy, hadde al nede to be Irotet and I-kept throggh wyse men & redy.

## [CHAPTER LXII.]

John builds three Castles, at Ardfinan, Lismore, Tibragh. 1 Aftyr that the kynges sone hadde the lordshype of Irland, & ynto the lond was y-come, Aduentures byfelle 20 that maystyr Gerot shortly toucheth. Of thre castels that he anon ryght lete rere, on at Ardfynan, -another at lysmore, the thyrd at Tybraghnych. Of thre staluarth\* knyghtes that throggh grete mesaduentur weren I-slawe, Robert de Barry at Lysmore; 24  
[\*Fol. 7 b.] Reymond, hughes sone, at Olethan; Reymon of Canteton yn Osserye. Of a partye of the meygne of Ardfynan that the kyng of Thomon descomfyted yn a wod per negh on a mydsomyr day, And four knyghtes that ther wef y-slau; & thay of Tothmon the 28  
Men of Thomond, or Limerick, slain; and O'Grady (?) sam day wer dyscomfyt to-for Tybragh; & a grete Iresshe-man, Ograde, was ther I-slawe, wyth many other of the meygne of Ardfynan, that sone aftyr, yn a prey-takyng toward lymeryke weyes dyscomfyte, & xix knyghtes I-slawe. Of the prynce Of 32  
Desmon, Dermot Maccarthy, that with many other yn a parlement

<sup>1</sup> The usual large initial letter is omitted, space being left for it.



myssayse, and nygh to ayse, thay wolde euer to be sette. // Iangleris, A. D. 1185.  
 bosteris, and of grete othis, stronge lyeris, lycheres, Why-beleres, *verbosi,*  
 Moche sette by ham-selfe for Pride, and lytill by otheres: yiftis *jactatores,*  
 and wyrchipp to rescewe, thay were the fryst; Dowte and Peril *enormium*  
 to rescewe, thay wer euer the laste. The lytill good that thay *juramen-*  
 didd that wyth hym comyn, that was throgh the Englyssh that *torum*  
 he wyth hym broght. But thay was nothyng Derward wyth hym *auctores.*  
 agaynys the othyr, that no good ne couth do / And for the *solum*  
 good knyghtes and the men, throw whych the wey into the lond *novos*  
 was fryste oppenyd, wer wyth ham but as forsakyn and forlete / *dignos*  
 non callid to consaill, but the newe; to noone trustid he<sup>1</sup>, but to *honore*  
 the new; to noone was wirchipp donē, but to the newe. <sup>2</sup> Hit <sup>2</sup> *effectum*  
 befel that, whan thay othyr wythdrow hame for Suche thyng, *est ut illis*  
 and lette ham alone, wyth al thyng that thay did, Lytell or *se retrahen-*  
 noght thay Spede. Such gyltes and So many, thegh thay both *tibus, et*  
 wer mych to witte, yonge elde and yonge rede, natheles the yonge *inuitis*  
 lewid consaylle was mor gilty; For bostious, loude and vnredy, *operas non*  
 hadd grete nede to be y-rotid and y-kepete throgh wysmen and *ingerenti-*  
 redy. *bis, in*  
*cunctis*  
*agendis*  
*parum isti*  
*profecis-*  
*sent.*

## [CHAPTER LXII.]

Aftr that tyme that the kynges Sone hadde the *Capitulum*  
 lordshipp of Irland, and into the londe was come, ad- *lxijm.*  
 uentures befell that Maystyr geraude Sortely touchyth. Of th[r]e  
 castelis that he anoone ryght lette rere, oone at ardfynan, anothyr  
 at lysmore, the thyrd at Tybraght. Of thre bolde and hardy  
 knyghtes, that throw gret mysaduenture weryn slayne, Robert *fatlis ad-*  
 de Barry at lysmore, Reymond Hughes-sone at Olethan, Reymond *uersis et*  
 of Canteton in Ossory. Of a party of the meny of ardfynan, that *aversis.*  
 the kyng of Thomoñ descomfited in a wodde ther neygh, On a *De parte*  
 Mydsomer day, And four knyghtes that were Slayn; and thay of *quadam*  
 Thomonde the same day wer discomfite to-\*for tybraght; and a *Archphi-*  
 grete Irysh-man, Odrade, Was ther Slayn, wyth many othyr Of the *nensis*  
 meny of ardfynan, that Sone aftr in a pray-takyng toward *familia.*  
 lymerike weies Discomfite<sup>3</sup>, and xix knyghtes wer Slayn. Of the *[\*Fol. 28*  
 Prynce of Desmonde, Dermot Maccarthy, that with many othyr in *a.]*  
*De . .*  
*Oggravi*  
*intereimp-*  
*tionē.*

<sup>3</sup> in praedae captione versus Limericum confectis.—*Op.* v. 386.

A. D. 1185. besyde Corke, throgh Tybaud wauter & the meygne of Corke, was  
 Ulstermen I-slawe. Of the meñ of kenalayne, that to boldely wentten ynto  
 slain. Mythe to preyeñ, & ther wereñ I-slawe throgh Wyllyam le petyt,  
 Saints' & an hundert heedes of ham I-broght to dyuelyñ. Of other holy 4  
 bodies bodyes, patryke, Bryde, &, Colmekyl, at doun I-found, & by Iohn de  
 found. Courcy weñ translated; of hugh de lacy, that to trysty was vpon  
 Hugh de hys Iresshe-meñ, & by trayson of ham was I-heded at dernagh.  
 A. D. 1186. ¶ Of thretten knyghtes, that vnder Ihon de Courcy weren I-slawe 8  
 at a comynge out of Connaght. Of the staluarth yonge knyght  
 Roger the power, that wyth many of hys, throgh traysone, yn  
 Poer slain. Osserye was I-slawe; & throgh that thyng, al the Iresshe of the  
 The Irish lond styllly sworne ham to-gyddyr ayeyns the Englysshe; wher 12  
 silently conspire, throgh that, <sup>1</sup> castels yn many places wereñ I-cast adoun, many  
 destroy castles, and meñ I-slawe, to grete perrylle to al the lond; & of many other  
 kill men. aduentures that betyddedn aftyr that the kynges sone was lord of  
 Irland, of whyche maystyr Geraud, ham & har gestes leueth to 16  
 other that ham wrytte wold, & lust hadden ther-to <sup>1</sup>. And as thys  
 An end makd of thys boke.

<sup>1-1</sup> destructis castris pluribus, gravi insulae universae perturbatione: non indigna memoratu singula, translatō in filium regis jam regni dominio, sua suorumque gesta suis assignando scriptoribus, ad ulteriora simul et utiliora festinamus.—*Op.* v. 387-8.

---

*The unenglisht last Chapters.*

---

Thus ends Ch. 35 of Giraldus's 2nd Book of his *Expugnacio*. His Ch. 36 is our 60, pp. 142-7, with an added Vision of 'Prince John marking out the foundations of a church, with a large nave and a very small chancel.' His Ch. 37 is our 61, pp. 146-9. In his Ch. 38, he states how the Irish are to be conquerd: in Ch. 39, how they are to be governd. Mr. Dimock's side-notes to these two Chapters are:

Ch. 38. "In every expedition, the counsel of those ought to be followed, who are best acquainted with the country and manners



a parlement besyde Corke, throug Tybaud Wauter *and* the meny A. D. 1185.  
of Corke, was y-Slayn. Of the men of kynnaleyn, that So boldely in colloquio  
wentyn Into Myth, ther to take a pray, *and* ther weryn Slayn prope Cor-  
throug Willam le Petyte, and an C. hedys of ham broght to cagiam, a  
Deuelyn // Of othyr booly bodies, Patrike, Bryde, and Colmekil / Corcagien-  
at doun y-found, *and* by Ihoñ de Curcy were translated. Of sibus  
Hugh de lacy, that to trysty was vpon his Irysh-men, And by et Theo-  
traysone of ham was hedid at Dernagh // Of xiiije knyghtes, baldi  
that vndyr Ihoñ de Curcy weryn Slayn at a comynge out of Gualteri  
connaght; of the bolde yonge knyght, Roger the Powere, that familia  
wyth many of his, throw trayson, in Ossory was Slayn; And ferro  
Throw that thyng, all the Irysh-men of the londe Pryuely Sworne peremptis.  
ham to-giddyrayeynes the Englyssh-men; Wherthrow that, castellis  
in many Places weryn caste dovne, *and* many men Slayn, in Peril  
of al the londe. And of many othyr aduentures that by chance  
fell, aftyr that the kynges sonne was lorde of Irlande, the whych Dernagh in  
Maystyr Geraud, ham and har gestis lewyth to othyr that ham fercall.  
write wille, *and* luste haw therto; And as thus an ende makyth of  
this boke.

**Et Sic finis est istius Libri.**

**Laus deo clementissimo.**

of the people. The great difference between French warfare, and that of Ireland and Wales [is]: In these countries, light-armed troops [are] more especially necessary. In any expedition into Ireland or Wales, the troops of the Welsh Marches [are] by far the best. In Irish warfare, archers [ought] to be united with the cavalry. The three parts of the island on this side the Shannon [ought] to be well incastellated; the other part won by degrees.

Ch. 39. The necessity of firm, severe, but moderate rulers. In time of peace, castles [ought] to be built, and roads to be

improved. The Irish, once fully subjected, [ought] to be forbidden the use of arms; [and] meanwhile not to be allowed to bear the axe. [They ought] to pay an annual tribute in gold or birds."

Giraldus's Third Book tells how he found and translated the Prophecies of Merlin of Celidon.

When John became King of England, Giraldus sent him a copy of his *Topographia* and *Expugnacio*, with a Proem or Dedicatory Letter printed in the Rolls edition, v. 405-411. It reminds John of Ireland, exhorts him not to forget it, the Golden Isle, in favour of England, the Silver one; says it will form a kingdom for one of his sons; warns him that he must leave no danger behind him in Ireland when he goes to recover the foreign possessions he has lost; calls on him to fulfil Henry II's pledges to Pope Adrian, that is, to exalt the Church in Ireland and pay Peter's pence; instances God's vengeance on the non-keeping of these pledges; says how miserable the state of the Irish Church is; and advises John to take an annual tribute of gold, birds, or trees, from the Irish in token of subjection. Lastly, Giraldus asks that a scholar may translate his books into French; gives Walter Map's opinion on his own talk and Giraldus's writings; and says that he (Giraldus) is now old, and 'desires only God's favour and the appreciation of his labours by posterity.'

---

pp. 144-5, lines 9-2 from foot. The side-note and Latin in the Rolls edition, v. 392, are:

Prevalence  
of law-  
suits.

Praeterea, quamquam hostilitatis instante procella, armatae militiae tempus ingruerit, non togatae, tanta tamen civilium causarum urgebat importunitas, ut miles veteranus non tam hoste foris, quam intus foro vexaretur.

---

As to the state of Ireland in 1515, see the document printed in my *Ballads from MSS.* (Ballad Soc.), p. 38-40.



# GLOSSARY

(MAINLY)

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

& (and), an, a, 2/3, 116/7; & noon, anon, 72/18.

A, *prep.* on, 12/17, 16/35; in, 44/8; by, 66/2.

Abate, *vb.* flutter the wings, 56/32. Used like *Bate*.

Above, *adv.* above, he was all a., had the upper hand, 120/3; abouen, 116/27; abow, 117/26, 121/3.

Abydyng, *sb.* expectation, 111/33.

Abydyng, *vb.* a. after ham, waiting for them, 124/28.

Adde, *vb.* had, 68/2.

A-fryght, *pp.* frightened, afraid, 114/22.

Agryse, *pp.* terrified, 100/2.

Agylte, *vb.* sin, 88/1.

Aleueth, *num. adj.* eleven, 118/14. See opposite page.

Allerformest, foremost of all, 50/24; alther-formyst, 51/24.

Allerleste, least of all, 146/28; alltherleste, 147/28.

Aller-next, next of all, 12/33; alther-nexte, 13/34.

Allience, *sb.* alliance, allies, 73/27, 87/8.

Allyees, *sb.* allies, 72/27. Fr. *allies*.

Alonge, *adv.* always, 54/29.

Alout, *adv.* all out, or ? aloud, 104/12.

Althyr, 101/3, ? either.

Aly, *adj.* holy, 42/36.

Amaised, *pp.* amayed, dismayed, 12/16; amayed, 16/31, 20/33, 56/5.

Amonneschyd, *vb.* admonished, warned, 57/13; amonessed, 93/10; amonested, 56/13, 92/10.

An, *prep.* on: an-heghe, on high, 112/34, an-hey, 113/34; an-hond, in hand, 74/17; an-hors, on horseback, 58/25, 100/28; an Iresshe, in Irish, 116/33.

Anguysshes, *sb.* anguishes, anxieties, 96/13; angwyschis, 97/13.

Anguysshous, *adj.* anxious, 104/8. O.Fr. *anguissus*.

Anone ryght, *adv.* straightway, 148/22; anoone-ryght, 82/2.

Aplesid, *pp.* a. of, pleased with, 37/35.

Ar, *pron.* their, 8/17. See *Har*.

Ar, *conj.* ere, 8/9, 22/23, 74/34; are, before, 9/10; before, 58/10.

Ared, *vb.* tell, declare, 97/25; arede, 96/26.

Arere, *vb.* lift up, stir up, 22/1; set right, heal, restore, 44/5; restore, rebuild, 106/9; areren, raise, 44/15; arered, raised, 30/16; arrere, 23/1.

Arew, arow, in a row, 71/13; a rewe, 70/13.

Argh, *adj.* timid, cowardly, 16/30, 114/6 (*feinte*, 115/6)<sup>1</sup>.

Argly, *adv.* timidly, in a cowardly way, 16/23 (*fently*, 17/23)<sup>1</sup>.

Arreden, *vb.* eared, ploughed, cultivated, 128/7; Erredyn, 129/7.

Artrow, *sb.* overthrow, mistrust, suspicion, 133/13; ortrow, 132/14.

<sup>1</sup> In all old words like *argh*, *arghly*, the reader should look on the opposite page for the Rawlinson MS. equivalent, which is generally later, tho' for the Dublin *ar[y]ved*, 24/34, the Rawlinson has *londide*.

- Aryse**, *vb.* arise, rebel, 132/5; arrayse, 133.
- Aryued**, *vb.* arrived, landed, 24/34.
- As**, *conj.* for *ac*, but, 4/2.
- Asquynt**, *adv.* asquint, aslant, obliquely, 94/20.
- Assemble**, *vb.* join battle, 24/15, 30/26.
- Assembly**, *vb.* assemble, 64/5.
- Asseth**, *sb.* satisfaction, penance, 86/23.
- Astage**, *sb.* hostage, 24/23.
- Astryf**, *adv.* astrife, emulously, with rivalry, 50/26.
- Atene**, *vb.* vex, irritate, 38/24.
- Ather**, *conj.* either, or, 100/3. Note pronunciation.
- A thre**, in three parts, 104/26; at thre, 67/19.
- Attyre**, *sb.* venom, 20/23, 102/27, 114/2.
- Auctorice**, *vb.* legalise, set in authority, 107/27 (avaunce, 106/27).
- Aurel**, *sb.* April, 77/28; aural, 76/28.
- A-waitede**, *vb.* watcht, expected, 2/19.
- Awayward**, *adv.* awayward, off the land, *i.e.* westwardly, 66/33; away, 130/19.
- Awreke**, *vb.* a. hym, awreak himself, avenge himself, 4/5.
- A yere**, *adv.* yearly, 66/2.
- Ayeyne**, *prep.* against, on the approach of, 130/2; *adv.* again, 130/3.
- Ayeyns**, *prep.* against, to meet, 54/13.
- Ayse**, *sb.* ease, 148/1.
- Bad**, *vb.* prayed, 28/11.
- Baghel**, *sb.* bagle, crosier, 122/13, 123/12; baghell, 122/12. *L. baculum.*
- Bale**, *sb.* sorrow, evil, 20/24.
- Baret**, *sb.* barrat, strife, battle, 146/23.
- Barnen**, *vb.* burnt, 54/4.
- Battes**, *sb.* bats, sticks, staves, 144/28; battis, 145/31.
- Becomlyche**, *adj.* becoming, comely, 76/14; becomly, 102/20; becumliche, 54/24.
- Becriyed**, *vb.* cried to, called on, 30/32, 46/20.
- Begetes**, *sb.* begets, gains, 81/15; beyetes, 80/15.
- Begynnyge**, *vb.* begin, 54/21.
- Be-heght**, *pp.* promised, 40/9; be-het, *vb.* promised, 18/34; behete, 28/19, 114/29.
- Behoud**, *sb.* behoof, benefit, 112/30.
- Behowaybyll**, *adj.* behovable, needful, suitable, 121/4; covenable, D.
- Belad**, *pp.* narrow b., treated them straitly or hardly, 40/21; bilad hym, led him, lived, 2/9; hard biladde, *vb.* treated hardly, 2/6; bylad, 41/22; by-ladde, conducted, bore, 54/12.
- Beleft**, *vb.* remained, 118/14; *pp.* remaining, left, 58/10.
- Belokene**, *pp.* shut in, 50/12; belokken, 51/12. See *Belouke*, N. E. D.
- Belyggynge**, *vb.* beleaguering, beleaguering, 104/5.
- Be-name**, *vb.* forbad, 31/9; be-nomen, *pp.* taken away, 60/34; byname, deprive of, 100/9.
- Berewid**, *vb.* bereft of, 45/5; berewys, bereave, *imper.*, 35/10.
- Berre**, *vb.* bear, 145/2.
- Besech**, *vb.* beseech, try to get, cast at, show to, 110/30 (malyngne agaynys, 111/30).
- Besete**, *vb.* beset, blockade, 48/16; *pp.* set, possess, 102/19; besette, 103/19.
- Be-taght**, *vb.* betook, gave, committed, entrusted, 86/14.
- Be-tak**, *vb.* accompanied, 20/18; betake, 21/18; betaken, settled, arranged, 72/31; betoke, entrusted to, 108/27.
- Betheght**, *vb.* betook, gave to, 92/11; betoke, 93/11.
- Bethwene**, *prep.* between, 10/12.
- Blote**, *adj.* soft, marshy, wet, 122/3.
- Blywe**, *adv.* belive, quickly, 29/30.
- Bolns**, *sb.* boldness, 111/35.
- Bolthenys**, *sb.* boldness, 75/15.
- Bostious**, *adj.* rough, boisterous, 149/17; boustious, 148/17.
- Bot**, *adj.* both, 106/12.
- Bot**, *conj.* but, unless, 68/13, 106/12; bot yf, unless, 78/30.
- Both**, *conj.* but, 14/34, 22/7, 32/25, 50/4; bott, 22/32; bot, 106/12.
- Boxome**, *adj.* obedient, loyal, non-rebellious, 32/29.
- Boxom-fastines**, *sb.* buxomfastness



- firm obedience, 62/18; buxuunfast-nys, 63/18.
- Branden, *vb.* burnt, 14/24; brandyn, 15; branten, 120/33.
- Brouken, *vb.* brook, enjoy, hold, 34/13.
- Buryles, *sb.* buryels, burials, graves, 37/21; (pute, pits, 36/18).
- Buttellerie, *sb.* butlery, buttery, 62/27. O. Fr. *bouteillerie*.
- By, *vb.* be, 106/15.
- By, *prep.* about, near, 15/6; by so, on these terms, 24/23; by forward, by agreement, 74/9; by-halues, besides, aside, 74/24; by so that, on the terms that, 24/23.
- Bygger, *sb.* buyer, 40/2, 7.
- Byled, *vb.* built, 128/10.
- Bynyn, *vb.* benime, take away, 68/22.
- Byssy, *adj.* busy, 99/18.
- Byth, *vb.* beeth, are, 33/26.
- Cabilyls, *sb.* cables, 13/12.
- Calange, *sb.* challenge, claim, 21/1. O. Fr. *Calanger*.
- Campled, *vb.* wrangled, contended, fought, 74/33; camplid, 75/33.
- Camplynges, *sb.* wranglings, contests, battles, 126/13.
- Candrede, *sb.* cantred, hundred, 56/21; cantred, 8/19, 12/33; a Cantrede is 'an hundret toun lond' (100 townlands or townships), 124/2.
- Castel, *vb.* castle, fortify, 127/22; castely, 126/22; casteled, 128/3.
- Cee, *sb.* see: Cee church, Cathedral, 37/31.
- Chamfaste, *adj.* shamefast, 76/13.
- Chase, *pp.* chosen, 124/12.
- Cheffar, *sb.* trade, 12/7.
- Chek-toth, *sb.* cheek-tooth, grinder, double tooth, 108/8.
- Chepmen, *sb.* chapmen, 38/33.
- Cheuetayn, *sb.* chieftain, 26/11.
- Chippe, *sb.* ship, 13/13; chippis, ships, 13/6.
- Chippmen, *sb.* shipmen, 13/10.
- Churchey, *sb.* churchyard, 71/26; church-hay, 63/32.
- Clene, *adv.* clean, quite, entirely, 146/7.
- Clenly, *adv.* cleanly, quite, wholly, 121/3, 145/15; clenlych, 120/3.
- Clepynge, *sb.* calling, call, 76/2.
- Clewe, *vb.* cleft, clave, 31/34, 71/32.
- Clos, *sb.* close, enclosed land, 10/5.
- Come, *sb.* arrival, coming, 108/15, 120/30; comys, 109/15.
- Comerous, *adj.* cumbrous, difficult to pass, 54/8.
- Comynly, *adv.* in common, together, 34/33, 38/30.
- Condicones, *sb.* 125/15; theves, 124/15.
- Conquestre, *sb.* conquest, 56/22. O. Fr.
- Constytucions, *sb.* constitutions, laws, 64/26.
- Cornelis, *sb.* crenelles, battlements, 16/31.
- Corpus domini, *sb.* mass-wafer, 52/23.
- Coste, *sb.* purpose (R.), 68/4, 74/17.
- Costes, *sb.* coasting-vessels, 1, 80/5.
- Croice, *sb.* cross, 36/29; cros, 37/29. O. Fr. *crois*.
- Croun, *sb.* crown of the head, 42/27; croune, 42/24.
- Culuertnesse, *sb.* falseness, villainy, 126/31.
- Cytteyns, *sb.* citizens, 122/27. O. Fr. *citeien*; *citayn*.
- Dawes, *sb.* days, out of d. = out of life, 34/10, 76/4.
- Defended, *vb.* = defendeth, let us defend, *imper.*, 20/28.
- Defeuily, *vb.* defoul, tread under foot, 35/29; defouly, 34/29.
- Dele, *sb.* deal, part, 62/21.
- Deled, *vb.* dealt, divided, 104/25.
- Delycion, *sb.* daintiness, 98/13.
- Delycious, *adj.* delicate, dainty, 99/14.
- Demyd, *pp.* deemed, doomed, sentenced, 35/15.
- Dennysh, 46/17; Danish.
- Derne, *adj.* hidden, 18/30, 114/22.
- Dernely, *adv.* secretly, privily, 78/8.
- Derward, *adj.* dearworth, precious, 110/34; derwartheest, most valuable, 36/25.
- Destrued, *pp.* destroyed, 106/10.
- Deue, *adj.* deaf, 44/13.
- Deynously, *adv.* disdainfully, 72/3.
- Didden, dydde, *vb.* See *Do*.
- Do, *vb.* put, 30/6, 33/34, 94/16; turn, 76/6; done hym on, set him on, 100/3; didde, *past t.* turned, 16/31; didden, set, 10/1; dydde, set, 70/7.

Dobbe, *vb.* dub, 94/13.  
 Dome, *sb.* judgment, 34/14.  
 Dotous, *adj.* doubtful, uncertain, 86/17; doutos, 87/17; doutouse, 24/13.  
 Doute, *vb.* fear, 24/15.  
 Drawen, *vb.* protract, lead, 50/4.  
 Dredlyche, *adj.* dreadly, dreadful, terrible, 114/9.  
 Drent, *vb.* drowned, 32/5.  
 Durke, *adj.* dark, 50/9.  
 Durknesse, *sb.* darkness, 50/10.  
 Durre, *sb.* door, 42/22.  
 Dyd, *vb.* set, placed, 74/29. See *Do*.  
 Dynt, *sb.* dint, stroke, 46/17.  
 Dysheryted, *vb.* 40/20; disinherited.  
     *D* for *th*, 16/34.  
 Day, *pron.* they, 10/19, 12/21, 24/10.  
 Drogñ, *prep.* through, 12/24, 14/8, 18/9, 22/7.  
 I-Drow, *pp.* thrown, 18/1.  
 Dyngge, *sb.* thing, 88/27.

Eche, *vb.* increase, 146/4.  
 Edwyte, *vb.* reproved, twitted, rebuked, 60/9.  
 Eft, *adv.* after, 82/13, 88/26, 90/1 ette, 108/29.  
 Elde, *sb.* old, age, 58/30.  
 Eldren, (*adj.*) ? *sb.* forefathers' (or ancestral), 38/17; eldryñ, 39/17.  
 Eldrene, *sb.* ancestors, 28/6, 7; eldryn, 29/6, 7.  
 Elf (fare), 17/13; helf (fare), 16/14; elves' doings.  
 Eme, *sb.* eam, nephew, 31/14, 73/35; emys, 15/33, 101/15.  
 Enchesoun, *sb.* occasion, cause, 88/2, 20/16.  
 Encombremment, *sb.* encumberment, obstruction, annoyance, harm, 22/13.  
 Eneche, *vb.* (? increase) ineché, implant, 92/1.  
 Engyn, *sb.* art, contrivance, 18/28.  
 Ense, *sb.* ends, 80/29.  
 Entre, *sb.* entry, 54/6; entrest, 55/7.  
 Entredyte, *vb.* interdict, lay under interdict, 68/15.  
 Enuy, *sb.* envy, 20/19.  
 Enuyouse, *adj.* envious, 114/6; envyouse, emulous, 100/2.  
 Er, *adv.* ere, before, 120/29.  
 Erne, *vb.* earn, mourn, 34/28.

Erne, *sb.* eagle, 114/18.  
 Ers, *sb.* ears, 15/24.  
 Erthe-weyes, *sb.* ways under ground, 19/30.  
 Erth-hous, *sb.* underground dwelling, 120/31.  
 Estren, *adj.* eastern, east, 28/27.  
 Ette, *vb.* ate, 89/22.  
 Eunynge, *sb.* evening, equal, peer, 54/19.  
 Evynercystyñ, *sb.* fellow - christian, 39/11, 67/14.  
 Exstymacioun, *sb.* suspicion, 129/14. O. Fr. *exstimation*.  
 Eygne, *sb.* eyes, 97/17.

Facon, *sb.* falcon, 58/4; faucoun gentel, 56/30.  
 Fale, *adj.* fele, many, 74/10, 86/4.  
 Falthyr, *sb.* fautors, favorers, partisans, 79/7. Fr. *fauteur*.  
 Fantstones, *sb.* fontstones, stone fonts, 64/33; fantstonys, 65.  
 Farcostes, *sb.* far-coasters?, 80/5, 81/5.  
 Fawes, *sb.* falls?, heavy, things dropt, 96/2; fawis, 97/2.  
 Febelier, *adj.* more feeble, 69/5.  
 Fele, *adj.* many, 16/10.  
 Felony, *sb.* villany, 102/3.  
 ffer, *adv.* f. within-yn nyght, far into the night, 16/9.  
 Ferd, *sb.* host, army, 14/5.  
 Ferde, *sb.* fear, 17/14.  
 Ferdnesse, *sb.* fear, fright, 20/29, 38/27.  
 Ferly, *adj.* strange, 16/29.  
 Ferly, *adv.* wonderfully?, 16/12.  
 Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 17/11.  
 Ferth, *num. adj.* fourth, 118/19.  
 Festnen, *vb.* make firm, restore, 44/14.  
 Feynte, *adj.* faint, idle, 115/6.  
 Feyre, *adv.* far, 50/34.  
 Fikyllibid, *vb.* temporised, 145/9.  
 Fleted, *vb.* floated, 116/26.  
 Fletes, *sb.* fleets, 80/9; flittes, 81/9; flot, 126/23; flytte, 127/23.  
 Fleysly, *adj.* fleshly, fleshy, 100/1.  
 Flittes, *sb.* See *Fletes*.  
 Flote, *sb.* fleet, herd of swine, 74/1.  
 Flowen, *vb.* fled, 96/21.  
 Fobler, *adj.* feebler, 68/6.  
 Foderes, *sb.* deceivers, 148/3.



Folk, *adj.* † for foble, feeble, 50/15.  
 Folke-mele, indiscriminately, 36/3.  
 Foolrede, *sb.* fool's counsel, foolery, folly, 68/20; fooly, 69.  
 Foot-falle, *vb.* prostrate oneself, 62/18.  
 For, *conj.* in order that, 104/24.  
 Foroleue, *vb.* cleft, 58/2; for-clew, 59/2.  
 Fore-lete, *vb.* let go, 68/29.  
 For-hold, *pp.* withheld, kept unburied, 108/14.  
 Forlese, *vb.* forelost, lost, 54/11.  
 Formane, *sb.* leader, 36/1; formene, front ranks, 30/33.  
 Forme, *adj.* first, 64/15; formest, *super.*, 50/28; formyst, 51.  
 Forshape, *pp.* misshapen, 130/25.  
 Forsoke, *vb.* renounce, refuse, decline, 4/13, 78/17; for-sok, 72/16.  
 Forsoken, *vb.* declined, 104/12.  
 Forswely, *vb.* swallow up, 58/27.  
 Fort, *conj.* till, 84/27, 126/11.  
 Fortelet, *sb.* fortlet, 116/6.  
 Forth, (before 'with') *adv.* forthwith, 20/5, 90/20, 104/32.  
 For-pane, *conj.* Nat f. notwithstanding, 4/1.  
 For-they, *conj.* therefore, 73/22; for-thy, 72/23.  
 Forthmost, *adj.* foremost, 16/4.  
 Forume, *sb.* form, 39/12.  
 Forwarde, *sb.* bargain, 10/12; agreement, 74/9, 108/30; forward-makynge, m. of agreements, 128/9.  
 Fourdyr, *adv.* further, 15/25.  
 Franchise, *sb.* freedom, 20/15.  
 Fresly, *adv.* fiercely, 14/12, 35/34; fressely, 81/9.  
 Frightnes, *sb.* fright, 16/15, 26.  
 Fryst, *num.* first, 17/4, 31/33.  
 Fyf, *num.* *adj.* five, 62/21; fywe, 63/21.  
 Fylthed(e), *sb.* filthhead, filthiness, 64/6, 65/6.  
 Fyne, *sb.* fine, 66/10.  
 Galosis, *sb.* gallows, 35/16.  
 Galyotz, *sb.* pirates †, 22/32.  
 Garneysd, *pp.* garnished, fortified, 51/1. Fr. *garnir*.  
 Gentil, *sb.* gentry, set, 101/17.  
 Gentryce, *sb.* set, clan, 112/2.

Gentrye, *sb.* gentry, 100/18.  
 Gestes, *sb.* deeds, 120/10.  
 Gettynges, *sb.* gettings, gain, plunder, 26/34.  
 Girsliche, *adv.* terribly, 14/22 († *adj.*).  
 Good, *sb.* goods, 54/5.  
 Grad, *vb.* cried out, 4/1.  
 Greped, *vb.* griped, gripped, 126/26.  
 Grewid, *vb.* grieved, pained, 109/9; grewid, *pp.* 39/25.  
 Grymly, *adj.* dreadful, terrible, 59/13.  
 Gylte, *sb.* fault, 40/8.  
 Gyued, *vb.* gyved, fettered, 60/10; gywid, 61/10.  
 Half, *sb.* side; ethere h., either side, 8/19; euerich h., every side, 4/16; euche h., each side, 5/18; hys h., his side, 24/32; oon h., one side, 22/25; a south h., on the south side, 30/16; on his mojer half, on his mother's side, 8/15; halue, *pl.* 100/21.  
 Halte, *vb.* held, 64/10; holte, hold, 64/11.  
 Halowene, *sb.* saints, 122/1; halwene, 44/11.  
 Hame, *pron.* them, 4/12.  
 Hamlynge, *adj.* ambling, 89/21.  
 Hand, *sb.* other h., second hand, 78/17.  
 Har, *pron.* their, 9/17, 10/20, 74/31, 120/30; hare, 31/14; theirs, 32/15.  
 Har, *adv.* ere, sooner.  
 Hard, *pp.* heard, 29/32.  
 Hardynes, *sb.* hardness, boldness, 110/35.  
 Haris, *pron.* theirs, 49/33; hars, 48/34.  
 Hauteyne, *adj.* haughty, 76/16. O. Fr. *hautain*.  
 Haw, *vb.* have, 34/7; hawdyn, had, 27/7.  
 Haye, *sb.* hay, haw, churchyard, 63/32; 62/32.  
 Hedid, *pp.* headed, beheaded, 151/8.  
 Heed, *sb.* † head, 78/33; heeddes, heads, princes †, 34/28.  
 Heere, *sb.* hair, hair-cloth, 42/5; here, 43/5.  
 Hegh, *vb.* hight ('was callid'), 92/23.  
 Hegheste, *adj.* highest ('host' 12/33), 13/33.  
 Heghlygh, *adv.* highly, 90/25.  
 Helf far, 16/14, *sb.* elves' doing.

- Helle**, *vb.* helde, 2/24.  
**Hellen**, *vb.* conceal, hide, 78/1.  
**Hent**, *vb.* received, 10/35; henten, grasp, seize, 56/33, 80/26.  
**Herbrowe**, *vb.* harbour, seek shelter, 66/6.  
**Here**, *pron.* their, 18/29.  
**Here**, *adv.* here, 32/10.  
**Herly**, *adv.* early, 70/7.  
**Herne**, *sb.* nook, corner, 116/7.  
**Herrer**, *sb.* herre, lord, 116/30.  
**Herth**, *sb.* heart, 2/8, 22/28, 50/20.  
**Herthly**, *adj.* earthly, 66/4.  
**Hertly**, *adv.* heartily, courageously, 52/2; hertely, 53/2.  
**Het**, *vb.* was named, 2/3.  
**Heudes**, *sb.* heads, 14/17.  
**Hey**, *adj.* high, 57/29.  
**Heye**, *sb.* 70/27. See *Church-hey*.  
**Heyth**, *adj.* high, noble, 22/32.  
**Hite**, *pron.* it, 25/20.  
**Hoft-sithes**, *adv.* oftentimes, 16/14.  
**Hold**, *adj.* whole, faithful, 60/14; holde, whole, healthy, 59/24.  
**Homward**, *adv.* take h., go home, 86/3.  
**Hoped**, *vb.* looked to, trusted in, had confidence in, 70/22.  
**Horynesse**, *sb.* filthiness, 66/27. Comp. *horowe*, foul, used by Chaucer, pronounced *horry* in Devon. H.  
**Host**, *sb.* army, 16/10, 11, 104/26, 144/2.  
**Host**, *adj.*? hest, hext, highest, largest, 12/32.  
**Hostyngis**, *sb.* expeditions, armies, 17/14.  
**Hungrod**, *adj.* hungered, hungry, 116/8.  
**Hurtyng**, *sb.* hurting, hurt, 16/34.  
**Hym**, *pron.* him; hym briddesom, comp. Gr. αὐτός τριτός, 14/1, 32/20.  
**Hyrynge**, *adj.* hireling, waged, 22/31.  
**Iappynge**, *sb.* japing, jesting, 54/26; Iaypynge, 55/27.  
**I-banseth**, *pp.* banished, 24/1; y-banshet, 25/1.  
**I-bydde**, *pp.* abided, stayd, 62/8.  
**I-corne**, *pp.* chosen, 22/18.  
**I-deleth**, *pp.* dealt, divided, 66/19.  
**I-destrued**, *pp.* destroyed, 84/32.  
**I-dobbed**, *pp.* dubbed, 94/13.  
**I-drow**, *pp.* thrown, d = th, 18/1.  
**I-dyght**, *pp.* prepared, 58/19.  
**I-endeth**, *pp.* ended, 22/16.  
**I-flow**, *pp.* fled, 46/27.  
**I-fulled**, *pp.* baptized, 64/33; yfullid, 65/33.  
**I-garnset**, *pp.* garnished, fortified, 50/1.  
**I-hard**, *pp.* heard, 28/32.  
**I-heded**, *pp.* beheaded, 150/7.  
**I-helled**, *pp.* iheled, covered, 10/21.  
**I-herberged**, *pp.* filled, stowed, 108/34; I-herbergide, 109/34.  
**I-herberowide**, *pp.* harboured, sheltered, 63/31; I-horberowed, 62/31.  
**I-hodet**, *pp.* hooded, 132/28.  
**I-hokred**, *pp.* insulted, 140/16.  
**I-horied**, *pp.* defiled, 138/32.  
**I-hosted**, *pp.* hosted, quartered, 16/9.  
**I-lacet**, *pp.* laced, 10/17.  
**Illy**, *adv.* in an ill way, 78/7.  
**Ilyche**, *adv.* alike, 66/19.  
**I-meygnet**, *pp.* mingled, 102/27.  
**Inamliche**, *adv.* namely, especially, 16/28.  
**In-leyde**, *pp.* laid in, 37/21.  
**I-primseined**, *pp.* catechized, 64/32, 65/32.  
**I-quenytet**, *pp.* pleased, 36/35.  
**I-rettet**, *pp.* charged with, 68/26.  
**I-roted**, *pp.* rooted, 20/27, 112/3, 148/18.  
**I-sacred**, *pp.* sacred, consecrated, 132/28.  
**I-scomfyte**, *pp.* discomfited, 116/20.  
**I-shent**, *pp.* ruined, 68/28, 38/16.  
**I-shwerne**, *pp.* sworn, 24/26.  
**I-slawe**, *pp.* slain, 80/13.  
**I-stablet**, *pp.* established, 64/27.  
**I-storbet**, *pp.* disturbed, 124/34.  
**I-suywed**, *pp.* issued, shot, 116/9.  
**I-swewed**, *pp.* showed, 64/12.  
**I-told**, *pp.* reckoned, 2/4.  
**I-wepned**, *pp.* armed, 80/11.  
**I-worth**, *pp.* become, 102/6, 148/14.  
**I-wyted**, *pp.* blamed, 8/13.  
**Kappe**, *sb.* 46/17; lappe, R. 47/17.  
**Karue**, *vb.* k. of, cut off, 14/23.  
**Kene**, *adj.* keen, fierce, sharp, 112/33.  
**Kepyng**, *sb.* keeping, watch, guard, 53/10; kypynge, 52/9.



- Kernel, *sb.* battlement, 10/28.  
 Knyghten, *sb.* knights', 92/15.  
 Kynde, *sb.* kind, nature; of k., by nature, naturally, 18/27; Throgh k. of Troy, Through our Trojan origin, 22/26.  
 Kynde, *adj.* natural, own, 6/27.  
 Kyndly, *adj.* kindly, natural, 76/16.  
 Kyndly, *adv.* kindly, naturally, by birth, 22/28; kyndlych, 22/24.  
 Kynly, *adv.* by kin, by birth, 23/24. See *Kyndly*.  
 Laked, *vb.* enjoyd, 132/29; lakyd, 133/29.  
 Large, *adj.* bounteous, generous, 25/2; largh, 24/1.  
 Laser, *sb.* lazar, leper, 44/13.  
 Lastes, *sb.* faults, deceits, 102/21.  
 Latest, *adj.* last in place, 52/1.  
 Lede, *adj.* folk, 4/24; leed, 64/18.  
 Lef, *adj.* dear, 108/8; lefe, 111/34.  
 Lered, *adj.* learned, 42/2; lerid, 43/2.  
 Leth, *vb.* let, hindered, 52/7; leth, allowed, causd, 64/5.  
 Lette, *sb.* let, hindrance, 94/5.  
 Leue, *adj.* dear, 108/6.  
 Leue, *vb.* leave, omit, 108/10.  
 Leuet, *vb.* loved, 118/35.  
 Lewed, *adj.* lewd, uneducated, vulgar, 42/2; lewid, 48/2.  
 Lewidly, *adv.* lewdly, wickedly, 47/30.  
 Leyden, *vb.* leyden on, laid on, attacked, 96/2; leydyn, 97/2.  
 Lif, *adj.* lief, pleasing, 8/22.  
 Lodderly, *adv.* wickedly, 22/33.  
 Lodesmane, *sb.* pilot, leader, 22/21; 36/28.  
 Loge, *sb.* lodge, wattled hut, 10/3.  
 Loghe, *adj.* low, short, 88/10.  
 Loly, *adj.* grim, terrible, 40/8, 58/12.  
 Lolych, *adj.* lovely, affable, 103/18; louelyche, 102/18.  
 Lome, *adv.* often, frequently, 44/36.  
 Lost, *sb.* loss, 112/23; loste, 146/12; lostes, 8/2; lostis, 97/24; Lostys, 9/2.  
 Loth, *adj.* hateful, unpleasant, 14/6, 30/19.  
 Lotles, *adj.* buxom, obedient, 114/4.  
 Lout, *vb.* l. ham, lout themselves, do obeisance, 44/26.  
 Lowe, *sb.* love, 131/14.  
 Lych, *sb.* like, body, 88/26; lyche, 89.  
 Lyddere, *adj.* lither, bad, wicked, 44/6, 68/7; lyder, 32/14.  
 Lyddyryly, *adv.* litherly, wickedly, 46/30.  
 Lyddernysse, *sb.* litherness, wickedness, 76/29.  
 Lygne, *adj.* gentle?, 102/17.  
 Lyket, *vb.* was liked, pleasd, 34/14.  
 Lyme, *sb.* limit, bond?, 62/18.  
 Lyue, *sb.* life, 82/32.  
 Manequelleres, *sb.* mankillers, 125/16.  
 Maner, *sb.* manner; many m. metes, many kind of meats, 62/28; manners, politeness, 22/10.  
 Mane-shipe, *sb.* manship, courtesy, 4/33; manshype, 70/12.  
 Manly, *adv.* in a manly way, 24/6.  
 Manred, *sb.* homage, 56/20.  
 Man-shyply, *adv.* worshipfully, reverently, 66/22.  
 Manslaghtres, *sb.* manslaughterers, 124/16.  
 Mansynge, *sb.* cursing, excommunication, 120/17.  
 Marche, *sb.* march, border, 72/18; 146/31.  
 Mayny, *sb.* 115/22. See *Meignè*.  
 Me, *pron.* men (comp. German *man*), one, they, 16/5, 24/14, 32/27, 42/10, 70/33.  
 Meet-yeuer, *sb.* meat-giver, 54/25; met-yeuer, 112/36. Comp. *metegavel*.  
 Meignè, *sb.* household troops, 22/18; menny, 79/28; mennye, 79/13; meny, 115/10; meygnees, 66/5; meyne, 26/8; meynne, 39/5; meyngne, 27/9. O. Fr. *meignee*, *meyne*.  
 Mekely, *adv.* humbly, kindly, 48/2.  
 Membres, *sb.* manly m., manly members, privy parts, 44/18.  
 Merres, *sb.* meres, boundaries, 38/17.  
 Meste, *adv.* most, 42/7.  
 Mesury, *sb.* misery, 43/15.  
 Meteful, *adj.* moderate, 113/24. See *Methefull*.  
 Methe, *sb.* moderation, 98/12.  
 Mothefull, *adj.* moderate, 112/24.  
 Methelyche, *adj.* moderate, 70/18;

- methlych, 98/28; metlych, 76/15; metlyche, 98/10; middle-sized.
- Mich**, *adj.* much, large, 34/27; *mich* yuell, much or great evil, leprosy, 32/7.
- Modelyng**, *sb.* meddling, 56/18.
- Mone**, *sb.* moan, complaint, 28/23.
- Morowenyng**, *sb.* morning, 82/21.
- Most**, *vb.* must, could, 40/22.
- Mostdele**, *adv.* mostdeal, mostly, 16/1.
- Mostwhat**, *adv.* mostly, for the most part, 88/17.
- Mother-church**, *sb.* cathedral, 36/29.
- Motyng**, *sb.* mooting, pleading, disputing, 144/29.
- Mych**, *adj.* large, 56/29, 74/1; *myche*, 74/2.
- Myght & mayn**, might & main, 116/15.
- Mynyed**, *vb.* reminded, warned, 74/29, 84/25.
- Mys-byfelle**, *vb.* misbefell, fell amiss, 124/15; *mys-be-felle*, 125/16.
- Myssdone**, *vb.* misdo, 101/32.
- Myse-lyckenys**, *sb.* mislikeness, strange shape (a wolf-woman), 131/25.
- Myssayse**, *sb.* misease, 40/5. O. Fr. *mesaise*.
- Myssayse**, *adj.* miseased, 114/23; *myssaysid*, 115/22.
- Na**, *adv.* not, 112/2.
- Name**, *sb.* name, 6/33.
- Name**, *vb.* took, 6/12; *name*, 2/22, 23; *n.* an hand, 72/24; *namen*, 80/4; *n.* sekernesse, took surety, 74/8.
- Namely**, *adv.* especially, 52/17, 66/4.
- Namy**, *vb.* name, 130/10.
- Narrow**, *adv.* narrowly, closely, 40/21; *narowe*, 4/19; *narrow*, 41/22, 97/10.
- Naroweis**, narrow ways, 81/26.
- Nas**, *vb.* ne was, was not, 16/21, 26/21, 72/16, 114/8.
- Nat forthy**, *conj.* notwithstanding, nevertheless, 76/20, 77/22.
- Nathales**, *conj.* nevertheless, 78/10.
- Neb**, *sb.* (? nose), face, *vultus*, 98/11.
- Neght**, *adv.* nigh, nearly, 26/13.
- Nembre**, *sb.* number, 101/22; *nembre*, 100/23.
- Ner**, *vb.* ne were, were not, 30/31, 100/8.
- Neue**, *sb.* nephew, 14/33. See *eme*.
- Neuer** (ne were), *vb.* should never be, 121/18; *neuere*, 120/18.
- Never no more**, 48/31.
- Neyght**, *adv.* nigh, near, 74/16.
- Nobelych**, *noblych*, *adv.* nobly, 35/29, 34/29.
- Noon-dayes**, *sb.* noonday, 50/32.
- North**, by n., to the north of, 70/26.
- Nuy**, *sb.* noy, vexation, affliction, 90/7. Comp. *noxia*.
- Nyst**, ne wist, knew not, 4/29.
- Nythe**, *sb.* a nythe = at night, 72/33.
- O**, *num.* one, 106/12; *oo*, 89/26, 106/12.
- O**, *prep.* of, 108/34.
- Of**, *adv.* off, 12/11, 14/23, 32/4, 74/32.
- Oftere**, *adv.* oftener, 54/22.
- Oke**, *vb.* ached, paind, 108/9.
- Omost**, *omyste*, *adv.* overmost, uppermost, 106/1, 107/1.
- Ond**, *sb.* hatred, malice, 110/30; *onde*, 111/30.
- Onful**, *adj.* ondfull, malicious, 102/24; *onfull*, 103/24.
- Onper**, *prep.* under, 6/31.
- Opyn**, *adj.* open, uncovered, 42/22.
- Ordeynly**, *adv.* well o. = in good order, 46/12.
- Ortrow**, *sb.* overthrow, mistrust, suspicion, 128/14, 132/14; *artrow*, 133.
- Ost**, *adj.* burnt?, 50/2.
- Ostmen**, *sb.* hostmen, soldiers, 82/23.
- Ostynge**, *sb.* hosting, expedition, 16/14; see *Hostyngis*.
- Oper**, *conj.* other, or, 24/6.
- Other**, *adj.* second, 50/29, 76/12, 88/8.
- Ouerd[r]ede**, *vb.* ouerdrede, over-dreaded, 14/20.
- Ouergoste**, *vb.* goest beyond, 38/17.
- Ouer-hand**, *sb.* upperhand, superiority, 34/6, 50/11, 106/3, 118/23.
- Ouersaille**, *vb.* sail over, upset?, 16/12.
- Ouerthrowen**, *vb. pass.* be prostrated, 62/21.
- Ouer-truste**, *sb.* overboldness, presumption, 22/10. Comp. *Overhope*.
- Oure**, *pron.* ours, 24/7, 96/15.
- Out-chese**, *vb.* choose out, 34/8.
- Out-commyn**, *adj.* come from foreign parts, 12/29; *out-comen*, 18/5.
- Out-tak**, *pp.* outtaken, except, 122/8.



Owne, *adj.* = own house, tent, 62/31.

Owre, *prep.* over, 130/2.

Ows, *pron.* us, 22/3, 30.

Paas, *sb.* pass, 104/22; pas, 104/25; paace, 55/9.

Panetrye, *sb.* pantry, 62/27. Fr. *paneterie*.

Pany, *sb.* penny, 92/5.

Paralys, *adj.* paralysed folk, 44/14.

Parlement, *sb.* conference, 6/21, 18/11, 72/31. O. Fr. *parlement*.

Party, *sb.* part, side, 110/1.

Party arms, arms vertically divided, 10/4.

Pelfre, *sb.* pilfer, plunder, 52/8. O. Fr. *pelfrer*.

Pledynge, *sb.* suing, 112/20.

Plenary, *adv.* fully, openly, 31/27.

Pleneden, *vb.* sported, 74/18; pleydyn, 75.

Plente, *sb.* generosity, 102/31.

Plete, *sb.* plate, 46/10.

Poere, *sb.* power, O. Fr. 48/11.

Postes, *sb.* pillars, supports, 120/6.

Powere, *sb.* forces, 2/22, 4/17.

Prayes, *sb.* preys, booty, 80/1.

Prayes-takynge, *sb.* taking of booty, 78/27; pray-takynge, 118/11.

Praye, *vb.* prey, plunder, 80/3, 23; preedyn, plundered, 81/3.

Presons, *sb.* prisoners, 54/5, 15.

Primseine, *vb.* 'sign with the cross, make a catechumen,' 64/32.

Priuisant, *adj.* foreseeing!, 80/28.

Prout, *prowt*, *adj.* proud, 22/5, 38/20.

Prow, *vb.* prove, 85/5.

Prutter, *adj.* prouder, 56/7.

Pullid, *vb.* plundered, robbed, 145/9.

Pullynge, *sb.* pilling, plundering, 112/21.

Purueynge, *adj.* provident, prudent, 98/21.

Pute, *sb.* pit, 36/18.

Pylfre, *sb.* pilfer, plunder, pillage, 80/4, 114/24. O. Fr. *pelfrer*.

Pynsyng, *sb.* affliction, 88/6.

Queller, *sb.* killer, 44/5.

Queme, *vb.* please, satisfy, 54/30, 98/15.

Queynntyse, *queynntyse*, *sb.* cunning, craft, 98/22, 99/22. O. Fr. *quointise*.

Quethene, *vb.* overcome R., 44/15.

Queynt, *adj.* cunning, sly, wily, 26/1, 98/21; qnent, 27/1; queynth, 128/2.

Quyte, *adj.* quit, clear, free, 96/20.

Qyitten, *pp.* free, clean away, 80/27.

Raas, *sb.* race, rush, 16/12.

Radyr, *adv.* rather, more willingly, 7/13; earlier, before, 91/20.

Raght, *vb.* raght, recked, 32/9.

Ran, *vb.* r. to harme, 112/26.

Rascayll, *sb.* rascal, rabble, 50/21. O. Fr. *rascayle*.

Rathe, *adv.* soon, 24/29, 84/1; rather, sooner, 28/23, 68/14; before, 90/20, 130/4.

Rather, *adj.* earlier, previous, original, 86/4, 88/2.

Raunceoun, *sb.* ransom, 46/29.

Rebuked, *vb.* repulsed, checked, 34/34.

Recet, *sb.* refuge, harbour, 18/29, 30/28, 56/5; recette, 19/29, 31/28.

Recheste, *vb.* reckest, 108/9.

Rede, *sb.* counsel, 10/18, 68/33.

Remewid, *vb.* removed, 147/13.

Rere, *vb.* rear, raise, exalt, 46/2; rerid, took, captured, lifted, 107/30.

Rescewyd, *vb.* received, 123/27.

Reue, *vb.* rob, 114/3; rew, 115/3.

Reuer, *sb.* riever, robber, 112/21.

Reut, *sb.* ruth, pity, 8/1; reuth, 22/34, 54/18.

Reuthful, *adj.* ruthless, 32/23.

Reuynge, *sb.* rieving, plundering, 144/31; rewynge, 145/25; reyuyng, 145/32.

Rewe, *vb.* rue, regret, 146/1.

Robbed, *vb.* plundered, 80/23.

Rodes, *sb.* r. crucifyed, crucifixes, 122/1.

Roghly, *adv.* r. lokynge, rough looking, 88/9.

Row, *adv.* r. lokynge, rough looking, 89/9. A. S. *rāw*.

Ruthlyng, *sb.* rattling, 16/13.

Rychesshe, *sb.* riches, 96/24. Fr. *richesse*.

Rygge, *sb.* back, 58/2.

Ryght, *vb.* r. vp, raise up, 44/3; set up again, restore, 86/4.

Ryuely, *adv.* especially!, 128/12.

- Salletis, *sb.* sallets, light helmets, 11/24.
- Sam-crysp, *adj.* somewhat curled, 98/11; sam-roed, *adj.* somewhat ruddy, 54/27; same rede, 89/8; saun-rede, 88/8. A. S. *sam*, half.
- Saue, *vb.* saw, 49/6, 146/11.
- Sawe, *prep.* save, except, 18/21, 54/10.
- Sawe, *vb.* save, 73/6; sawit, saved, 4/23.
- Schavnge, *sb.* change, 51/6.
- Scomfited, *pp.* discomfited, 117/19.
- Screwid, *adj.* shrewd, cursed, bad, evil, 69/6.
- See way, seaway (comp. highway, roadway), 80/3.
- Seke, *adj.* sick, 66/13.
- Sekernesse, *sb.* security, 74/8; syke[r]-nesse, 50/7.
- Sekiritesse, *sb.* securities, bonds, 6/22.
- Selcouth, *adj.* various, 28/33; wonderful, 44/11, 120/1, 126/13.
- Selth, *sb.* happiness, benefit, 50/8, 92/18; success, 98/23.
- Selue, *adj.* same, 100/18.
- Selyly, *adv.* happily, 42/32.
- Semblant, glad s., 98/12; sterne s., 98/27; fayr s., 102/18; semblant, 112/36; look, countenance.
- Senne, *sb.* synod, 120/15.
- Senthe, *adj.* seventh, 58/30; Senfte, 59/29.
- Seysyne, *sb.* seisin, possession, 82/12.
- Sheldrun, *sb.* shields, 31/29.
- Shendshype, *sb.* injury, harm, 114/3; shenshipp, 115/3.
- Sho, *pron.* she, 4/1.
- Shorthlych, *adv.* shortly, presently, 114/22.
- Shroue, *vb.* *int.* confessed, 130/23.
- Shyrth, *sb.* shirt, 42/5.
- Sill, *vb.* sell, 39/34. See *Syllene*.
- Sitè, *sb.* city, 32/17, 18.
- Sithe, *sb.* times, 26/6.
- Skyer, *sb.* squire, 8/32, 33.
- Slaght, *sb.* slaughter, 14/16, 20/28, 116/36, 138/32.
- Slaked, *vb.* slacked, failed, 48/24.
- Sleggly, *adv.* slyly, 68/3.
- Sleghtes, *sb.* contrivances, 128/13.
- Slegthlych, *adv.* craftily, 128/9; sleghtly, 144/17.
- Slouedyne, *vb.* slew, 39/8.
- Smert, *adj.* smart, sharp, rough; smert lond, rough wild land, 128/29.
- Smertly, *adv.* smartly, vigorously, 104/33; smyrtyly, 105/33.
- Smyth, *vb.* smite, 24/12; *pt.* smote, 106/35.
- Snel, *adj.* quick, active, 74/27.
- Snellych, *adv.* quickly, 82/3.
- Soine, *adv.* soon, 60/11.
- Soldrys, *sb.* shoulders, 89/11.
- Solempnelych, *adv.* solemnly, 90/25.
- Soth, *adj.* sooth, true, 54/1.
- Sortelych, *adv.* shortly, 93/14; Sortely, *adv.* shortly, 149/22.
- Sorynesse, *sb.* sorriiness, soreness, sorrow, 110/1, 112/23.
- Spares, *sb.* battle-axe, 83/7; sparris, 17/12. See *Sparth*.
- Sparth, *sb.* battle-axe, 74/11, 26, 33; sparthes, 16/13.
- Spendynge, *sb.* spending, money, 78/27.
- Spourges, *sb.* spurge, thing to get rid of, scourge, 112/3. Comp. O. Fr. *espourger*.
- Spousbrych, *sb.* spousebreach, adultery, 102/23.
- Spousehede, spoushode, *sb.* wedded state, 64/30.
- Sproty, *adj.* thin, small, 54/28. Comp. *Sprot*, sprout, splinter.
- Stabil, *vb.* establish, confirm, 69/29; stable, 68/30.
- Staluarthly, *adv.* stalwartly, sturdily, 116/1.
- Stalwardnesse, *sb.* stalwartness, strength, sturdiness, 52/2; stalwardnesse, 54/20.
- Sted, *sb.* stead, place, state, 22/35; 'state,' 23/35.
- Stordy, *adj.* sturdy, 118/33; stordyer, 116/2.
- Storkes, *sb.* storks, 28/24.
- Strange, *adj.* strong, 54/8.
- Streynth, *vb.* strength, strengthen, 68/30.
- Streynth, *sb.* strength, force, meaning, 90/29, 96/14.
- Streyntnesse, *sb.* strongness, strength, 94/24; streyntnys, 95/24.
- Stronge, *adj.* strong, stormy, 66/33.



Stronge, *adv.* strongly, greatly, 4/3.  
 Stryfly, *adv.* strivingly (for 'styfly'), 26/29. See *Styfly*.  
 Styd, *sb.* stead, place, 42/5; stydde, 42/6; styddes, places, 50/11.  
 Styfly, *adv.* strongly, valiantly, 80/8, 104/31.  
 Stylyl, *adv.* stily, in secret, 46/19, 150/12.  
 Stynte, *vb.* stopped, 111/30; stynt, 112/30.  
 Suget, *adj.* subject, 24/21; subyeet, 26/33; subyett, 26/21. O. Fr. *Suget*.  
 Surnesse, *sb.* sureness, security, 51/7.  
 Surtey, *swrte*, *sb.* surety, 75/9. Fr. *Sûreté*.  
 Sybbe, *sb.* relation, 64/29.  
 Syblynges, *adv.* kinwise, with relatives, 102/23.  
 Sybrede, *sb.* relationship, 42/11.  
 Sydlynge, *adv.* sidling, obliquely, 94/19.  
 Sygge, *vb.* say, 54/18, 98/20.  
 Sykernesse, *sb.* security, 50/7. See *Sekernesse*.  
 Sykrylychest, *adv.* most securely, 68/34.  
 Syllene, *vb.* sell, 38/32, 40/5.  
 Syller, *sb.* seller, 40/1.  
 Talent, *sb.* desire, wish, 6/25.  
 Tanked, *pp.* thanked, 14/19.  
 Tene, *sb.* tene, hatred, 4/12.  
 Tened, *pp.* grieved, vexed, 4/3.  
 Tethynges, *sb.* tithings, tithes, 66/1.  
 Thare, *conj.* there = where, 82/18.  
 Tharmes, *sb.* entrails, intestines, 88/4.  
 That, *adv.* † read *thar*, 2/24, 65/5.  
 Thay, *dem.* those, 80/12, 14, 90/26, 116/3; they, the, 97/14.  
 Theghe, *conj.* though, 18/27, 32/9.  
 Ther, *conj.* where, 32/8, 57/30, 128/4; ther-to-for, *adv.* before, 63/29.  
 Thewes, *sb.* qualities, 16/28, 90/34.  
 Thewis, *sb.* thieves, 81/30.  
 Thedynges, *sb.* tiding, 10/7; thythyngis, 11/7, 35/31; thythynges, 6/15.  
 this, *adj.* these, 21/29.  
 Tho, *conj.* when, 4/9.  
 Tho, *prep.* to, 62/19.  
 Thought, *conj.* though, 15/31, 32/7.

Tholle, *vb.* thole, endure, suffer, 4/20; polled, 42/3, 118/24; tholleth, sufferd, 38/15; tholy, *infn.* 40/5.  
 Tholmode, *adj.* forbearing, 98/15.  
 Thondred, *sb.* thunder, 68/28.  
 Thorwe, † go through with it, 28/12.  
 Thre, *num.* a thre, in three parts, 66/20; at thre, 67/20; tre, 14/5.  
 Thretynge, *sb.* threatening, 60/9; tretynge, 70/9.  
 Priddesum, *adj.* third, 14/1; thryd-some, 32/20; thyrdesum, 15/2.  
 Thurleth, *vb.* thirleth, pierceth, 112/5.  
 Thus, from t. = from this, thence, 60/15.  
 Thwey, *num.* two, 12/35.  
 To, *adv.* too, 54/26, 82/3.  
 To, *art.* the, 10/27.  
 Toght, *vb.* thought, 16/25, 18/7.  
 To-hakked, *vb.* hacket to pieces, 82/2.  
 Toke, *vb.* reacht (to the knee), 116/27.  
 Told, *vb.* reckoned, 60/8; Moch told by ham-self, thought much of themselves, 148/3; tolde, thought, 94/1, 96/25, 97/24.  
 Tollid, *pp.* suffered, 39/15.  
 Ton, *sb.* town, 12/33; ton land, town-land, division of parish, 124/2.  
 Toun londe, *sb.* townland, township, division of parish, 125/2.  
 Tre, *adj.* three, 14/5.  
 Trewage, *sb.* tribute, 114/29; truage, 60/15. O. Fr. *treuage*.  
 Trogh, *prep.* through, 22/6, 26/1, 62/18; troghe, 20/24; troght, 28/29.  
 Trukked, *vb.* trucked, was bartered †, 48/9.  
 Trywly, *adv.* truly, 12/27.  
 Turnet to, *vb.* turn to, 78/32.  
 Turues, *sb.* turves, turfs, 30/17.  
 Twonty, *num.* twenty, 50/28.  
 Tynges, *sb.* things, 24/14; thing, 28/8; notynges, nothing, 16/5, 20/9.  
 Tynke, *vb.* think, 6/26; tynken, 22/4.  
 Tywesday, tywesdaye, tyvysday, tywysday, *sb.* Tuesday, 98/1, 99/1, 2.  
 Vanhope, *sb.* wanhope, despair, 57/5.  
 Vend, *vb.* wend, 54/15.  
 Vepne, *sb.* weapon, 110/24.  
 Vickydyly, *adv.* wickedly, 53/35.  
 Vncharged, *vb.* unloaded, 10/2.

- Vndedde**, *vb.* undid, ruined, 114/4; vndid, 115/4. See *Vndo*.
- Vnderfonge**, *vb.* receive, 62/19; vndrefynge, 4/32, 8/1; vndyrfonge, received, 9/1.
- Vndo**, *vb.* destroy, ruin, 20/6, 22/4, 84/11, 94/32.
- Vndrestondeth**, *vb.* understand ye, *imper.* 20/15.
- Vneuenly**, *adj.* uneven, unequal, inferior, 30/25.
- Vnhap**, *sb.* mishap, 56/5.
- Vnhele**, *sb.* misfortune, 126/12.
- Vnkede**, *adj.* strange, 20/20, 24/28; vnkede, 31/6, 35/2.
- Vnkyndely**, *adv.* unnaturally, 87/18.
- Vnmercely**, *adv.* unmercifully, mercilessly, 55/1. Comp. O. Fr. *merciabile*.
- Vnmesurable**, *adv.* unmeasurably, beyond measure, 54/26; vnmeasurably, 55/26.
- Vnmetly**, *adv.* unmeetly, immoderately, 118/33.
- Vnnowmmerabill**, *adj.* innumerable, 19/15.
- Vnryght**, *sb.* wrong, injustice, 86/18; vnryght, 112/32.
- Vnsikere**, *adj.* unsure, 10/2.
- Vnsurnes**, *sb.* unsureness, insecurity, 51/8.
- Vnwardly**, *adj.* unwary, ignorant, 52/14.
- Vnwarly**, *adv.* unwarely, unexpectedly, 78/9.
- Vnwemmed**, *pp.* unstained, undefiled, 44/7, 92/4; vnwemyd, 93/3.
- Vpon**, *prep.* from, against, 106/32.
- Vp-erid**, *pp.* raised up, 13/2.
- Vptake**, *vb.* succour, help, support, 92/3.
- Vreke**, *vb.* wreak, avenge, 145/8.
- Vs-self**, ourselves, 22/1.
- Vyrchip**, *vb.* worship, 43/20.
- Vyrchipp**, *sb.* worship, 5/32.
- Wanhope**, *sb.* despair, 17/29, 32/12.
- Wanhoply**, *adj.* desperate, 88/6.
- Warliere**, *adv.* more warily, 12/19.
- Waryr**, *adv.* more cautiously, 13/19.
- Warytres**, *sb.* cursed trees, gallows, 34/16; 'galosis,' 35/16.
- Wax**, *vb.* grew, turned, became, 2/7; arose, grew up, 26/22.
- Wayte**, *sb.* wait, expectation, 110/33.
- Weccene**, *vb.* move, take, 36/31. A.S. *wecgan*: comp. weigh anchor.
- Wel**, *adv.* well, quite, 52/13; frankly, 78/30; much, 78/32; very, 2/11.
- Wentene**, *vb.* think, say!, 106/8.
- Wenyng**, *sb.* whining, mourning, 54/17.
- Wepne**, *sb.* weapon, out of w. = out of harness, when not fighting, 54/31; wepyn, 55/31.
- Wepne**, *vb.* weapon, arm, 50/27; weppen, 16/32; wepyn, 17/30.
- Wer**, *vb.* war, 'wer the fight,' 10/27; were, 11/28; weren, *inf.* 82/16; werret, 3/6; werry, *inf.* 8/11; weryn, 83/16.
- Were**, *sb.* war, 125/32.
- Weued**, *sb.* altar, 42/26. A. S.
- Whan**, *vb.* won, 136/11.
- Whan-hopefully**, *adv.* unhopefully, despairingly, 16/30.
- What for**, on account of, 108/21.
- Whodyreso**, *adv.* whithersoever, 40/11.
- Whybelers**, *sb.* quibblers?, 148/3.
- Whyte**, *sb.* the w. = at that time?, 82/13; = *conj.* while, 82/15; That whyte = at that time, 124/20.
- Whyth**, *prep.* with, 130/31.
- Wille**, *adj.* wild, rough, 129/29.
- Willych**, *adv.* vilely, 54/1.
- Wndre**, *prep.* under, 28/7.
- Wnneth**, *conj.* unneth, scarcely, 88/15.
- Wnselth**, *sb.* disadvantage, 50/8.
- Wo**, *adj.* sorry, 4/35.
- Wode**, *adv.* wildly, madly, 94/34.
- Wodere**, *adj.* wilder, madder, 42/27.
- Woke**, *adj.* weak, 146/10.
- Wolf**, woman turned into a, 130.
- Wombe**, *sb.* belly, 88/4.
- Wonder**, *adj.* wonderful, 130/11.
- Wone**, *sb.* custom, usage, 34/15.
- Wonet**, *pp.* wont, accustomed, 38/33.
- Wonne**, *sb.* custom, 66/29. See *Wone*.
- Wood**, *adj.* mad, wild, 42/27.
- Worth**, *vb.* happened, existed, was, 38/26; became, 124/33.
- Worthly**, (worthy, R.) *vb.* honor, 92/3.
- Worthy**, *vb.* honor, 93/2.



- Wrech**, *sb.* wreak, vengeance, 120/34 ;  
*wreche*, 130/29.  
**Wrechydnys**, *sb.* vengeance, 131/33.  
**Wrethe**, *sb.* wrath, 74/22.  
**Wreyer**, *sb.* wraier, betrayer, 102/24.  
**Wryttes**, *sb.* writs, writings, letters,  
 56/13 ; *yne wrytte*, in writing, 64/7.  
**Wryyng**, *sb.* distorting, falsifying,  
 102/11.  
**Wsyd**, *pp.* used, accustomed, practist,  
 skilful, 23/27.  
**Wyage**, *sb.* voyage, 62/7.  
**Wylle**, *sb.* at w. = as he wished, 58/  
 22.  
**Wynd abydyng**, wind-bound, wait-  
 ing for wind, 80/6.  
**Wyrcchply**, *adv.* worshiply, worship-  
 fully, 67/22.  
**Wyssed**, *vb.* directed, guided, 94/19 ;  
*wissede*, 95/19.  
**Wyt**, *prep.* with, 50/15.  
**Wytht**, *prep.* with, 46/17.  
**Wyttaylle**, *sb.* victual, 104/6.  
**Wytyng**, *sb.* witting, knowledge,  
 27/3.  
*-y*, *infin.* : See—assembly, castely, de-  
 foully, forswely, namy, tholy, werry,  
 8/11.  
**Yard**, *sb.* boughs, sticks, 30/17.  
**Yarne**, *vb.* rushed, ran, 82/3.  
**Y-cast**, *pp.* purposed, 68/30.  
**Y-douted hym**, was afraid, 86/1.  
**Y-dene**, *pp.* done, 28/29.  
**Y-dropesie**, *sb.* dropsy, 44/14.  
**Yern**, *vb.* rush, hasten, 74/1, 76/2.  
**Yernynge**, *vb.* running, rushing, 94/34.  
**Yew**, *vb.* yeve, give, 55/32 ; *yewyn*,  
*pp.* 81/9.  
**Y-lacet**, *pp.* laced, 52/11.  
**Y-leued**, *pp.* believed, 102/10.  
**Ymeuyd**, *pp.* moved, 101/4.  
**Yold**, *sb.* yule, Christmas, 42/34 ;  
*golde*, 43/34.  
**Yolowe**, *adj.* yellow, 98/10.  
**Yorne**, *adv.* gerne, eagerly, 92/21 ;  
*yonre*, 104/10.  
**Yought**, *sb.* youth, 68/20, 118/27.  
**Youre**, *adj.* yare, active, 114/27.  
**Yoy**, *sb.* joy, 100/29.  
**Yroked**, *pp.* rocked, 42/9.  
**Y-rotid**, *pp.* rooted, 149/17.  
**Yuel**, *mich*, much evil, leprosy, 32/7.  
**Yurne**, *sb.* eagerness?, 112/1.

# INDEX

(MAINLY)

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.



(For a completer Index, see Mr. Dimock's, *Gir. Camb. Op.* v. 440-60.)

- Adam of Yarnemouth (Yarmouth), sent with others to Ireland, 102.
- Adrian, Pope, grants privileges in Ireland to Henry II, 90; pledges to, 152.
- Albertus, Cardinal, sent into Normandy to enquire into Becket's death, 68.
- Aldelinesson, *see* Fitz-Audeline.
- Alexander, Lord of the world, 34/3.
- Alexander III, Pope, 44; grants Ireland to Henry II by Bull, 90.
- Amlyffy (? Queenstown), a harbour of Dublin, John the Mad lands there, 46.
- Angoy (Anjou), Henry II Earl of, 6.
- Ardfynan (Archphinan), castle built at, 148/22.
- Armagh, Council of Irish Clergy held there, 38; Archbishop too old to attend Synod of Cashel, 66.
- Arms, the Irish to be forbidden, 152.
- Arthur, kings of Ireland paid him tribute, 136/13.
- Banow, Fitz-stephen lands there, 10.
- Barry, Philip de (brother of Giraldus Cambrensis), comes to Ireland in 1183 to help Fitz-stephen, 126.
- Barry, Robert de, at siege of Wexford, 10; his bravery at Ossory, 14; his character, 16; his courage, 100; is nephew of Maurice and Robert Fitz-stephen, 100. (Was elder brother of Giraldus Cambrensis.)
- Barry, Robert de, son of above Robert, 100.
- Basile, or Basilia, sister of Earl Striguil, marries Raymond Fitz-gerald, 84; writes to her husband, 108.
- Bayonne, the Irish came from, 136.
- Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury, is murdered, 40-44.
- Beggeryng, Isle of, at mouth of Wexford harbour, is occupied by the Irish after burning Wexford, 54.
- Belyn, King of Britain, 136.
- Bernardson, Robert, left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70.
- Berynger, William, sent with others to Ireland, 102.
- Bohun, Humfrey de, left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70.
- Bowmen, sacrilegious, die suddenly, 62.
- Braken, St., prophecy of, 138.
- Breuse (Braose), Philip de, is left at Wexford by Henry II, 70; has land in Limerick granted him by the king, 122; is afraid of attacking Limerick, 124.
- Bride, St., his body found, 150.
- Bristow (Bristol), Macmorch goes there, 6.
- Brittayne, Brytayne (Britany or Bretagne), story of a Breton ship, 12; Earl of Bretagne (Richard) rebels against his father Henry II, 78.
- Byldewdys (Buildwas), Rolf, Abbot of, attends Synod of Cashel, 64.



- Canterbury, Becket murdered there, 40.
- Cantetone, Reymond de, 100; slain, 148/25.
- Carrick (*Carraig*, a rock), near Wexford, Robert Fitz-stephen builds a castle there, 26; is besieged there, 48.
- Cashel, the Archbishop of, and Henry II, attend Synod there, 64; the Constitutions of Cashel, 64; Earl Striguil goes there, 82; account of the Synod sent to the Pope, 90; the Pass barricaded against the English, 104.
- Castles built in Ireland, 126, 128, 148.
- Chester, Earl of, 86; John, Constable of, 128/12.
- Clandechestre (? Gloucestershire), Henry II goes there, 56.
- Cogan, Miles de, commands at Dublin, 46; drives O'Rourke off from it, 58; returns to Ireland with Fitz-Audeline, 110; invades Connaught, 120; goes to England and returns, 122; has land in Cork given him, 122; at Limerick, 124; is slain at Lisamore, 124.
- Cogan, Richard de, brother of Miles, comes with a force into Ireland, 126.
- Columba, St., his prophecies, 116, 118, 138; his body found, 150.
- Comyn, John, Archbishop of Dublin, sent to Ireland to prepare the way for Prince John, 134/1.
- Connaught, Cathel, Archbishop of, is at Synod of Cashel, 64.
- Connaught, Roderick, King of, is an ally of O'Rourke, 4; yields to Henry II, 62; ravages Meath, 82; holds conference with Raymond Fitz-gerald, 106; his territory invaded by Miles de Cogan, 120; Roderick beaten by the English, 122.
- Constitutions of Cashel, 64.
- Cork, men of, defeated at sea by the English, 80; left in charge of Richard of London, 122; lands there divided among the English leaders, 122.
- Cormack, son of the King of Cork, rebels and is beheaded, 106.
- Courci, John de, sees Fitz-Audeline's rascality, and sends for troops to invade Ulster, 114; he takes Down, 114; Vivian tries to get rid of him, 114; besieged, 116; beaten at Firlee, but victorious elsewhere, 118; description of him, 118; is childless, 120; again made Ruler of Ireland, 146/15.
- Coutances, Henry II does penance there for Becket's death, 72.
- Cursed meat forbidden, 66.
- Davy, a Welshman, nephew of Raymond Fitz-gerald, swims the Shannon, 94.
- Dermot Maccarthy, King of Cork, does homage to Henry II, 60; fears to attack Raymond Fitz-gerald, 80; helped by Raymond Fitz-gerald, 106; his son Cormack beheaded, 106; forced to make peace with the English, 122; leaves them, 124; slain, 148-150.
- Dermot Macmorgh, King of Leinster, seduces Rory's wife, Devorgilla, 2; his men refuse to help him, and he seeks foreign aid, 4; Henry II befriends him, 6; agrees to give his daughter, and Leinster to Striguil in return for help, 6; goes to Wales, 6; returns to Ireland and is joined by Robert Fitz-stephen, 8, 10; assaults Wexford, and captures it, 12; invades Ossory, and defeats the Prince, 14; many of his men desert him, 18; is urged to turn against the English, 20; harangues the men of Leinster, 20; O'Connor makes terms with him, 24; goes to attack Dublin, which submits, 26; aspires to be King of Ireland, 28; his daughter is married to Earl Striguil, 36; marches to Dublin, which is captured by him, 36; his son beheaded by O'Connor, King of Connaught, 38; his death, and burial at Ferns, 44; his character, 44.
- Desmond given to Miles de Cogan and Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, 122, 124.
- Deuelyn (Dublin), Laurence, Archbishop of, attends Synod at Cashel, 64; dies at Eu, 14 Nov., 1180, 132;

- John Comyn, Archbishop of, 132/24, 134/1.
- Deuelyn (Dublin), Macmorgh marches there, and captures it, 26; taken by Raymond Fitz-gerald and Miles of Cogan, 36; Earl Striguil leaves a force there, 38; Hasculf attacks it, but is defeated, 46; the Irish besiege it, 48; are defeated there, 52; given up with other ports to Henry II by Striguil, 56; O'Rourke assaults it, 58; chief men left there by Henry II, to keep Ireland, 70; men of Dublin slaughtered by Donald O'Brien, 82; Trinity Church (Cathedral?), 110.
- Dosnild (Donnell), King of Ossory, joins Raymond Fitz-gerald against O'Brien, 104; his address to the troops, 104.
- Down taken by De Courcy, 114; he is besieged there, 116; relics at, 150.
- Dundonald, Raymond le Gros builds a fort there, 30.
- Eclipses, three in three years, 124.
- England, the Silver Isle; Ireland, the Golden, 152.
- English, a phantom army scares them, 16; Fitz-stephen addresses them, 22; the Irish enslave English children, 38; the English in Dublin defeat the Irish, 50; Irish Services to be in the English fashion, 66; the English in Ireland demand to be set under Reimund Fitz-gerald, 78; they invade Offaly, 78; rout a Cork fleet, 80; besieged in Limerick by O'Brien, 104; permitted to take food from the churches, 120; advance to Tuam, 122; defeat King Roderick, 122.
- Felmeth, 128/26.
- Ferland, William, shows bravery at Waterford, 32.
- Ferns, Macmorgh winters there, 8; holds a strong position near it, 18; his death and burial there, 44.
- Firlee (a territory on the river Bann, co. Antrim), de Courci defeated there, 118.
- Fitz-Audeline, William de, sent to Ireland by Henry II, 110; envies and hates the Geraldines, 110; is self-indulgent and a plunderer, 112; robs Maurice Fitz-gerald's sons, 112; is a bad character, 112-114; is recald to England, 122.
- Fitz-gerald, Alexander, son of Maurice, his bravery, 50.
- Fitz-gerald, Davy, nephew of Raymond, 94.
- Fitz-gerald, Gerald, son of Raymond, his bravery, 50.
- Fitz-gerald, Maurice, half-brother to Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, helps Macmorgh, 8; has land granted him by Macmorgh, 12; arrives with forces at Wexford, 24; at Dublin, 48; harangues his men, 50; left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70; warns de Lacy of coming treachery, 74; description of him, 76; his courage, 100; his death, 112.
- Fitz-gerald, Nesta, daughter of Maurice, marries Hervey of Montmaurice, 92.
- Fitz-gerald, Raymond (Le Gros), son of Maurice Fitzgerald, and nephew of Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, sent to Ireland by Henry II, 30; repels the men of Waterford, 32; joins Earl Striguil, 34; joins in taking Waterford and Dublin, 36; sent by Henry II into Gascony, 40; is in Dublin, 48; his bravery at Dublin, 50; left as Viceroy in Ireland with Striguil, and invades Offaly, in command of the English troops, 78; marches towards Waterford, 80; goes to Wales, 82; lands at Wexford, and saves Striguil, 84; marches against O'Connor, 84; restores peace, 86; marches towards Limerick, 94; crosses the Shannon and takes Limerick, 96; description of him, 98; victuals Limerick, 100; marches there against O'Brien, 104; captures it, 106; marches to Cork, and beats Cormack, 106; has a letter from his wife, 108; commits Limerick to O'Brien, 108; surrenders his government to Henry, 110; is childless, 120; sails to Cork, and helps to put down the rebellion, 126.



- Fitz-gerald, William**, father of Raymond, dies, 82.
- Fitz-gerald, William**, eldest son of Maurice, marries Helen Fitz-gilbert, 92.
- Fitz-henry, Meiler**, his bravery, 14, 100; leads the attack on Limerick, 106; gets Kildare, 128.
- Fitz-henry, Robert**, brother of Meiler, 100.
- Fitz-hugh, Raymond**, 100, slain, 148.
- Fitz-stephen, Sir Robert**, Constable of South Wales, is set free by Rys, the Prince, 8; collects troops to help Macmorgh, 8; lands at Banow, and marches to Wexford with him, 10; stands firm to Macmorgh, 18; urged to retire from Ferns, 20; harangues the English, 22; helps to defeat O'Connor, 26; advises Macmorgh to get more English help, 28; is besieged in Carrick Castle, 48; his defence, 52; deceived into a surrender, 52; described, 54; imprisoned by Henry II, but pardoned after, 60; left by Henry II as a leader in Ireland, 70; his courage, 100; (? same) goes into Ireland with Fitz-Audeline, 110; and is robbed of lands by him, 112; is childless, 120; attacked by the Irish, 126; his right to come to Ireland, 134.
- Fitz-stephen, Maurice**, 30.
- Fitz-stephen, Meredus**, son of Sir Robert, dies at Cork, 124.
- Fitz-stephen, Raymond**, loses some of his lands, 112.
- Fitz-stephen, Rolf**, son of Robert, 120.
- Forthred, Fothred, Fothurtu**, now Forth, in Carlow, 128/24.
- Frederick**, Emperor of Germany, 44.
- French warfare** contrasted with Irish and Welsh, 151.
- Fresel**, Keeper of Waterford, is slain by his guides, 84.
- Geoffrey**, Earl of Bretagne, son of Henry II, rebels, 76; is overcome, 86; dies, 132.
- Gerald de Barri (Giraldus Cambrensis)**, 62, 78; comes to Ireland, 126; his advice on the conquest and government of Ireland, 150-2. His brothers: *see* Barry.
- Geraldines**, the, envied, 110; praised, 113.
- Germon, Gurguntius**, 136/10.
- Glanuyl, Ralph de**, defeats Henry II's sons, 86.
- Glyndelagh (Glendalough)** hills, 36.
- Golden Isle, Ireland**, 152.
- Goshawk**, story of Henry II's, 56.
- Gothred, King of Man**, has letters from Striguil, 48.
- Griffin, Robert**, nephew of Maurice Fitz-gerald, has a dream, 73; saves de Laci from Rory's treachery, 74; slays Rory, 76; gets a castle, 128/24.
- Gundeville, Hugh de**, left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70.
- Gurguntius, Belyn's son**, 136/10.
- Gylmory, K.**, at Arthur's feast at Karlyon, 136/14.
- Hasculf**, chief man in Dublin, escapes from it, 36; goes with forty Norse ships to attack it, and is captured, 46; is beheaded, 48.
- Haverford**, 72.
- Helen**, sister of Earl Striguil, given to William, son of Maurice Fitz-gerald, 92.
- Henry II of England**, 2; Macmorgh seeks help from him, 4; appeals to his subjects to aid Macmorgh, 6; forbids trade with Ireland, 40; his Irish edict, 48; lands at Waterford, 58; imprisons Fitz-stephen, 60; the Kings of Cork and Limerick do him homage, 60; the Kings of Connaught and Meath also yield to him, 62; feast given by him, 62; assembles Clergy at Cashel, and has Constitutions made, 64; his Irish affairs, 68; leaves Ireland, 70; despises the speaking stone of Lechlavar, 72; goes to Haverford, and Normandy, and does penance for Becket's death at Coutances, 72; makes peace with the French king, 72; his sons rebel, 76; collects troops at Rouen, 78; leaves Ireland to viceroys, 78; overcomes his sons, 86; Merlin's prophecy about his sons, 88; description of him, 88; gets a grant of the Lordship of Ireland from the

- Pope, 90; recalls Raymond Fitzgerald, 102; his Irish Commissioners return, 110.
- Henry, son of Henry II, rebels against his father, 68, 76; overcome, 86; dies, 132.
- Hervev of Mountmaurice has land granted him, 12; wishes prisoners to be butchered (they're drown'd), 34; at Waterford, 56; succeeds Raymond Fitzgerald as Constable, 82; is jealous of him, 92; marries Nesta Fitzgerald, 92; sends lies about Raymond Fitzgerald to Henry II, 102; his description, 102; childless, 120; turns monk, 126.
- Irish Church, spoild by John, 146.
- Irish folk, 52, 78, 82, 90, 110; Northerners true, Southerners false, 126; are false, 136, 142; plunder, 144; conspire, 150; tribute to be taken from, 152.
- Jeroboam, 142/18.
- John of Salisbury purchases privileges in Ireland for Henry II from Pope Adrian, 92; goes to Ireland, 130.
- John the Herford, 128/26.
- John the Wood (mad) leads forty Norse ships against Dublin, and is slain, 46.
- John, Constable of Chester, goes to Ireland, 128.
- John, Prince, son of Henry II, sent to Ireland, A.D. 1185, 134; his failure there, and its causes, 136-149; bad state of Ireland under him, 144; new edition of the *Expugnacio* sent him, 152.
- Julius Caesar, 34/3.
- Kenalayne, men of, 150/2.
- Kildare, Bishop of, helps to deceive the English, 52.
- Kildare, given to Meyler, but changed for Leix, 128/27.
- Kyldalo (Killaloe), 106.
- Kylka, 128/25.
- Lateran Council (March 1179), 124.
- Lacy, Hugh de, goes with William son of Aldeline as messenger to the Kings of Connaught and Meath, 62; left in Ireland as a leader by Henry II, 70; meets O'Rourke, 72; treacherously attacked by him, 74; returns to Ireland as Seneschal, 122; fortifies Leinster and Meath, 128; is suspected of aiming at Kingdom, 128; goes to England and returns, 130; is recald from Ireland, 134; is slain A.D. 1186, 150.
- Llandaff, Ralph, Archdeacon of, attends Synod of Cashel, 64.
- Lechlavar, Stone of, speaks, 70.
- Leix, changed for Kildare, 128/29.
- Leycestre (Leicester), Earl of, captured by Henry II, 86.
- Leinster, governed by Macmorgh, 2; Rory and the King of Connaught invade it, 4; Macmorgh harangues the men of Leinster, 20; had few castles, 128/23; some built, 128.
- Limerick, O'Brien, King of, is warred on by the King of Connaught, 26; Limerick left in charge of Miles of St. David's, 100; burnt by O'Brien, 110; Sir Robert Fitz-stephen and others go there, but retreat, 122.
- Lismore, Henry II goes there, 60; Christian, Bishop of, and Papal Legate, presides at Synod of Cashel, 64; Lismore attacked by the English, 80; Miles de Cogan goes there, 124; a castle built there, 148/22 (ruins still in being.—D.).
- London, Richard of, Governor of Cork A.D. 1177, 122/28.
- Louis, King of France, 44.
- Maccarthy, *see* Dermot Maccarthy.
- Mac Donlevy, King of Ulster, flees from de Courcy, 114; besieges de Courcy in Down, 116; is defeated, 116.
- Macdonough, Prince of Ossory, is defeated by Macmorgh, and sues for peace, 14.
- Macmorgh, *see* Dermot Macmorgh.
- Macmorgh, Eve, daughter of Dermot, marries Earl Striguil, 36.
- Macsaghlin of Olan, is taken prisoner at Waterford, 37.



- Mac-Tire slays Miles de Cogan, 124.  
 Man, Isle of, governed by King Gothred, 48.  
 Marseilles, 132/7.  
 Masturel, William, joins Henry II, 68.  
 Meath, Rory king there, 2; ravaged by Earl Striguil, 38, by O'Connor, 84; yielded to Henry II, 62; wolf-woman in, 130; is well castled, 128/23, 130/9.  
 Merlin, prophecies of, 10, 34, 44, 58, 62, 70, 88.  
 Meyler, son of Raymond Fitz-gerald's cousin is at Wexford, 84; swims the Shannon, 94; description of him, 98; castle built for, 130/7.  
 Miles of St. David's, cousin of Raymond Fitz-gerald, left in charge of Limerick, 100.  
 Milford Haven, Wales, 124/15.  
 Moling, St., prophecies of, 34, 58, 62, 138.  
 Mountmaurice, *see* Hervey.  
 Myles of Cogan helps in taking Dublin, 36; goes to Lismore, and is slain there, 124. *See* Cogan.  
 Myght (Meath) destroyed by O'Connor, 84.  
 Newenham (Newnham), in Clandestrestre, 56.  
 Newry, de Courci conquers at Ivor's Bridge near, 118.  
 Nicol, a priest, attends Synod of Cashel, 64; ? Prior of Wallingford, conveys Alexander's Bull into Ireland, 90.  
 Normans, John's young, pull the beards of the Irish chiefs, 140; are John's worst advisers, 142, 146.  
 Norsemen attack Dublin, 46.  
 Not, William, his bravery, 52.  
 Oboy, castle built in, 130/8.  
 O'Brien, Donald, King of Limerick and Thomond is warred against by the King of Connaught, and defeats him, 26; does homage to Henry II, 60; slaughters the men of Dublin, 82; rebels against Henry, 92; besieges Limerick, 104; holds conference with Raymond Fitz-gerald, 106; burns Limerick, 110.  
 O'Connor, Roderic, King of Connaught and Ireland, tries to raise the country against Macmorgh and the English, 18; addresses his followers, 20; comes to terms, 24; makes war on the King of Limerick, and is defeated, 26; beheads Macmorgh's son, 38; ravages Meath, 84.  
 Odrone (Odroon, a territory in co. Carlow, 52). Striguil defeats a Leinster force in a pass near, 54.  
 Ofolanes (Offaly, in north of the present co. Kildare), Leinster, is invaded by the English, 78.  
 Okenseley, Macmurgh there, 18; Macmurgh of Okensely joins Raymond Fitz-gerald, 104.  
 Olethan, 148/25.  
 Omurthy, 128/25.  
 Onolan, 128/24.  
 O'Phelan (Olan), 30, 37.  
 Ophelayn, 112.  
 O'Rourke, *see* Rory.  
 Osbern (Osborne) of Hereford, sent into Ireland, 102.  
 Ossory (Kilkenny, etc., in Leinster) invaded by Macmorgh, 14, 62.  
 Paris, 133/8.  
 Parliament (Conference) at Rorik's Hill, 74.  
 Patrick, St., prophecy of, 138; his body found, 150.  
 Pec, Richard de, 128/19.  
 Pembroke, Henry II sails thence, 56.  
 Phantom army terrifies the English, 16.  
 Philip of Worcester, 134.  
 Poitou, Earl of, Richard, son of Henry II, rebels with his brothers, 78.  
 Pope: his right to all islands, 136; grants Ireland to Henry II, 136.  
 Rathwyldes Tower, 36.  
 Rauf, son-in-law of Miles de Cogan, slain at Lismore, 124.  
 Raymond Fitzhugh (hues-son), 100.  
 Raymond le Gras, *see* Fitz-gerald, Raymond.

- Redlesford, Walter de**, kills John the Wood, 46; castle built to him, 128/25.
- Rehoboam**: Prince John foolishly imitates him, 142.
- Richard, Earl of Poitou**, son of Henry II, rebels against his father, 78; is overcome, 86.
- Richard of London** is in charge of Cork, 122.
- Richard of the pek (Peak)** reaches Ireland, 128/19.
- Robert de Bygaz**, 130/8.
- Robert de Po(w)er**, Constable of Waterford, comes to Ireland, 122.
- Roger le Poer** slain, 150.
- Rolf**, son of Robert Fitz-stephen, 76.
- Rorik's Hill**, Conference held there with Rory, 74.
- Rory (O'Rourke)**, King of Meath, left by his wife, 2; marches into Leinster to avenge his shame, 4; assaults Dublin, 58; yields to Henry II, 62; has a conference with de Lacy, 72; treacherously attacks him, 74; is slain by Maurice Fitz-gerald, 76.
- Rys**, son of Griffin, Prince of Wales, sets Fitz-stephen free, 8.
- Salisbury, John of**, 92, 130.
- Scotland**, King of, taken by Henry II, 86; a Papal Legate goes to Scotland, 114.
- Shestre (Chester)**, Earl of, captured by Henry II, 86.
- Shynen (Shannon)**, borders Meath, 82; the river swum, 94; King of Connaught there, 106.
- St. James**, 72.
- Stevenson**, *see* Fitz-stephen.
- Strigul, Richard**, Fitz-gilbert, Earl of, agrees to aid Macmorch, and has Leinster given him, 6; receives letters from him, 28; sends Raymond le Gras to Ireland, 30; lands at Waterford, and assaults the town, 34; captures it, and marries Macmorch's daughter, 36; leaves a force in Dublin, 38; his description, 54; sails to England, and yields Dublin and other ports to Henry II, 56; waits at Pembroke for favourable wind, 56; left as Viceroy in Ireland with Raymond Fitz-gerald, 78; asks help of him, and promises him his sister Basile, 84; saved by him, 84; his death, 108; burial, 110; his right to come to Ireland, 134.
- Sur**, parts Leinster and Munster, 30; King of Limerick comes there, 60; Raymond there, 84.
- Tachmeho**, 130/7.
- Theodinus, Cardinal**, comes to Normandy, to Henry II, 68.
- Troy**, English sprung from, 22.
- Tuam**, in Galway, occupied by the English, 122.
- Tybraghnyeh, Tibraghny** in S.W. Kilkenny, 60.
- Tyllagh**, 128/26.
- Ulster** invaded by de Courci, 114.
- Velletri, Archbishop Comyn** consecrated at, A.D. 1182, 132.
- Vivian**, a Papal Legate, comes to Down, 114; holds a Synod at Dublin, 120.
- Vryel**, in Ulster (the present counties of Louth, Armagh, and Monahan), 114; de Courci defeated there, 118.
- Wales**, 6, 8.
- Wallingford, Nichol**, Prior of, conveys Papal Bull to Ireland, 90.
- Walter, Theobald**, 150/1.
- Waterford**, Raymond le Gras lands near it, 30; capture by him of seventy of its inhabitants, 32; and butchery of them, 34; Earl Strigul lands there, 34; assault of it by him, and capture of it, 34, 36; the Irish slay the English there, 84; Council of Irish clergy gathered there, 90; its walls, 116.
- Weysford (Wexford)** men threaten to kill Fitz-stephen, 54; Henry II sails thence to England, 70; Raymond lands there, 84.
- Weysford (Wexford)**, Bishop of, deceives the English, 52.
- Wicklown, Castle**, 112; Wykynlo, 92.
- Worcester, Philip of**, takes Hugh de Laci's post, and is curst by the Irish, 134.





<http://stores.ebay.com/Ancestry-Found>



<http://stores.ebay.com/Ancestry-Found>

24 JAN 4

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

